BEN D. ZEVIN
CLEVELAND

From his Library of Books about Books

to Theodore Walter Watts

from

William Morris

June 18th 1893

THE HISTORY OF GODEFREY OF BOLOYNE AND OF THE CONQUEST OF IHERUSALEM.

Rare Bk
D
183.3
.W55 13
1893
FOLIO

THE hye couragyous faytes and valyaunt actes of noble illustrous and vertuous personnes, ben digne to be recounted, put in memorye, and wreton, to thende that ther may be gyuen to them name inmortal, by souuerayne laude and preysyng, & also for to moeue & tenflawme the hertes of the redars and hierers, for teschewe and flee werkes vycious, dishonnest and vytuperable, and for tempryse and accomplysshe enterpryses honnestes, and werkes of gloryous meryte, to lyue in remembraunce perpetual ❧ for as it is so, that thystoryagraphes haue wreton many a noble hystorye, as wel in metre as in prose, by whiche thactes and noble fayttes of the auncyent conquerours ben had in remembraunce, and remayne in grete, large, and aourned volumes, and so shal abyde in perpetual memorye, to thentente that gloryous prynces and hye men of noble and vertuouse courage, shold take ensample tempryse werkys leeful & honneste. fyrst, for goddes quarell, in mayntenyng oure fayth and the libertees of holy chirche, for the recuperacion of the holy land, whiche our blessyd lord Ihesu Criste hath halowed by his blessyd presence humayne, and by shedyng therin for oure redempcion his precious blood, ffor the releef of suche cristen men as there dwelle in grete myserye and thraldome, and also for the defence of theyr royammes, londes, enherytages, and subgettes, & for thyse causes tendeuoyre theym in theyr noble persones, with alle theyr puys-

saunces and power, tadresse and remyse theym in theyr auncyent fraunchyses and lyberte. Acordyng to that we fynde wreton in holy scripture of many noble historyes, which were here ouer long to reherce. But in especial of thre noble and mooste worthy of alle other. That is to wytte, fyrst of duc Iosue, that noble prynce, whiche ladde & conduyted the childeren of Israhel, the chosen people of God, oute of deserte in to the londe of promyssyon, the londe flowyng mylke & hony. Secondly, of Dauyd the kynge and holy prophete, whome God chaas after his herte, and achyeuyd many grete bataylles, gouernyng the sayd chosen people of God by the space of fourty yeris. And the thyrde, of the noble Iudas Machabeus, how he deffended the sayd people in fyghtyng many and merueyllous bataylles, for veray zeele and loue of his lawe, & mayntenyng of the same vnto the deth. for which causes aforsayd, the names of thyes thre abyde perpetuel, for thre of the moste and nobleste of the Iewys, and in the nombre of the moost digne and moost worthy.

AND by cause valyaunce & prowesse is remembryd emong the gentyles & paynemes, as emong Thebrewes, I fynde wreton of the incredible cheualrous prowesse of the noble and valyaunt Hector of Troye, whos excellent actes wryten, Ouyde, Homer, Virgyle, Dares, Dyctes and other dyuerse, & eche better than other, reherchyng his noble vertues, strengthe and humanyte. Secondly, of Alysaundre the grete kynge of Macedone, which domyned & had to hym obeys-

saunt the vnyuersal world. And the thyrde, the noble Julyus Cezar, Emperour of Rome, whos noble actes ben wreton by poetes, as Lucan, Stace and other, and dayly remembryd as newe and ffresshe as he yet lyuyd. Whiche thre ben sette as for the moost worthy emong the gentyles and paynems.

NOW lete vs thenne remembre what hystoryes ben wreton of cristen men, of whom ther be many wreton. But in especial, as for the best & worthyest, I fynde fyrst the gloryous, most excellent in his tyme, and fyrst founder of the round table, kyng Arthur, kyng of the Brytons, that tyme regnyng in this royamme, of whos retenue were many noble kynges, prynces, lordes & knyghtes, of which the noblest were knyghtes of the round table, of whos actes and historyes there be large volumes, and bookes grete plente and many. O blessyd lord, whan I remembre the grete and many volumes of Seynt Graal, Ghalehot, and Launcelotte de Lake, Gawayn, Perceual, Lyonel, & Tristram, & many other, of whom were ouer longe to reherce, and also to me vnknowen! But thystorye of the sayd Arthur is so gloryous and shynyng, that he is stalled in the fyrst place of the moost noble, beste and worthyest of the cristen men. Secondly, of Charlemayne, the grete emperour of Allemayne, and kyng of fraunce, whos noble actes and conquestes ben wreton in large volumes with the noble faytes and actes of his douze pieres, that is to saye, Rowlond & Olyuer, with the other, whos name and renommee abydeth also perpetuel, and is

stalled in the second place emonge the most worthy of cristen men. Of alle thyse historyes afor reherced, the bookes and volumes ben had in Latyn, frenssh and Englysshe, and other langage.

THENNE as for the thyrd of the cristen prynces, taken, reputed and renommed for to be egal emong thyse worthy and best that euer were, I mene the noble Godefroy of Boloyne, whiche now but late, not yet four C yere syth, he flowred, and was stalled in the thyrde stalle of the moost worthy of cristen men, whos hystorye is made and wreton in Latyn & frensshe in large and grete volumes. And as not knowen emonge vs here, whiche ben adiacent & neyghbours to the place of his natyuyte, whos noble hystorye I late fonde in a booke of frenssh, al alonge of his noble actes, valyaunces, prowesses, & accomplysshement of his hye empryses. In whiche I fynde very causes, as me semeth, moche semblable & lyke vnto suche as we haue now dayly tofore vs, by the mescreauntes & Turkes emprysed ayenst cristendom, and yet moche more nowe than were in his dayes. for in his dayes the Turkes had conquerd vpon cristendom but vnto the braas of Seynt George by Constantynople, and had no foote on this syde the sayd braas. But at this daye it is so that they haue comen ouer & goten that imperial cyte, Constantynople aforsayd, and many royamme and countre, to the grete dommage and hurte of alle cristendom. To the resistence of whome, as yet, fewe cristen prynces haue put theym in deuoyr. Thenne I re-

torne agayn vnto the conqueste at suche tyme as they were come to the sayd braas, that by the dylygent solicitude of a pour heremyte, the sayd Godeffroy of Boloyne, & other dyuerse prynces, lordes and comyn peple, auowed the croysyng & empryse to warre agayn the mescreauntes, and to recouere the holy cyte of Iherusalem: whiche afterward they achyeuyd, and conquerd fro the sayd braas vnto the holy lande, and recouerd the holy cyte of Iherusalem, as in this sayd book al alonge and playnly shal appere. In whiche cyte the sayd Godeffroy was elect and chosen for his vertue, prowesse, & blessyd disposicion, to be kyng of the sayd Iherusalem, & the londe therabout.

THENNE I, thus vysytyng this noble hystorye, whiche is no fable ne fayned thynge, but alle that is therin trewe, considerynge also the grete puyssaunce of the Turke, grete enemye of oure cristen fayth, destroyar of cristen blood, and vsurpar of certayn empyres and many cristen royammes and countrees, & now late this sayd yere hath assaylled the cyte and castel in the isle of Rhodes where valyauntly he hath be resisted; but yet not withstondyng he hath approched more ner, & hath taken the cyte of Ydronte in Puylle, by whiche he had goten an entre to entre in to the royamme of Naples; and fro thens, without he be resisted, vnto Rome and Ytalye, to whos resistence I beseche almyghty God to prouyde, yf it be his wylle. Thenne me semeth it necessary & expedyent for alle cristen prynces to make peas, amyte

and allyaunce eche with other, and prouyde by theyr wysedommes the resistence agayn hym for the defense of our fayth, and moder holy chirch, and also for the recuperacion of the holy londe and holy cyte of Iherusalem, in whiche our blessyd sauyour, Ihesu Crist, redemed vs with his precious blood, & to doo as this noble prynce Godeffroy of Boloyne dyde, with other noble and hye prynces in his companye. Thenne for thexhortacion of alle cristen prynces, lordes, barons, knyghtes, gentilmen, marchauntes, and all the comyn peple of this noble royamme, Walys and Yrlonde, I haue emprysed to translate this book of the conquest of Iherusalem out of frenssh in to our maternal tongue, to thentente tencourage them by the redyng and heeryng of the merueyllous historyes herin comprysed, and of the holy myracles shewyd, that euery man in his partye endeuoyre theym vn to the resistence afore sayd, and recuperacion of the sayd holy londe ❧ And for as moche as I knowe no cristen kynge better prouyd in armes, and for whom god hath shewed more grace, and in alle his empryses gloryous, vaynquyssbour, happy and eurous, than is our naturel, lawful, and souerayn lord and moost cristen kynge, Edward, by the grace of god, kynge of Englond and of fraunce, and lord of Yrlond, vnder the shadowe of whos noble protection I haue achyeued this symple translacion, that he of his moost noble grace wold adresse, styre, or commaunde somme noble capytayn of his subgettes to empryse this warre agayn the sayd Turke and hethen peple, to whiche I can thynke that euery man wyll put his hand to in theyr

propre persones, and in theyr meuable goodes. Thenne to hym, my moost drad naturel and soue-rayn lord, I adresse this symple & rude booke, be-sechyng his moost bounteuous and haboundaunt grace to receyue it of me, his indigne and humble subgette, William Caxton, and to pardonne me so presumynge. Besechyng almyghty God that this sayd book may encourage, moeue, & enflamme the hertes of somme noble men, that by the same the mescreauntes maye be resisted and putte to rebuke, cristen fayth encreaced and enhaunced, and the holy lande, with the blessyd cyte of Iherusalem, recouerd, and may come agayn in to cristen mens hondes. Thenne I exhorte alle noble men of hye courage to see this booke, and here it redde; by which ye shal see what wayes were taken, what noble prowesses and valyaunces were achyeuyd by the noble com-panyes, & especial by the said noble prynce Gode-ffroy of Boloyne, duc of Loreyne, by whiche he de-seruyd the name of one of the moost worthy that euer were, and ys stalled in the thyrd stalle of the cristen conquerours, & in the nynthe of the mooste worthy, where his name and renomme shal remayne and abyde perpetuel. And for to deserue the tenthe place, I beseche almyghty God to graunt & ottroye to our sayd souerayn lord, or to one of his noble progenye, I meane my lord Prynce, and my lord Rychard, duc of Yorke and Norfolke, to whom I humbly beseche, at theyr leyzer and playsyr, to see and here redde this symple book, by which they may be encoraged to deserue lawde and honour, and that their name and renomme may encreace and remayn

perpetuel, & after this lyf short and transytorye, all we may atteyne to come to the euerlastyng lyf in heuen, where is ioye and reste withoute ende. Amen.

THENNE FOR TO KNOWE THE CONTENTE OF THIS BOOK, YE SHAL PLAYNLY SEE BY THE TABLE FOLOWYNG WHEROF EUERY CHAPTYRE TREATETH AL ALONGE.

THE fyrst chaptre treateth how Eracles conquerd Perse, and slewe Cosdroe and brought in to Iherusalem the veray crosse, capitulo primo, p. 1.

Howt he puyssaunt Cosdroe wasted thempyre of Rome, for tauenge the deth of themperour Mauryce, fader to his wyf, capitulo ij, p. 4.

How this puyssaunt kyng entred in to Iherusalem, and demaunded dylygently of the temple, and reedefyed it, and assigned grete reuenues to entretiene it, capitulo iij, p. 5.

How Charlemayne by his lyberalyte gate, for the prouffyt of cristen peple in hethenesse, thamyte of hethen prynces, capitulo iiij, p. 6.

Of the noyse that sourded emonge the hethen peple discordynge in their lawe, and how they of Egypte yssued oute of theyr londe, and of the euylles and harmes that they dyde, capitulo v, p. 9.

How thafflyction, iniuryes, & tormentes of cristen men grewe in the tyme of calyphe Hetham, capitulo vi, p. 10.

How at the requeste of themperour of Constantynople the cristen men obteyned licence to bylde agayn the chirche of the holy sepulcre, capitulo vij, p. 14.

Of the Turkes, fro whens they cam, and how they grewe in to grete puyssaunce, & dyde chose theym a kyng for to mayntene their warrys, capitulo viij, p. 17.

Of thorryble synnes regnyng thenne in cristiente, as wel in thyse partyes as in tho partyes, capitulo ix, p. 21.

Of a bataylle that themperour Romayn of Constantynople had ayenst a prynce of thorient named Belphet, cap. x, p. 23.

Of many maner tormentes, that the cristen peple suffred for their synnes in that tyme, capitulo xj, p. 27.

How after they had been iiij C lxxxx yere in the seruage of the hethen men, our lord pourueyed remedye for his cristen peple, capitulo xij, p. 29.

How Peter Theremyte entreprised the more hardly his viage, by the reuelacion or vysyon that he sawe in his sleep, capitulo xiij, p. 32.

Of the persecucions of the chirche in that tyme, and how the pope Vrban was put out of the see of Rome by the bysshop of Rauenne, capitulo xiiij, p. 34.
Of a general counseyl that the pope Vrban ordeyned for the reformacion of holy chirche and thamendement of the people, capitulo xv, p. 37.
How many noble and hye men, and other moyen peple of the royamme of fraunce crossyd theym for to goo ouer see, capitulo xvj, p. 40.
The names of noble men that enterprysed this pylgremage, as wel on this syde the see as beyonde the montaynes, capitulo xvij, p. 43.
Of thauentures that a rowte of cristen men had in this vyage, of whom one Gaultyer without knowleche was capitayne, capitulo xviij, p. 45.
How Pieter Theremyte was chyef and capitayne of a grete hooste, in this vyage toward the holy londe, cap. xix, p. 48.
How somme of thoost of Peter Theremyte, vnwytyng hym, sette fyre in the subarbys of Nyz at theyr departyng, capitulo xx, p. 50.
How Peter Theremyte was aduertysed of al this, and of the harme that ensiewed, capitulo xxj, p. 52.
How themperour of Constantynople, beyng aduertysed of thies oultrages, sente his messagers to Peter Theremyte, capitulo xxij, p. 55.
Of the mayntenyng of thoost of Peter Theremyte, and how thre M Duchemen toke a castel by assault, and slewe alle theym that were therin with the swerd, capitulo xxiij, p. 57.
How Solyman, lord of that countre, reprised and toke agayn the castel, and slewe alle the Duche men that were therin, capitulo xxiiij, p. 59.
How our men armed theym for tauenge the Duche men, and of a recountre that they had ayenst Solyman, cap. xxv, p. 60.
How Peter Theremyte, beyng in Constantynople, was aduertysed of this disconfyture, and saued thre thousand cristen men beyng in grete daunger, capitulo xxvj, p. 62.
How a preest named Godechan made hymself captayn of xl thousand Duchemen in this vyage, and of theyr oultrages, capitulo xxvij, p. 63.
How two C thousand cristen men a/foote, and thre thousand on horsbak, without capitayn, assembled in this pylgremage, and of theyr mayntene, capitulo xxviij, p. 67
How this peple began to destroye the londe of the kyng of Hongrye by cause he wold not graunte them leue to passe, capitulo xxix, p. 69.

How the duc Godeffroy of Boloyne beyng with a grete hoost cam vnto Hongrye, and sente his messagers to the kyng to demande passage, capitulo xxx, p. 71.
How the messagers of duc Godeffroy declared theyr message vnto the kynge of Hongrye, and therupon his answere, capitulo xxxj, p. 73.
How the sayd kynge sente for to fetche the duc Godeffroye, and how he wente, & of the deuyses that they had to gydre, capitulo xxxij, p. 77.
How the duc Godefroy sente his messagers to themperour of Constantynople, to thende that he shold delyuer to hym Huon le Mayne and other that he helde in pryson, capitulo xxxiij, p. 79.
How duc Godeffroy constrayned themperour by force to rendre and delyuer his prysoners, capitulo xxxiiij, p. 81.
The grete despyte that themperour toke that duc Godeffroy refused to goo in to Constantynople vnto hym, capitulo xxxv, p. 83.
Of the descripcion of the cyte of Constantynople, & of many countrees and londes therabout, capitulo xxxvj, p. 84.
How our peple brente theyr lodgys, and toke theyr harnoys, and of an assault that the Grekes made on them, capitulo xxxvij, p. 86.
How after our peple began to destroye the contre, and of a message fro Buymont vnto duc Godeffroy, & the answere of the duc vpon the same agayn, capitulo xxxviij, p. 88.
How themperour appeased the duc Godeffroy, and sente for hym, and of thonour that he dyde to hym, cap. xxxix, p. 90.
Of the yeftes that themperour made to duc Godeffroye, to the barons, & to the gentilmen of his hooste, cap. xl, p. 92.
How Buymont was made capitayn of a grete hooste, and the names of many nobles of thooste, and of theyr maytene, capitulo xlj, p. 94.
Messagers and lettres fro themperour to Buymont, and the contenue of the same, as foloweth, capitulo xlij, p. 96.
How Buymont approched Constantnople, and was sente for to come to the emperour, and how by the prayer of duc Godeffroye he wente toward hym, capitulo xliij, p. 98.
How therle Robert of Flaundres with his hoost approchyd Constantynople and how themperour sente for hym, and of theyr deuyses to gydre, capitulo xliiij, p. 100.
Of the mayntyene of thoost whiche therle of Tholouse and the bisshop of Puy brought ouer see, capitulo xlv, p. 101.
Ambassadours of themperour to the sayd erle and bysshop, and of the contenue of his lettres, & of the daunger wherin the sayd bisshop was, capitulo xlvj, p. 103.

How therle of Tholouse, beyng with themperour, wolde not doo hommage to hym, and of the despyte that themperour dyde, capitulo xlvij, p. 105.
How themperour, for tauenge hym and therle, made his conestables tenbusshe them, & assaylle thoost of therle, capitulo xlviij, p. 107.
How at thynstaunte prayer of the barons of thooste, therle made homage to themperour, which thenne gaf grete yeftes to hym and his, capitulo xlix, p. 110.
How duc Robert of Normandye, and other here named, approuched Constantynople, and made hommage to themperour, capitulo l, p. 112.
How themperour sente, for to destroye our cristen men, one his seruaunt, faynyng to be a trewe conduytour and guyde, capitulo lj, p. 114.
Of the situacion of Nycene, and how our peple approuched therto, merueyllyng of the place, and of the strengthe, capitulo lij, p. 115.
How the puyssaunt Turke, Solyman, with a grete hooste aduysed tyme and houre to assaylle & smyte on our peple, for to reyse the siege, capitulo liij, p. 116.
How Solyman, beyng in the montaynes, sente his messagers to them of the toun, and of the comforte that he gaf to theym, capitulo liiij, p. 117.
How the messagers of Solyman were taken by our men, and by them was knowen the couyne of the sayd Solyman, capitulo lv, p. 118.
How a grete batayll of Solyman cam and smote on our peple, and of thende of the sckarmuche, capitulo lvj, p. 119.
How our barons were lodged in the sayd siege, of their mayntene, and how euery day they enforced them tassaylle the toun, capitulo lvij, p. 121.
How our barons made castellys of tree and approuched the toun, and how they within brake one of theym, and slewe them that were therin, capitulo lviij, p. 123.
Of the counseyl that our men toke for tassiege the toun by water, for to constrayne them not for to entre ne yssue, capitulo lix, p. 124.
How, after the cyte was assieged by water and by londe, our men assaylle it; and of a shotte that duc Godeffroy dyde shote, capitulo lx, p. 125.
How, after many assaultes, oure men beyng in counseyl, a Lombard cam to them, whiche offred to make an engyne that shold destroye the toun, capitulo lxi, p. 128.
How after that this engyne was so wel wrought, the wyf of

Solyman, with tweyne of her childeren, wente out of the toun, and were taken by our men, capitulo lxij, p. 130.
How themperour sente grete barons for to receyue the toun, after that our peple had acerteyned hym that they wold yelde it, capitulo lxiij, p. 132.
How our hoost departed on theyr iourneye, and how somme departed fro theyr felawship, & how Solyman determyned tassaille them, capitulo lxiiij, p. 134.
Of the bataylle that Solyman had ayenst somme of oure peple that were departed fro theyr felawship folyly, capitulo lxv, p. 136.
Of the dylygence that duc Godeffroy made whan he was aduertysed herof, and how Solyman was disconfyted, and his lygnage taken, capitulo lxvj, p. 137.
How the fourth day after this vyctorye, our peple went forth on theyr waye, and of the grete mesease of the hooste the same daye, capitulo lxvij, p. 140.
How somme of the grete barons of thoste, after to haue approuched Anthyoche the lasse, departed for to goo vytaylle them, capitulo lxviij, p. 142.
Here recounted thystorye of somme aduentures, that thenne fylle in thoost of cristen men, capitulo lxix, p. 144.
How Tancre, that was departed fro thoost, assieged Tarse, and toke it by certayn couenaunt, capitulo lxx, p. 146.
How Bawdwyn, broder of Godeffroy, sechyng his aduentures sawe Tancre and his peple tofore Tarse, and adressyd hym to theym, capitulo lxxj, p. 147.
Of thenuye that Bawdwyn and his peple had, to see the baner of Tancre on the walle of the toun, & how Tancre departed, capitulo lxxij, p. 148.
How a lytil after, Tancre cam to the cyte of Anamystre, whiche the Turkes helde, and toke it by assault, cap. lxxiij, p. 150.
How Bawdwyn entred in to Tharse, and how thre honderd pylgryms were slayn of the Turkes afore the same toun, capitulo lxxiiij, p. 151.
How the peple of Bawdwyn knewe the departyng of the Turkes, and of the slaughter of the cristen men, capitulo lxxv, p. 153.
How the sayd Bawdwyn retorned to the grete hoost, and how Tancre mayntened hym moche wel in conqueryng countrees, capitulo lxxvj, p. 157.
How Bawdwyn conquerd a grete contre vpon the Turkes, by the counseyl of a knyght Ermyne, named Pancrace, capitulo lxxvij, p. 158.

How they of Rages sente their messagers to Bawdwyn, prayeng hym that he wold come to theym, capitulo lxxviij, p. 160.
How this duc that was at Rages varyed for to holde this that he had promysed to Bawdwyn, capitulo lxxix, p. 163.
How Bawdwyn wente tassaylle famosette, a cyte nyghe to Rages, capitulo lxxx, p. 164.
How they of the toun of Rages slewe theyr duc, and chaas Bawdwyn for to be theyr lord, capitulo lxxxj, p. 166.
How Bawdwyn wente and assieged the toun of Sororge, nygh to Rages, & toke it, & of his ordenaunces, cap. lxxxij, p. 168.
How the grete hoost cam to fore Marese, and how the Turkes that were within fledde, and how our peple payned them to conquere countrees, capitulo lxxxiij, p. 169.
How it was commaunded vnto alle the barons to come to thoost, for to goo vnto Anthyoche, and of somme recountrees that they had in the waye, capitulo lxxxiiij, p. 172.
How Anthyoche by sucession of tyme, had dyuerse names, and of the noblesse of auncyente, capitulo lxxxv, p. 175.
Of the situacion of Anthyoche, capitulo lxxxvj, p. 176.
Who was then lord of Anthyoche, and by what maner he was comen vnto this seygnorye, capitulo lxxxvij, p. 178.
Diuerse oppinyons of our men tofore they had assieged Anthyoche, and how they acorded alle for tassiege it, capitulo lxxxviij, p. 180.
How, after the situacion of the toun, eche of the hye barons of thoost were lodged at the sayd siege, cap. lxxxix, p. 182.
How our peple assembled in counseyl for to fynde the moyen for to sende for vytaylle, and of a brydge that they made, capitulo lxxxx, p. 184.
How our peple stopped a yate without forth, and of a castel of tree that they made, capitulo lxxxxj, p. 186.
How oure peple were in grete meschyef, for as moche as they of the toun yssued and entred in & out with grete rowtes, capitulo lxxxxij, p. 187.
Of the famyne and mortalyte of thoost, after that they had be at the sayd siege the space of two monethes, capitulo lxxxxiij, p. 189.
How our peple ordeyned grete rowtes for to goo for vytaylle, and to reteyne the peple whiche fledde for hongre, capitulo lxxxxiiij, p. 191.
How Buymont and therle of Flaundres mayntened theym, beyng in fourage, of theyr recountrees, and of the gayn that they made, capitulo lxxxxv, p. 193.
How a grete rowte of cristen men were in this tyme slayn by the Turkes bytwene Fynemye & Terme, cap. lxxxxvj, p. 195.

How the vntrewe Greke Latyns departed fraudelously fro thoost, and other moo by the ensample of hym, capitulo lxxxxvij, p. 196.
How the prelates of thoost counseylled to doo penaunce for tappese god, & of thordenaunces that were made teschewe synne, capitulo lxxxxviij, p. 198.
How Buymont fonde a subtil remedye, for to delyuer and purge thoost of thespyes of the Turkes, capitulo lxxxxix, p. 202.
How the calyphe of Egypte sente his messagers with grete yeftes vnto our hoost, capitulo C, p. 202.
How Ancean, lord of Anthyoche, and the barons, sente vnto the Turkes theyr neyghbours for to demaunde socours, capitulo Cj, p. 203.
How oure peple knewe the couyne of the Turkes; of thembusshe that they made, and of theyr vyctorye and gayn that they had, capitulo Cij, p. 205.
How the Turkes of Anthyoche sprang out, and assaylled the lodgys of our peple, capitulo Ciij, p. 207.
Of a castel that our men made, of somme pylgryms that arryued atte porte, and how they were disconfyted by a busshement of Turkes, capitulo Ciiij, p. 208.
Of a bataylle where our men auenged them of the Turkes, and of a stroke that duc Godeffroy gaf in this bataylle, captulo Cv, p. 213.
How the cristen men thanked our lord of this vyctorye, and made a castel in their mahommerye, where they founde grete gayne, capitulo Cvj, p. 217.
Of a fortresse that Tancre made ouer the ryuer, and how he deffended it valyauntly, capitulo Cvij, p. 219
How thenne the Turkes of the toun began to haue mesease and sorowe, and our peple ease, capitulo Cviij, p. 221.
How therle Estyeuen of Chartres and of Bloys fledde fro thooste shamefully, capitulo Cix, p. 223.
How a cristen man, Emyrferyus, whiche was in Anthyoche, acqueynted hym with Buymont, capitulo Cx, p. 225.
Of som deuises that the said Emirferius sent to Buymont, & in what maner he acorded to delyuer hym the toun, capitulo Cxj, p. 227.
How Buymont discouerid this thyng to duc Godeffroy, to Huon le Mayne, to the duc of Normandye, and to therle of flaundres, capitulo Cxij, p. 229.
Of the grete socours that the soudan of Perse had sente to them of Anthyoche, and how Corbagat assieged Rages, capitulo Cxiij, p. 230.

How oure men, aduertysed of the grete hoost of Corbagat, sente somme of theyr knyghtes for to esteme them, and what they reported of that they had seen, cap. Cxiiij, p. 232.
Of the counseyl that oure peple toke for to ordeyne theyr nedes, whan they sawe the comyng of this ryghte grete hoost, capitulo Cxv, p. 233.
How after that Buymont had declared his fayte to alle thoost, they acorded that the toun shold be his, sauf therle of Tholouse, capitulo Cxvj, p. 235.
How they of Anthyoche had fere of treson, and how they assembled in counseil, & of that which Emirferius deposed therat, capitulo Cxvij, p. 238.
Of the meschyef that the Turkes made euery day to the cristen men that were in Anthyoche enhabytyng with them, capitulo Cxviij, p. 240.
Of the dylygence that Buymont made in this werke, and Emyrferius slewe his broder, and delyuerd the toun to the cristen men, capitulo Cxix, p. 243.
Of the mayntene of the cristen men in this pryse, & of thaffraye of the Turkes of the toun, capitulo Cxx, p. 246.
How Ancean, lord of Anthyoche, fledde by a posterne oute of the toun, and he was recountred and put to deth, capitulo Cxxj, p. 248.
How, after that our men had made grete slaughter of theyr enemyes, our men helde counseyl for to take the dongeon, thenne beyng seased of the Turkes, capitulo Cxxij, p. 250.
How, whyles that thooste garnysshed the toun, somme of thoost Corbagat cam rennyng to fore it, cap. Cxxiij, p. 252.
How, the thyrd day after the getynge & pryse of Anthyoche, Corbagat with his hoost arryued to fore it, capitulo Cxxiij, p. 254.
How after that the duc was within the barres of the toun, many of his men slayn, the Turkes entred in to the toun, capitulo Cxxv, p. 256.
How oure cristen men, that a lytil tofore had assieged the toun, were now assieged in the same, capitulo Cxxvj, p. 258.
How Corbagat dyde do assaylle a fortresse which therle of Flaundres kepte without the gate, and of that ensiewed, capitulo Cxxvij, p. 260.
Of the grete famyne and mesease that our men suffred in the cyte of Anthyoche, beyng assieged on alle sydes by the said Corbagat, capitulo Cxxviij, p. 262.
How the Turkes, felyng that our men were in suche meschyef of hongre, enforced them for tassaylle the cyte, capitulo Cxxix, p. 264.

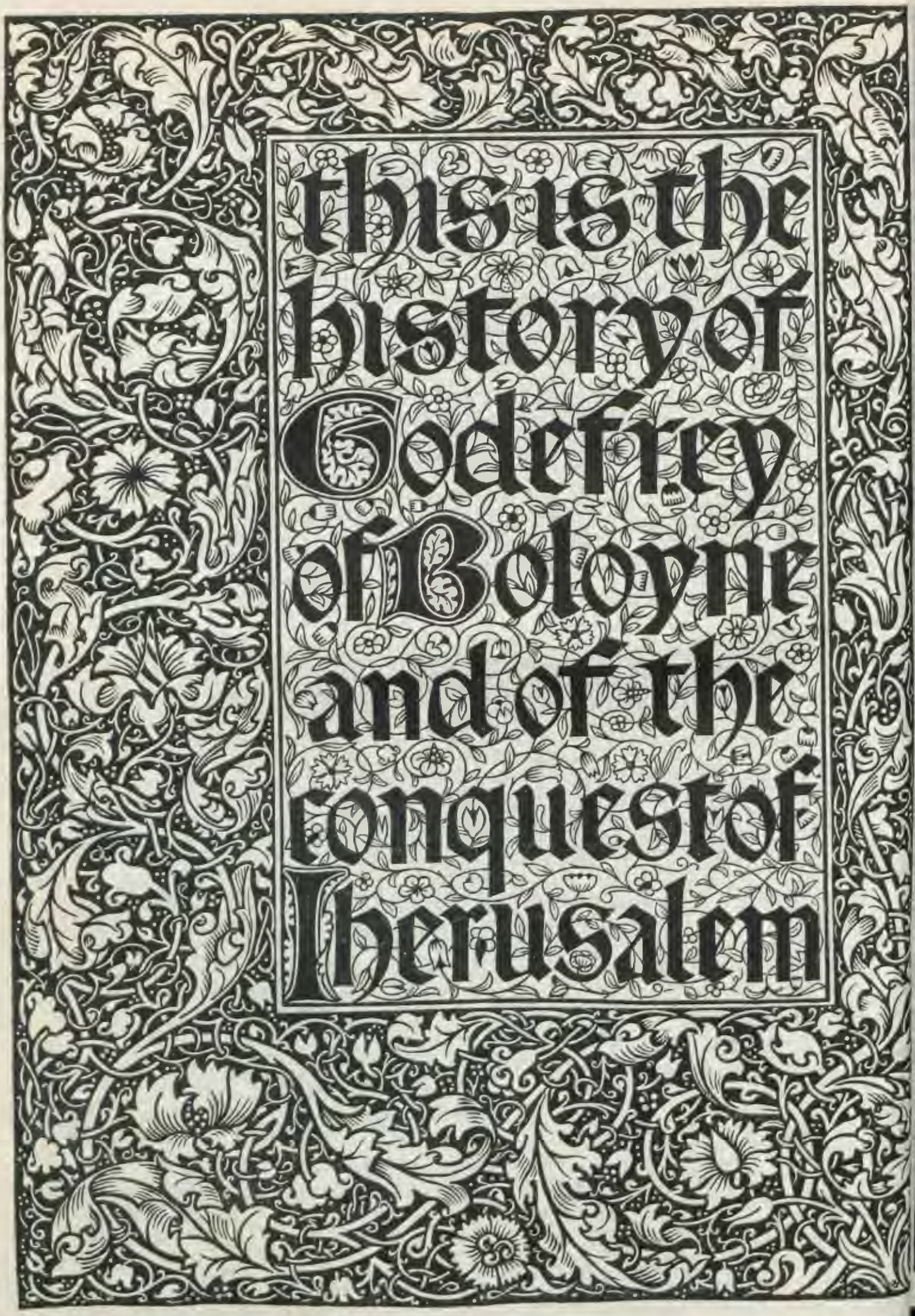
How Corbagat sente his men of armes, for to slee the maronners that were at the porte wherof our men had a grete losse, capitulo Cxxx, p. 265.
How Guyllem de Gratemenylle and his felaws fugitifs cam in to Allexandrye the lasse, capitulo Cxxxj, p. 267.
How therle of Chartres discouraged themperour of Constantynople, that he shold not goo and socoure our peple in Anthioche, capitulo Cxxxij, p. 268.
How by the warnynges of the sayd erle, themperour, whiche wold haue goon and socoured our men, retorned shortly, capitulo Cxxxiij, p. 271.
How our peple in Anthyoche, beyng aduertysed herof, were alle discouraged, and Corbagat enhaunced in pryde, capitulo Cxxxiiij, p. 273.
How the spere was founden that Ihesus was percyd on the crosse with, & of the comfort that our pilgrims toke thereby, capitulo Cxxxv, p. 275.
How Peter Theremyte was sent by our men vnto Corbagat, the wordes that he sayd, & answere of the sayd Corbagat, capitulo Cxxxvj, p. 277.
How the sayd Peter retorned in to the toun, and wold openly haue sayd his message, and of the subtyl counseyl of the duc, whiche wold not suffre it, capitulo Cxxxvij, p. 281.
How tofore er our men departed, they made redy theyr bataylles right wel in poynt, and of the nombre of them, capitulo Cxxxviij, p. 283.
How Corbagat was aduertysed of thyssuyng of our peple, and sente archers for to deffende the brydge, and how they were disconfyted, capitulo Cxxxix, p. 287.
How oure men reioysed them of a dewe descendyng fro heuen, and of theyr mayntene in approuchyng the Turkes, capitulo Cxl, p. 288.
How Corbagat ordeyned his bataylles, & how the two hoostes marched to gydre in bataylle, capitulo Cxlj, p. 289.
Of the fleyng of Corbagat, and of somme Turkes gadred to gydre and agayn discomfyted by our men, cap. Cxlij, p. 292.
How our peple retorned fro the chaas, and wente to the pyllage, and of the grete rychesses that they fonde, capitulo Cxliij, p. 295.
Of the fayr ordenaunces that oure peple made in the chirches of Anthyoche, and in other townes by, after this victorye, capitulo Cxliiij, p. 298.
How our peple sente ambassadours to themperour of Constantinople, for to somone hym for to come socoure them as he had promised, capitulo Cxlv, p. 301.

How the pylgryms of thoost desired to goo vnto Iherusalem, for teschewe the mortalyte and tacomplysshe theyr vowe, capitulo Cxlvj, p. 302.
The dylygence that duc Godeffroye made for to socoure a Turke, to whom he had promised to helpe hym, and how he reysed the siege, beyng tofore his castel, cap. Cxlvij, p. 305.
Of somme pylgryms goyng fro Anthyoche toward the duc Godeffroye, that were distressyd by the Turkes and rescowed by the duc, capitulo Cxlviij, p. 307.
How the duc alway enforced hym to augmente cristiente, and of somme fortresses by hym beten and destroyed, capitulo Cxlix, p. 308.
How the knyghtes of Rages wold haue betrayed Bawdwyn theyr lord, & how he was therof aduertysed, cap. Cl, p. 309.
How therle Bawdwyn was in daunger of deth, by the treson of a Turk named Balac, capitulo Clj, p. 311.
How therle of Tholouse toke the cyte of Albane, and therin constitued a bisshop, capitulo Clij, p. 315.
How oure peple retorned in to Anthyoche, and toke counseyl for to goo to Iherusalem, and of this that foloweth, capitulo Cliij, p. 316.
How the duc Godeffroy wold goo to Rages to vysyte his brother, er he began his way to Iherusalem, and of somme of his aduentures, capitulo Cliiij, p. 319.
How, after the cyte of Albane was conquerd, a grete debate aroos bytwene therle of Tholouse and Buymont, capitulo Clv, p. 320.
How, at the request of the comyn peple, therle of Tholouse ordeyned day for to conduyte them, capitulo Clvj, p. 322.
How therle of Tholouse auengyd hym of somme Turkes robbours which robbed his hoost, capitulo Clvij, p. 325.
How therle of Tholouse approchyd with his hoost vnto Archys, and of the situacion of the same, cap. Clviij, p. 327.
Of a toun named Tortuose, whiche Raymont toke with a rowte of pylgryms, and of the departyng of the other barons, capitulo Clix, p. 328.
How the duc assieged Gibelet, and of a trayson by whiche he lefte his siege, capitulo Clx, p. 331.
How thoost murmured of the spere founden in Anthyoche, and of the grete myracle that happed in the presence of alle thooste, capitulo Clxj, p. 334.
Of thambassade of Egypte comen with our men in to thooste of pylgryms, and of the reuerence that was don to them, capitulo Clxij, p. 336.
Of an embassade fro themperour of Constantynople comen

to our pylgryms, and of thanswer to the sayd ambassiate, capitulo Clxiij, p. 338.
How the comyn peple complayned them of this, that they wente not hastely to Iherusalem, capitulo Clxiiij, p. 341.
Of the grete dylygence that our men made for tapproche to Iherusalem, and of thalyaunces of somme Turkes made vnto them, capitulo Clxv, p. 343.
How the cristen men of Bethlehem receyued moche wel Tancre and his rowte, and sette his baner in the chirche of our lady, capitulo Clxvj, p. 347.
Of thardaunt desire that the peple had to see Iherusalem, and how thoost approched, & was lodged by ordenaunce, capitulo Clxvij, p. 348.
Of the situacion of Iherusalem, and of the descripcion, and also of many other cytees, townes, & countrees theraboute, capitulo Clxviij, p. 351.
How Iherusalem hath had many names, after dyuerse lordes therin regnyng, and yet of the situacion wel at longe, capitulo Clxix, p. 353.
Here thystorye deuyseth of many merueyllous edefyces conteyned in the same cyte of Iherusalem, and who made them, capitulo Clxx, p. 355.
How the Turkes of Iherusalem, whan they knewe the comyng of oure hooste, stopped the pyttes and fontaynes of the toun, capitulo Clxxj, p. 358.
Of the nombre of them of thoost, of them of Iherusalem, & how our men lodged them in the siege to fore Iherusalem, capitulo Clxxij, p. 360.
How our men began tassaylle Iherusalem, and of the grete dyligence that they dyde to make engyns for to take it, capitulo Clxxiij, p. 362.
How our peple were in grete meschyef atte sayd siege, & how the Turkes deserted them, by cause they myght yssue and entre in and out of the toun, capitulo Clxxiiij, p. 365.
How the Turkes enforced them to make merueyllous engyns ayenst oures, and of the meschyef don to the cristen men dwellyng in the toun, capitulo Clxxv, p. 367.
In this tyme arryued a ship of Genewys atte porte of Halappe, and how theyr messagers cam in to thooste, and of theyr request, capitulo Clxxvj, p. 368.
How alle the pylgryms, euerich after his estate, payned them to make thengyns for thassault, capitulo Clxxvij, p. 371.
Of the fayr processions that oure pylgryms made, to thende that god shold gyue to theym vyctorye, and how they pardonned eche other theyr male talentes & euyll wylles, captulo Clxxviij, p. 372.

How oure men sodenly transported in the nyght theyr engyns vnto that other parte of the toun for tassaylle on that syde, capitulo Clxxix, p. 374.
How, the daye folowyng, oure peple made a merueyllous assault, and how the Turkes defended them subtylly and wel, capitulo Clxxx, p. 376.
The nyght departed the sayd assault, our peple withdrewe them, and how they watched theyr engyns, and the Turkes the toun, capitulo Clxxxj, p. 379.
How oure peple retorned agayn on the morn to thassault, and of the sorceryes that they wold haue charmed one of our engyns, capitulo Clxxxij, p. 380.
Of the dispar of our peple at the sayd assault, and how they were recomforted by a knyght vnknowen and euydent myracles, capitulo Clxxxiij, p. 382.
How therle of Tholouse assaylled vygorously toward the south, and of thardaunt desire that eche man had to doo wel, capitulo Clxxxiiij, p. 384.
Of the pryse and takyng of Iherusalem, and how duc Godeffroy entred fyrst on the walles, and who folowed, capitulo Clxxxv, p. 385.
Of the mayntenyng of our peple entred in to the toun toward the northeest, and therle of Tholouse, herof al ignoraunt, assaylled alwey, capitulo Clxxxvi, p. 388.
How x M Turkes were slayn in the temple, and of the grete tresour that Tancre fonde in the temple, cap. Clxxxvij, p. 390.
Of the ordenaunces that the cristen men made tofore they vnarmed them after that the toun was taken, capitulo Clxxxviij, p. 392.
How the cristen men, that had charged theyr message for theyr delyueraunce to Peter Theremyte, knewe hym, capitulo Clxxxix, p. 395.
How they clensyd the toun of the dede bodyes; of many other ordenaunces, & how the dongeon was yolden to therle of Tholouse, capitulo Clxxxx, p. 396.
How the hye barons of thoost assembled for to chose a kynge of Iherusalem, and thoppynyon of the clergye vpon the same, capitulo Clxxxxj, p. 399.
How the duc Godeffroy was chosen kynge of Iherusalem, and how he was presented to our lord in his chirche of the holy sepulcre, capitulo Clxxxxij, p. 402.
How duc Godeffroy after his election requyred therle of Tholouse that he shold delyuer to hym the tour Dauyd, capitulo Clxxxxiij, p. 404.
Of a patriarke electe & chosen in Iherusalem, & how there was founden a part of the veray crosse, cap. Clxxxxiiij, p. 406.

How duc Godeffroy payned hym to amende the royamme; of his good condicions and statutes, cap. Clxxxxv, p. 407.
Of the sayeng of the countesse of Boloyne, moder of the sayd duc, that she sayd of her iij oldest sones was verefyed, capitulo Clxxxxvj, p. 410.
Of the wagyng of a bataylle which was bytwene duc Godefroy and an hye baron of Almayne, capitulo Clxxxxvij, p. 411.
Of a fayr fayte of armes, which that the duc dide in a bataille that themperour of Almayne had ayenst them of Saxone, capitulo Clxxxxviij, p. 413.
How the valyaunt duc Godeffroy augmented holy chirche, and he wold neuer bere crowne, capitulo Clxxxxix, p. 416.
How the Turkes of Arabe & of Egypte made their sommance for to come in to Sury tassaylle our cristen men, capitulo CC, p. 418.
How the crysten men, whan they knewe thyse tydynges, cryed to god for mercy and for to haue vyctorye, cap. CCj, p. 420.
How oure men assembled and ordeyned theyr bataylles for to fyghte ayenst the Turkes, and how the Turkes were disconfyted, capitulo CCij, p. 422.
How somme of oure barons wolde retorne home, after that they had don theyr pylgremage, capitulo CCiij, p. 426.
How Buymont and Bawdwyn, acerteyned of the conquest of Iherusalem, wold accomplysshe theyr pylgremage, capitulo CCiiij, p. 429.
How our cristen men chosen a very patriark in Iherusalem, and assigned to hym rentes, capitulo CCv, p. 432.
How by thatysement of somme men a grete debate sourded bytwene the duc & the patriark of Iherusalem, cap. CCvj, p. 433.
Here recounteth thistorye, how the fourth part of Iherusalem cam vnto the patriake of the same, cap. CCvij, p. 435.
Of the same mater, capitulo CCviij, p. 437.
How duc Godeffroy, for taugmente cristiente, assyeged one of the tounes of the Turkes, capitulo CCix, p. 440.
How the Turkes brought presentes to the duc Godeffroy at the sayd siege & of theyr deuyses to gydre, cap. CCx, p. 442
How Buymont was taken in goyng to Meletene, whiche cyte the lord of the toun wold haue yolden to hym, cap. CCxj, p. 444.
How the duc Godeffroy assembled his peple and entred in to Arabye, and of the gayn that he made, of two grete strokes that he smote on two camellis, and of his deth, capitulo CCxij, p. 446.
Here endeth the table of the content and chaptres nombred of this present book, entitled the siege and conqueste of Iherusalem by cristen men.


thisisthe
historyof
Godefrey
of Boloyne
andofthe
conquestof
Ierusalem

Here begynneth the boke intituled Eracles, and also of Godefrey of Boloyne, the whiche speketh of the conquest of the holy londe of Iherusalem, conteynyng diuerse warres and noble faytes of Armes made in the same royamme, and in the contrees adiacent, and also many meruayllous werkes happed and fallen, as wel on this syde, as in tho partyes this tyme duryng, and how the valyant duc Godefrey of Boloyne conquerd with the swerd the sayd royamme, and was kynge there.

The first chapitre treateth how Eracles conquerd Perse & slewe Cosdroe, & brought in to Iherusalem the very crosse, capitulo primo

THE Auncyent hystoryes saye that Eracles was a good crysten man, and gouernour of thempyre of Rome, but in his tyme Machomet had ben, whiche was messager of the deuil, and made the peple to vnderstonde that he was a prophete sente from our lorde. In the tyme of Eracles was the fals lawe of Machomet sowen and sprad abrode in many partyes of thoryent, & namely in Arabye, in so moche that the prynces of the londes yet wold not gyue faith to his secte that he prechid and taught, whiche is cursed and euyl, but he constrayned them by force and by swerd to, and alle their subgets to obeye to his commandemens, and

to byleue in his lawe ❧ Whan Eracles had conquerd Perse, and had slayn Cosdroe, which was a puissaunt kynge, he brought agayn to Iherusalem the very crosse, whiche they had ladde in to Perse, and abode and dwellyd in the londe of Surrye. And dide do ordeyne and chose a patriarke, a moche wise man named Modeste, by whos counseil he dyde do make agayn the chirches, and habylled the holy places, and clensed them that the tyraunt Cosdroe of Perse had smeton doun and destroyed ❧ Eracles sette grete entente and made grete costes for to repayre them, and whiles he entended ther aboute, Homar, the sone of Captap, whiche was a prynce of Arabe, the thirde after Machomet, cam in to this contree named Palestyne, with so grete nombre of peple that alle the londe was couerd with them, and had thenne taken by force a moche stronge cyte of that londe named Iadre. from thens he drewe hym toward Damaske, and assieged the cyte, & by strengthe toke hyt, ffor he had so grete a nombre of peple that nothyng myght resiste hym ❧ Themperour Heracles, which yet dwellyd in a parte of this londe named Cylyce, herde tydynges of this peple, and sente good espyes & trewe, in whiche he trusted, for to see and serche their couine, for he desyred moche to haue a doo with thyse peple on the felde, and fyghte and chase them out of the londes & cytees whiche obeyed to Cristente & to thempyre of Rome. But whan his messagers cam, he had by them knowleche certaynly that he had not peple ynowh to fyhte ayenst them, ffor they were so fyers and so

orguyllous of the grete nombre of peple that they had, that they thoughte nothyng myght resiste them. And ther vpon Heracles had deliberacion & counseilled with his peple, that it shold be lest dishonour to departe and retorne in to his contre, than suffre his peple to be destroyed, and myght not amende it. Thus thenne, he departed out of Surye, by cause the kynge of Arabe and his peple were of so grete power and so proude, as they that fonde alle the contre habandonned to them, ffor in a short tyme they had conquered alle the contre of Surye vnto Egypte. One thyng that was to fore happenned in thys contree, whyche heelp moche them of Arabe tencrece their power, ffor Cosdroe the puissaunt kynge of Perse, of whom I haue spoken to fore, had ben with grete puissaunce in Surye, and had destroyed the cytees and castels, brent townes and chirches, and slayn grete partye of the peple, and the remenaunt had brought in to captiuite, & toke the cyte of Iherusalem with force, and slewe within the toun xxxvj M men. And bare away with hym the veray crosse that our lord Ihesu Cryste suffred deth on for vs, and ladde with hym the patriarke of Iherusalem named Zacharye, and brought hym with hym with the other caytyfs.

Here recounteth thistorye how that the puissaunt kynge Cosdroe wastyd the empyre of Rome, for tauenge the deth of themperour Maurice, fader of his wyf, capitulo ij

NOW I shal telle yow why he had so doon; lyke as I sayde, he was a ryght myghty kynge, now had ther be an emperour at Rome, named Mauryce, whiche as we fynde was moche acqueynted with seint Gregorie, & was his gossib, ffor the sayd seynt Gregorye had cristenyd to hym a doughter named Marie. This Maurice gaf her in maryage to this Cosdroe, and ther by was a grete frenship bytwene them & grete alyaunce bytwene them of Perse and the Romaynes as longe as themperour lyued, in suche wyse that for the loue of his wyf and the Romayns, whyche were Cristen, thys Emperour made Cosdroe to be baptised. But after it befylle that focas lewe in treson this emperour Maurice, and was emperour in his place, and was called Foca Cezar. Whan Cosdroe herd herof he had merveyllous grete sorow, grete desdayne, grete orguyel, & grete hate ayenst the peple of the Romayns, by cause that he whiche had slayn theyr lorde vntrewly, and was yet blody of the blood of the emperour, they had chosen to be their lord, and had gyuen to hym thempire; ffor this cause he entended to his power to hurte and destroye al thempire of Rome. And for this cause, for tauenge the deth of the fader of his wyf, whiche ofte enticed hym therto,

he entred in to the londe of Surye, whiche thenne was subget to thempyre of Rome, and wasted and destroyed it, lyke as I haue said to fore, and voyded almost alle the peple that was therin. for whiche cause this kynge Homar aforsaid, and his peple of Arabe, that fonde this londe so voyde, myght the better doo theyr wylles with alle.

How this puissaunt kynge entred in to Iherusalem, & demaunded dylygently of the Temple, and reedyfied it, and assigned grete reuenues therto for tentretene it, capitulo iij

WHAN they cam in the holy cyte of Iherusalem, they fonde it destroyed and deserte, sauf a fewe cristen men whiche dwellyd there and were suffred that they shold lyue as cristen men, and make agayn their chirches, and that they shold haue a patriarke. In the while that this myghty prynce duellid in Iherusalem, he began tenquyre moche ententifly of the peple of the toun, and pryncipally of the patriarke whiche was named Sophonye, and had ben chosen after Modeste, whiche was deed, of whom I haue spoken to fore, in what place the temple of our lord had be whan Titus the prynce deffeted & destroyed al the cyte. He shewid to hym the very certayn place, and the fondamentes, and a parte of the muraylles whiche were thenne yet apperyng. He made anon to be sought and to be brouht to hym, without longe taryeng, grete nombre of masons & of carpenters, and dide do be sette stones of marble and of other

manere, and alle thynges necessarye therto he dide do assemble as moche as shold nede, and deuised the maner and ordynance of the mesure, and of the dyspences for to make the temple. And, as he was a noble prynce of hye affaire and noble, he brought anon to ende this that he had emprised, in suche wise that the temple was reedefyed in suche forme and estate as it yet apeereth. This saide prynce hym self assygned grete rentes and reuenues ffor euer more, for to sustene and repayre alle that shold be nedeful to thedyfices and other necessities of the temple, and for the seruyng of the lyght, day and nyght, by the handes of them that he commysed to kepe the temple. ¶ Ther is in the same temple, within and without, letters of golde musaique in the langage of Arabe, whiche deuyse as we suppose, who was he that reedefyed the temple, and what tyme, and how moche it coste to rebylde it.

How Charlemayne by his lyberalite gate for the prouffyt of cristen peple in hethenes, thamytye of hethen prynces, capitulo iiij

THUS it happed that this holy cyte of Iherusalem, for the synnes of the peple, was in seruage & in the daunger of hethen peple longe tyme, that is to wete cccxxxiiij yere contynuelly, but not allway in one manere. They were one tyme better, & another tyme werse, lyke as the lordes chaunged, whiche were of dyuerse maners and condicions, but neuertheles thise peple were alway in subiection. ¶ It happed

that one grete lorde of this saide lawe had nyghe in his seignorye alle the londe of thoryent, sauf only Ynde. This prynce was named Haron, and his surname Ressit. This man was of so grete cortosye, of so grete largesse, of so hye vygour, & of so grete affaires in alle good maners, that yet the paynems speke of hym, lyke as they doo in fraunce of Charlemayn. They were bothe in one tyme, this Haron and this Charlemain, & therfore, in their tyme, the cristen peple in Iherusalem were in better poynt than thei had euer be to fore vnder ony of the hethen peple, ffor Charlemayn the good emperour, whiche so moche trauailled and suffryd for our lorde, and so moche enhaunced the fayth of Ihesu Criste, to thende that the cristiente in Surye myght be the better and more debonairly cherysshed and entreated, pourchassed so longe that he had the loue and acqueyntaunce of the said Haron, by messages that wente and cam. Wherof this Haron had moche grete ioye, and aboue alle the prynces of the world he louid and honoured the emperour Charlemayne, and the cristen peple that were vnder hym. And alle the holy places that were vnder his power, he wolde that they shold be entretiened, mayntened and well aourned, lyke as Charlemayne had desyred and sente to hym worde, wherof it semed that our peple beynge there, were more vnder the power of Charlemayne than vnder the power of the hethen men. Whan he myght fynde the messagers of Charlemayne, he charged and laded them alle with richesses of thoryent, with clothes of sylke, with spyces, ieweles of golde of dyuerse facions, & with ryche precious stones, whiche

he sente to his frende Charlemayn, & largely he gaf and rewarded the messagers. And emonge al other thinges, he sente into fraunce an olyphant. This debonayrte pourchased the good Charlemayn for the crysten men that were in captiuyte vnder the said Aaron, and in lyke wyse the said Aaron, for the loue that he bare to Charlemayn, pourchassed for other cristen men that were in al hethenes vnder dyuerse lordes, as in Egypte, & in Aufrique, that is to seye in Alexandrye, and in Cartage. for he sente grete yeftes and moche good to sustene the poore cristen men, & sente grete presentes vnto theyr lordes and maistres myscreauntes, and amyable letters, in suche wise, that he pourchassed their loue and acqueyntaunce, by whiche they conteyned them more debonairly vnto cristiens that were in theyr subiection. Thus dyde the hye prynce Charlemayn vnto the hethen lordes, that were fer fro hym, for it is to be bileuid, that yf he had ben nyghe to them, that he wold haue essayed for to haue delyuerd in another maner the peple of our lord, lyke as he dyde ryght gloriously in many places.

Of the noyse that sourded emonge the hethen men discordyng in theyr lawe, and how they of Egypte yssued out of theyr londe, and of the euyllis that they dyde, capitulo v

IN this season it happed that a grete debate sourded bytwene the mescreauntes of Egypte, & the mescreauntes of Perse, ffor euerych partye of this peple wold haue the seignourye vpon the other. The rote of this grete hate and enuye sourded & aroos of that whyche discorded, and yet dyscorde, of certayn poyntes of theyr lawe, in suche wise that they haue dyuerse names. For they that holde the lawe of Perse haue the name in theyr langage Souni. And they of the lawe of Egypte be named Siha, and they be not so ferre fro the very crysten lawe, as ben the other. It happed that they of Egypte yssued out of theyr londe, & conquered alle the londes vnto Antyoche, and emonge the other cytees that were taken, the holy cyte of Iherusalem cam vnder theyr power and seignourye. The peple that were there in captiuyte were resonably wel entreated, tyl it happed by the suffraunce of god that his peple shold be chastised, and that was by a desloyal and cruel lord and calyphe of Egypte, whiche was named Hecam. He passed in malyce and cruelte alle his predecessours in suche wyse that the peple of his owen lawe helde hym as wode of pryde, of rage, & of falsehed. Emonge the other tyrannyes, he commanded to caste doun to the ground the chyrche of the sepulcre of

our lorde Ihesu Cryste, whiche had ben made, first of Constantyne themperour, by a noble Patryarke of Iherusalem named Maxyme, and after reedefyed by Modest that other patriarke ❧ In the tyme of Heracles, of whom we haue spoken to fore, he sente to them a fals caliphe, one his bayly, whiche was lord of Rames, and named Hyart. This dyde the commandement of his lord, & caste it doun to grounde. In this tyme was patriarke of this chyrche a right valyaunt man named Oreste, and was vncle vnto this vntrew kynge of Egypte, broder of his moder, and this was the reson why he was so cruel ayenste crystiente, ffor the heethen men sayde that he shold neuer be ferme in theyr lawe, by cause he had a crysten moder. And for to take away this suspecion he destroyed this holy chirche of the holy sepulcre, whiche was the fontayne & begynnyng of our very creaunce.

How thafflicyon, iniuries & tormentes of crysten men grewe in the tyme of calyphe Hecam, capitulo vj

HERO thenne forthon began thestate of our peple at Iherusalem to be more greuous & more sorowful than it was wonte to be, ffor they toke grete displaysir at theyr herte for the chirche of the resurrexion of our lorde, whiche they sawe so destroyed emonge them. And on that other syde they were charged ouer sorowfully wyth tributes, taskes & tayllages,

ayenst the custome & preuyleges graunted to them of hethen prynces. And also, they were deffended to make ony festes on the dayes of theyr hye festes, but thenne they were compellyd to trauaylle by force and angre, or they were commanded not to yssue out of theyr howses ne dores, but holde them cloos wythin, to thende that they shold make no semblaunce of feste wythin them. And yet also they myght not be therin in pees ne assured, but they caste at them by the wyndows grete stones, donge, dyrte, and foul ordure. And yf it happed somtyme a crysten man to saye a light worde that dyspleased ony of the hethen men, anon he shold be taken like a murderer, and brought to pryson, and shold lose therfore his fyste or fote, or he was brought to the gybet, & alle the good that he had, was brought in to the handes of the calyphe. Sometyme they wold take the chyldren of the crysten peple, bothe sones and doughtres, in to theyr owne howses, and made them mescreauntes ayenst theyr wylle, and somtyme by betynge, and another wyth lyes & flaterye, made many yonge folke to renye our fayth. And thus they dyde to our peple moche shame and grief

But notwythstondyng, good crysten men lefte not, but admonested & conforted the peple to suffre al this with a good herte and veri penitence for the faith of Ihesu Criste, and promysed them for thise shames, the ioye, thonour and the glorye of heuen, whiche euer shal endure. The good cristen peple spack so to gydre, that they enforced them to holde & kepe their cristen fayth the more surely by cause they dyde them so moche harm, and repreef.

IT sholde be ouer longe a thinge to recounte to you alle the meseases and the myschiefs that the peple of our lord endured that tyme, but I shal shew yow one exampel, to thende that by the same ye vnderstonde the more of other. One of the hethen men, ouermoche malicious & vntrewe, whiche hated of ouermoche cruel hate the cristen men, he aduised and thoughte on a day how he myghte brynge them to deth. He sawe wel that alle the cyte held the temple in moche grete honour and reuerence, whiche was reedefyed, & the laye peple named it the temple dominus, and that they whiche had the charge to kepe it dide al their peyne to kepe it cleen & nette. Now ther was a place to fore the temple, whiche was named thaitre of the temple, whiche they wolde kepe as clene as cristen men kepe their chirches and aultres. And this vntreu man, that I haue said yow of to fore, toke by nyght, in suche wise that no man sawe it, a dede hound al roten and stynkyng, and brought it in to the same aitre to fore the temple. On the morn, whan they of the toun cam to the temple, they fonde this dogge. Thenne sourded and aroos a crye, a noyse, and a clamour so grete thurgh alle the toun that ther was nothinge spoken of but of this hounde. They assembled, and put out of doubte that this was not doon ne caste there but by the cristyens. Alle the hethen men accorded to this poynt that alle the cristen peple shold be put to deth with the swerd, and there were theyr swerdes drawen redy out of those that sholde smyte of all their heedes.

EMONGE the crysten men was a yonge man of a moche grete herte & of grete pyte, and spak to the peple, & said to them: fair lordes, trouthe it is, that I am not culpable in this thinge, ne none of yow, as I byleue certaynly. But it shold be ouermoche grete dommage yf we alle shold deye thus, ffor by this shold alle the cristendomme be quenchid in this londe, wherfore I haue thought in myself, how I shal delyuer yowalle, by thayde of our lord. Two thynges I desyre of you, for the loue of god, that one is that ye praye for my sowle in your orisons, that other is that ye deporte & honoure my poure lygnage. For I will take this thinge on me, and saye that I allone haue doon this fayt, whiche they put on vs alle. They that doubted the deth had grete ioye whan they herd this, & promysed to hym their orisons, and thonoure of his lygnage. In this maner, that they of his lygnage euermore on palmsonday shal bere tholyue, whiche signyfyeth Ihesu Criste whan he cam in to Iherusalem. Thus this man cam to fore the Iustice, and said to them that the other cristen men were nothyng culpable in this fayt, and sayde that he hym self had doon the dede. Whan they herde this, they delyuerd all the other, and he only had his heed smeton of.

How at the requeste of themperour of Constantynoble the cristen men obteyned lycence to bylde agayn the chirche of the holy sepulcre, capitulo vij.

SUCHE diseases suffred the peple of our lord in this tyme; but Ihesu cryste, that wel can sette remedies in thinges merueillous & out of ordre, & recomforte them after, ffor this vntrewe prynce of Egipte, Hecam, deyde, and his sone, named Daher, regned after hym. This Daher renewed the alyaunces with themperoure of Constantynoble, whyche had to name Romayn, and was named in surname Eliopolitans. He prayde the said Daher, whom he moche louyd, that he wold suffre that the Christen men myght redefye the chirche of the holy sepulcre, whiche his fader had do beten doun: he graunted it for the loue of themperour. It was not longe after that this emperour deyde, & after hym regned Constantyn, whiche had to surname Monomaques, whiche is to saye in Grece as a man fyghtyng allone. The poure cristen that were in Iherusalem had lycence for to make agayn their chirches, but they had not the power, for their pouerte, and herupon they had a counseyl that they wold sende to themperour, and requyre hym for goddes sake that he wold helpe & socour of his almesse, for the reedefyeng of this holy werke.

THER was in the toun of Iherusalem a good man named Iohan Cariaintes, born in Constantynople, & had ben a grete gentilman of the contre as of his lignage, but yet was he more gentil of herte & good maners. This man was comen on pylgremage to the holy sepulcre, and had lefte alle the bobaunce and thonour of the world, and had taken thabyte of relygion, ffor to folowe our lord Ihesu Criste in pouerte in the place where he suffred pouerte and messease for vs. This said Iohan was prayd of alle the cristen peple there, that he would entrepryse this message for to go to themperour, for the loue of god and of them. He dyde it with a good wylle, and departed, and cam in to Constantynoble, and spak to themperour, & dide alle that he was requyred, ffor themperour graunted that he wolde make alle the dispences that shold be nedeful to the byldyng of this holy chirche, & wolde reedefye it at his owen coste. This Iohan was moche ioyous whan he had so wel accomplissyd his message, & toke leue of themperour, and cam agayn in to Iherusalem. Whan he had said to the peple the good tydinges that he brought, they made grete ioye, & many wepte grete teeres for pyte, by cause they thoughte that our lord wolde not al way forgete them, whan he had doo to them such comforte. In this tyme was patriarke in Iherusalem an holy man named Nycefores.

THEMPEROUR held ryght wel his promesse, ffor he sente without taryeng grete partye of his tresour, and dide do make the chyrche of the holy sepulcre moche hye in thestate and manere that it is yet, & was ful made the yere of thincarnacion of our lord a Mxlviij, and had ben xxxvij yere destroyed. This was ryght the yere to fore that our peple recouerd the cyte. Whan the cristen men there had made agayn the chirche, they were moche ioyous, and were also therin well comforted of all theyr meseases and repreues that they suffred, wherof they had grete plente, not only in Iherusalem, but also in alle the cytees aboute, as in Bethleem, and in the cyte where Amos the prophete was born, named Tecua. As ofte as the Caliphe sente in to the lande a newe bayly, so ofte were sette on them new tributes & taillages, whiche they myght not wel paye; and yf they payed not, anon they menaced them for to caste doun their chirches to the ground, & saide they had of their lord commandement so to doo. Thus in this sorow were the cristen peple, one while vnder them of Egipte, another tyme vnder them of Perse, but this was not but yet a begynning to them, as whan they cam vnder the power of the Turques, ffor the Turques conquerd the royame of Perse, & also of Egypte. Thus the holy cyte fylle in to their demayne, whiche demened it so cruelly and tormented it so cruely, that it semed to the peple of our lord that they had be in fraunchise and in grete reste vnder them of Egypte & of Perse. Thus helde the Turkes them there viij yere.

Of the Turkes, fro wens they cam, and how they grewe in to grete puisaunce, and dide chese them a kynge for to mayntene their warres, capitulo viij.

FOR as moche as we haue spoken of the Turkes, and shalle ofte speke of them in this book, me semeth good that I saye to yow fro whens this peple cam first, & wherby they had so grete power. The Turke and Turkemans cam out of a lynage, rote, & of a contre toward the eest whiche is in Asye, and were a peple moche rude and without ordynaunce, ne had no contreye, ne no certayn dwellyng place, but went all aboute fro londe to londe, & sought pastures for their beestis, ne neuer duellid in castel ne toun. And whan they wolde meue from one place to another, thenne wente euery lynage by hym self, & they made in euery kynred or lygnage a prince whiche was theyr iusticer; by thise prynces, all their mesfeates and trespeaces were redressyd and amendid, and they obeyed, and dide that he or they commanded. They caryed with them alle theyr thynges, seruauntes, menages, houshold, their oxen, kyen, sheep, & other beestis. In this thynge was alle theyr rychesse, they laboured no londe by eeryng ne sowyng, ne they coude neyther bye ne selle, ffor they had no moneye; but their beestes, their chese & mylke, changed thei for to haue other thinges that they neded. Whan they had ben in one place, and had nede to goo in to another, they sente the wisest of their peple vnto the princes of the contre, & they made couenantes

for them for to dwelle in their wodes and pastures for the tribute that they shold paye lyke as they shold accorde.

NOW it happed that a grete partye of this peple departed fro the other, and entred in to the londe of Perse, and fonde this londe moche plentyvous of pastures, & ryght good of suche as they neded, and gaf to the kynge the trybute that they were accorded fore, & dwellyd there I can not telle how longe. This peple began to growe and multeplye in suche wise that there were of them a meruayllous grete nombre, in so moche that the kynge and they of the contre self began to haue grete doubte of them & fere, leste they myght doo harme by the power that ouermoche grewe and encreced. Here vpon they had a counseyl emonge them, that they wold dryue & chasse them by force out of theyr londe, but after they chaunged theyr counseyl, and semed better that they shold charge them wyth suche trybutes that they myghte not suffre, & thenne they shold departe by annoy, and of their owne agrement lyke as they were come. Thus they dyde, but they suffred longe thise greues, til atte laste, whan they myghte nomore suffre, they counseylled emong them self that they wold nomore paye to the kynge. Whan the kynge herde this, he dide do crye thurgh alle his royamme, that they shold yssue out of it by a certayn day that was named to them, & that they shold passe the flood named Cobar, whiche is vtterist part of the royamme of Perse on that other syde. And whan they

were departed, & on the playn, they sawe them self ouer and apperceyued that they were so grete plente of peple that no londe myght suffer them, ne withstonde them yf they helde hem to gydre. For to fore, whan they dwellid in Perse, they dwellid fer a/sondre, in suche wise that they knewe not their power; but now whan they sawe that they were so many, they had meruaillous grete desdayne of that they had suffred, and the pryde and grieuousnes of one prince. They take counseyl emonge them, and sawe that no peple myght resiste them, but myght conquere alle londes ther aboute.

BUT one thynge destrobled them, and that was, they had no kynge on them. And thenne they dyde in this manere, they fonde emonge them an hondred lignages, of whiche euerich had his meyne, & euery lignage brought forth an arowe marked in such wise that the arowe of eche lignage myght be knowen ❧ And whan alle thise arowes were brought to gydre, they called a lytil chylde, and commanded hym to take vp suche one as he wolde, ffor they had acorded emonge them, that of the lignage that the arowe shold be taken vp by the chylde, they shold chese them a kynge. The chylde toke vp one of a lignage that after was called Selduces. Now they knewe that of this lignage they muste chese a kynge, & they toke an hondred of the most prudent & wise men that they coude fynde in al the lygnage, and commanded that eche of them shold brynge an arowe, wheron his name shold be wreton, and after they called the chylde, & bad hym

take vp one of the arowes, and concluded emonge them, that he shold be kynge, of whom he toke vp the arowe. He toke vp one, on whiche was wreton Selduc. This Selduc was a moche goodly man, and gretely honoured in his lignage: he was grete and stronge, a good knyght and wel proued, and semed wel to be a good man and of hye werkes. They chees alle this man for to be theyr kynge, as they had promysed, and dyde to hym homage and fealte by oth, and obeyed hym, and honoured hym, lyke as is don to a new kynge.

THIS kynge, for the first of his commandementis, commanded & made do crye ouer all, on payne of lesyng of theyr lyues, they shold repasse & goo ouer agayn the flood of Cobar, and retorne agayn in to Perse, ffor they wold no lengre be in danger for to seche place and stede where they myght dwelle, but wolde that they shold conquere this londe and other, and reteyne them in theyr seignourye. Lyke as he sayd & commanded it was don, ffor the peple conquerd in a short space by force of armes, not only the royame of Perse, but alle Arabe and other contrees of thoryent, and toke them by strengthe, and reteyned them vnder theyr power. And thus it happed that this peple that tofore had be so rude, and lyued so out of rule as beestis, after gate in lasse than fourty yere so grete seignouryes, as ye now here. And mounted in so grete pryde, that they wolde no more haue the name lyke as the other had whence they came, wherfore they were called Turkes. The other

that wold not leue theyr maner of lyuynge were alle-way named, and yet ben, Turquemans. Thise peple, whan they had conquerd this contre of thoryent, they wold entre in to the royamme of Egypte, ffor they were of moche grete puissaunce, and descended in to Surrye, and conquered the contre. And emonge the other cytees, they toke the holy cyte of Iherusalem, & suche peple as they fonde there they demened right euyl, & tormentid and greued them more than they had ben tofore, lyke as I haue sayd to you to fore.

Of thorryble synnes regnyng thenne in crystiante, as wel in thyse partyes as in tho partyes, capitulo ix

WE haue herd how this peple that were crysten were demened, in this contre of thoryent. Now ye may here how the crystiente is contened & ruled in other partyes of the world. Knowe ye for certayn that this tyme were founden but fewe that had the drede of our lord in theyr herte. Alle right wysnesse, alle trouthe, alle pyte were faylled; the fayth of Ihesu cryste was as it had be quenchid, and of charyte men spack not: debates, discordes, and warres were nyhe oueral, in suche wyse that it semed that thende of the world was nyghe, by the signes that our lord sayth in the gospell, ffor pestylences and famynes were grete on therthe, ferdfulnes of heuen, tremblyng of therthe in many places, and many other thinges there were

that ought to fere the hertes of men, to drawe them fro euyl, and to brynge to them the remembraunce of our lord, but they were as deef & blynde of heeryng & of seeyng this that was nedeful to them for to saue theyr sowles. The prynces and the barons brente and destroyed the contrees of theyr neyghbours: yf ony man had saued ony thynge in theyr kepyng, theyr owne lordes toke them, and put them in prison and in greuous tormentis, for to take fro them suche as they had, in suche wyse that the chyldren of them that had ben riche men, men myght see them goo fro dore to dore for to begge & gete theyr brede, and somme deye for hungre and mesease. As to the chirches ne religyouses, they kept not theyr priuyleges ne none other fraunchyses, but were taken fro them alle that mocht be founden, as wel meobles, rentes, & other thynges. Ye the crosses, chalyces, & the sensours, they toke fro the chirches, and molte them for to selle. Yf ony fledde to the chirche for to warante and saue hym, he was taken & drawen out vylaynously, as out of a tauerne or an other place. To monkes and clerkes were doon wronges, and all the shames they myght. Ther was no iustyce, but on them that trespaced not ne forfayted nothyng. The contrees were ful of theues and of murdriers: in cytees ne in good townes was noman sure. There regned customably dronkenship, lecherye, playeng at dyse and roberyes: ther was no mariage kepte, ne lignage, and also as of euyl lyf were the clerkes or werse, as the other. The bysshops ne the other prelates durst not reprehende ne chastyse none for theyr euyl werkes. The rentes of holy

chirche they gaf ne payd none, but solde the benefices. And fynably I saye yow, that alle euyl werkes had surprysed alle crystiente, in suche wyse that it semed that euerych dyde payne for to serue the deuyll.

Of a batayll that themperour Romayne of Constantynople had ayenst a puissaunt prynce of thoryent named Belphet, capitulo x

OUR lorde, that by his pyte chastyseth in this world for to spare in that other, & can wel bete his chylderen that he loueth for to saue them, suffred a grete flawe to come in to the contre for to chastyse the peple, ffor in this tyme, whan themperour Romayn was lord in Constantynoble, yssued out of the partyes of thoryent a puissant hethen prynce named Belphet, whiche brought with hym so grete plente of peple out of Perse and Surye, that they couerd alle the contre, & the multitude was so grete that it myght not wel be nombred. They brought with them cartes, charyottes, horses, camels, beuffes, kyen, and other smale beestys, so grete plente, that vnnethe it myght be byleuyd. And with this grete apparayl, this grete force and strengthe he brought in to thempire of Constantinoble, and began to take & waste alle that he fonde. And where as they fonde fortresses, cytees or castellis, they toke it al with assault, ffor nothing myght resiste them but that they smote alle doun to therthe. Alle the peple hool fledde to fore hym.

THIS tydynges cam to themperour that this grete lord had supprised and taken his contre. Anon without taryeng, he sente alle about in thempire, & dyde thenne somone alle his hoost & assembled as moche peple as he coude gete, and as moche good as he myght fine for this werke that was so grete. Whan his peple were comen, he yssued with as many men of armes and of warre as he myght haue, and drewe to that parte where this Belphet cam. He fonde hym to sone, as he that was ferre entred in to the londe. Whan they knewe that eche of them was so nygh other, they ordeyned theyr batayIles for to fyghte, and assembled so cruelly and of so grete angre, as peple that had eche to other grete hate. The hethen foughte for tenhaunce theyr lawe, and for tencrece theyr power, and the cristen men defended theyr fayth and the lawe of Ihesu criste, and to saue and kepe theyr liues and franchyses, and theyr wyues, childeren, & theyr contree. The batayIle was moche grete & cruelle, moche peple slayn, & blode shadde here and there. Atte laste the Grekes myght not suffre the faytes ne the grete plente of the mescreauntes, and fledde as discomfyted soo fowle that none retorned agayn, but ranne away withoute ordenaunce, eueryche where he myght best saue hym. They that folowed them dyde well nigh alle that they wolde. They slewe many, and toke grete plente a/lyue; & emonge alle other, themperour was taken hym self. Whan tydinges cam in to the contre that the batayl was loste, & themperour taken, ther was

grete sorowe of alle tholde men, wyues, & childeren that had not ben there.

BELPHET, this prynce of myscreauntes, seeyng that he had thus playn victorye of the cristen men, mounted and aroos in to grete pryde, ffor he thought wel that he shold fynde no barre that shold lette hym to doo his will in thempyre. Whan he was lodged, and his hoost aboute hym, he commanded themperour to be brought to fore hym, which had be taken in the bataylle, and he sette his foote vpon the necke of themperour, & this dyde he ofte, & whan he shold mounte vpon horsbak or descende, in shame and despite of the fayth of our lord and of the cristen peple. When he had thus a whyle shamed, reuyled, and despyted themperour, he lete hym goo, and delyuerd hym and som of his barons, that had be prisoners. And whan themperour was come agayn in to Constantynoble, the barons of the londe reputed hym as ouermoche dishonoured, as he that had shamefully conduyted the bataille, and toke hym and raced out his eyen, and let hym vse his lif in sorowe and shame.

THIS prynce Belphet began to take alle the londe, in such wyse that in a lytil whyle he conquerd fro Laliche in Surye, vnto the see called the braas of Seynt George, which is wel xxx iourneyes of lengthe, and x of brede, & in som place xv. And whan he cam to the braas, he wold haue passed in to Constantinoble,

whiche is on that other side of that litil see, but he myght not finde shippis ynowgh. Thus the cristen peple of that londe for theyr synnes were vnder this cruell peple; emong the other, the noble & hye cyte where Saynt Peter was, & made fyrst as chyef of cristente, that is Antioche, was taken in the ende, and subgette vnto the Turkes. Thus had this Belphet in his seygnorye and demayne the londes named Celessurye, the two Cilices, Pamphylee, Lyce, Lycarne, Cappadoce, Galace, Bethyne, & a parte of the lasse Asye. Alle thise countrees ar moch fertile and ful of peple. This hethen peple began to bete doun the chirches and greue the cristen peple, as it plesyd them, ffor so grete affraye and drede was in the hertes of the cristen peple, that they alle fledde xj iourneyes fro the said Belphet. This was a thynge that greuyd merueylously the holy cyte of Iherusalem and the peple of the countre, ffor whiles themperour of Constantynoble was in good pees and in his grete power, many grete socours, grete comfort of ryche yeftes & of large almesses cam vnto the peple of Surye, and also fro the londe of Antioche. But thenne they had loste alle, and had none hope that euer ony ayde ne socours shold come to them, wherfor they supposed euer to be in seruage and captyuite without ony raunsom.

Of many maners of tormens that the cristen peple suffred for theyr synnes in that time, capitulo xj.

GHYLES that this tyme was so peryllous for the seygnorye of thyse hethen men, cam oftymes in pylgremages the Grekes & the Latyns in to Iherusalem ffor to praye oure lord & crye hym mercy, that he wold not forgete thus his peple. Yet many cam theder in grete perylle, ffor alle the countrees by whiche they shold passe were ful of theyr enemyes, & ofte they were robbed and slayn. And whan they myght escape and come to the holy cyte, they myght not entre therin, but eche persone muste paye a besaunt for trybute, wherof happed ofte that they that were despoylled had not wherof they myght paye this tribute, and myght not entre in to the town, and for this they suffred colde, hungre, and grete mesease, and many deyde. And herof the cristen men of the toun were moche greued, for they susteyned them that lyued, and muste burye them that were dede, and seche such thyng as was nedeful to them self and other. They that myght entre in the toun were yet more greued, ffor som were murdred in the holy places of the cyte secretely, and was doon to them moche shame and repreef openly. Ther was fylthe caste in their visage, & other spytte in the myddes of theyr visage, and som men bette them, wherfore the cristen men of the town, that had som acqueyntaunces with the hethen men, conduyted and ladde

them to theyr pylgremages, for to kepe them to theyr power.

THERE were in the cyte of them of Malfe, which is a cyte of Puyell, which had a chirche in Iherusalem named Saynte Marye de la Latyne, where-by was an hospital of poure peple, where as was a chappel that was named saynt Iohan Eleymont, this saynt Iohan was a patriarke of Allexandrye. Thabbot of the chirche of our lady had in his cure and in his pourueyaunce this hospital, and pourchassed alle that was nedeful for them: there were receyuyd alle the pour pylgryms whiche had not wherof to lyue, & this hows was of moche grete charyte. Thus were the cristen peple in grete disease in the toun, but there was nothyng that displesyd them as whan they had made theyr deuocions atte holy places in the toun, with grete traueylles and grete costes, & whan they were in the seruyse of our lord, the hethen mescreauntes cam in with grete noyse and crye, & satte vpon the aulters, threwe doun the chalyces, brake the lampes, and the tapres. And yet for more to angre the cristen peple, they toke ofte the patriarke which was thenne, by the berde and by the heer, & threwe hym doun to the grounde, & defowled hym vnder theyr feet, of whiche alle cristente had grete sorowe and moche pyte. In thyse sorowes and meseases were the cristen men in the londe of Surye, as I haue sayd you to fore, CCCC four score and ten yere, and alwey cryed vnto our lord for mercy with syghes and teeres, and prayde hym deuoutly that he wold not

alle forgete them. But the good lord, that after the tempeste and derke weder can wel brynge clerenes and fayr season, behelde this peple in pyte, & sente to them comforte & delyuerance of the tormentes in whiche they had longe ben.

How aftir they had ben four CCCC lxxxx yere in seruage of the hethen peple, our lord pourueyed remedye for his cristen peple, capitulo xij

I HAUE wel said to you byfore, that out of many londes cam pilgryms in to Iherusalem. Emong alle other ther was one which was of the royame of fraunce, born in the bisshopprych of Amyens, that is to wete, one named Peter, whiche had ben an heremyte in a wode, and therfor he was called Peter Theremyte. This was a litil man of body, and as a persone had in despite, and lytil preysed by semblaunt, but he was of a merueyllous grete herte, of moche clere engyne, and good vnderstondyng, & spak right wel. Whan he cam to the gate of Iherusalem, he payd the trybute of a besaunt and entred in to the cyte, and was lodged in a good cristen mans hows. This Petre alwey enquyred and demaunded moche of his hoost, of the gouernaunce and estate of the cyte, & how the cristen men conteyned them vnder the hethen men, and how theyr lord demened & gouerned them. His hoost, whiche had longe ben in the towne, tolde to hym alle the maner playnly of the tymes passyd, & how the cristente had be defowled, and the holy places dishonoured, whiche was sorouful

to here. And he hym self, which a good while had be in the toun for to doo his pylgremage, sawe wel & perceyued a grete partye of the caityfnes in which the cristen men were. He herd saye that the patriarke was a good wyse man, deuote and religyous, which was named Symeon. Peter thought that he wold goo and speke with hym, & demande of hym the estate of the chirches, of the clergye, and of the peple: he cam to hym, & dyde so as he thought, and asked of hym alle thise thynges. The patriarke apperceyued wel by his wordes and his countinaunce, that he was a man that dredde god, and right wyse and vnderstondyng. And began to telle to hym by layser, alle the meseases of the cristen peple.

THAN Peter herde thise sorowes of the mouthe of this good man, whom he byleuyd wel, he coude not absteyne hym fro grete syghes, and wepyng manye teeres for pyte, and ofte demanded of the patriarke yf ther were ony conseil and remedye for this werke. And the holy and deuote patriarke answerd hym: We haue made many orysons & prayers vnto oure lord god for to receyue vs in to his mercy and grace, but we apperceyue wel that our synnes be not yet purged, ffor we ben certaynly in the culpe and blame, whan oure lord whiche is so rightwys holdeth vs yet in the payne. But the renomme of the contrees byyonde the montaynes is moche grete here, that the peple there, and specially of them of fraunce, ben good cristen peple & moche stedfast in the fayth, and therfor oure lord holdeth them at this day in

moche grete peas and in hye puyssaunce. Yf they wold praye our lord that he wolde haue pyte on vs, or yf that they toke counseyl for to socoure vs, we haue certaynly hope that our lord shold helpe vs by them for taccomplysshe oure werke. For ye see wel that the Grekes and themperour of Constantinople, whiche ben our neyghbours and as kynnesmen, maye not helpe ne counseyle vs, ffor they them self ben as who sayth destroyed, & haue no power to defende theyr owne lande.

THAN Peter herd this, he answerd in this maner: fayr fader, trouthe it is that ye haue sayd of that londe fro whence am I. And god be thanked, the fayth of oure lord is moche beter holden there and kepte, than it is in ony other londes that I haue ben in, syth that I departed on my journeye fro my contre. And I byleue certaynly that if they had knowleche of the mesease & seruage in whiche thise hethen mysbyleuyd peple holde you inne, that, by the playsyre of almyghty god, by theyr good wylles, they sholde fynde counseyl & ayde in this your grete nede and werk. Wherfor I counseyl you one thyng, yf it be aggreable to you and seme good, that is, that ye sende your lettres vnto oure holy fader the pope, & to the chirche of Rome, vnto the kynges, prynces and barons of the occident & weste parte, in which late them wete playnly how it is with you. And that ye crye to them for mercy, that they wolde socoure you for the loue of god and for his fayth in suche maner, that they myght haue honoure in this world

and sauacion of their soules in that other. And for that ye be pour peple, ye haue no nede to make grete dispencis; yf ye thynke I be sufficiaunt for so grete a message, ffor the loue of Ihesu Criste and remyssyon of my synnes, I shal entreprise this vyage, and offre my self to take so moche traueyl for yow. And I promyse truly to you that I shal late them haue knowleche, how it is with you, yf god sende me grace to come thydre. Whan the patriarke herde this, he had moche grete ioye. He sente anon for the moost saddest & wysest men of the cristen peple, and for the clerkes and laye men, and sayde and shewde to them the bounte and the seruyse that this good man offryd to them. They were right glad, and thanked hym moche. Thenne anon, withoute taryenge, they made theyr wrytynges and sealed them with theyr seales, & delyuerd them to Peter Theremyte.

How the said Peter Theremyte entreprised the more hardyly his vyage, by thapparicion or vision that he sawe in his sleep, capitulo xiij

TRULY our lord god is swete, pyteous, and mercyful, ffor he wylle not suffre to perysshe, ne to be loste, them that haue in hym ferme and stedfast hope, and whan the men lacke helpe, god sendeth to them his ayde. And this may clerely be seen in this werke, for fro whens cometh that this pour man, whiche was lytil and despysed persone, wery & brused of so grete iourneye & waye, that durste

enterprise so grete a dede and werke? How myght he wene that our lord wolde accomylysshe so grete a werke by hym, as for to dylyure his peple fro the myserye and caytyfnes that they had ben in, nygh fyue C yere? But this hardynesse cam to hym of the grete charyte that he had in hym, and the fayth wrought in hym for the loue that he had to his bretheren. ¶ In thise dayes happed a thynge that moche lyft vp his herte to poursue his enterprise; ffor this good man, whan he had taken this message and charge therof, he wente moche ofter than he was woonte to doo to the holy places in the cyte, and cam on an euentide to the chirche of the holy sepulchre, and made there his prayers deuoutly, with grete plente of teeris.

AFTER this he sleepte vpon the pamente, and hym semed that our saueour Ihesu Criste cam to fore hym, and charged hym to doo this same message, and said to hym: Petre, aryse vp hastely, and goo surely thedyr as thou hast entreprised, ffor I shal be with the. It is now tyme from hens forth, that my holy cyte be clensed, and that my peple be socoured. ¶ Petre awoke in this poynt, and was fro than forthon more abandouned vnto the waye, and also sure as his iourneye & message had be doon. He entermed and appoynted his departyng for to doo his erande, and had leue and benediction of the patriarke. He descended doun to the see, and fonde there a shyp of marchandise that wolde passe in to Puylle. He entred in to the ship, the which had good wynde,

and in shorte tyme arryued at Bar. Peter yssued out, & wente by londe to Rome. He fonde in the contre the pope Vrban, & salewed hym in the name of the patriarke and of the cristen peple of Surye, and delyuerd to hym theyr lettres, & sayde to hym by mouthe, moche truli and wysely, the grete sorowes, the miseryes and vyletees that the cristen suffred thenne in the holy londe, as he that was expert therof, and coude wel saye to hym the trouthe.

Of the persecucions of the chirche in that tyme, & how the pope Vrban was putte oute of the see of Rome by the bysshop of Rauenne, capitulo xiiij

IN this tyme, Harry themperour of Allemayne, had a grete debate ayenst the pope Gregory the seuenth, to fore this Vrban, & the discorde aroos for the rynges & the croses of the bisshoppes that were dede in thempyre. for suche a customme had ronne a grete whyle there, that whan the prelates were deed, the rynges & croses of them were brought to themperour, and he gaf them to his clerkes & his chapylayns, or whom he wolde, and sente to the chyrches, & bad them that they shoolde holde them for theyr bisshops & archebisshops without other election and other proef, by whiche holy chirche was adommaged sore, for he sente ofte personnes, that were not propice therto. The pope Gregorie sawe that this custome was ayenst the right and lawe wreton,

and also ayenst reason, and prayd hym amyably to leue this for the loue of god, of holy chirche, & for sauacion of his sowle, ffor it apperteyned nothyng to hym. Themperour wold not leue this for the pope, wherfor the pope cursed hym, herof themperour had so grete despite and so grete desdayne, that incontinent he began to warre ayenst the chyrche of Rome. And ayenst the pope he made to rise an aduersarye, tharchiebisshop of Rauenne, whiche was named Gilbert, and was wel lettred & moche riche. This bisshop trusted ouermoche in thayde of themperour, and in the plente of his rychesse, and he cam to Rome, and deposed and put out the pope of his see by fauour and force. And becam so fel, and of so grete pryde that he had, that he forgate his wytte and reson that he ought to haue by his clergy, and sette hym self in the see, and made hym to be holden for pope, as he that wel wende to haue ben it.

I HAUE said you to fore, that at that tyme, cristen peple were in gret paryll thurghout alle the world, and that the comandemens of the gospel were moche forgoten, & of holy chyrche, & men ranne faste & haboundantly to the werkes of the deuyl and to alle synnes. And whan this discorde & scysme was so grete, thenne alle trouthe was goon and the fayth of our saueour was lyke as it had ben alle perysshed. The bysshoppes, the abbottes, and the prouostes were beten and sette in prison, and alle theyr thynges were taken awey fro them, namely by them that helde of themperour. In this debate was done alle the shames and

repreues to the pope. Thenne the holy fader sawe that he was not obeyed as he shold be, and that he was in paryl of his lyf, and he went in to Puylle, by the helpe and counseyl of Robert Guichart, whiche thenne was lord of the contre. This Robert dyde vnto our holy fader, and to his peple, as moche of honour, of servyse & bounte as they wold take, and yet more.

AT laste our holy fader wente hym in to Salerne, and becam seke, and laye doun and there deyde and was there buryed. The cardynals that were there chose another, whiche was named Victor, whiche endured but one moneth or thereaboutes. After hym, they choos this Vrban that I spack of to fore. This Vrban sawe that themperour was yet in his malice and his angre, and durst not abandone hym self to hym, ne put hym in his power, but helde hym in the forteresses of some barons, that for goddes sake reteyned hym in grete doubte. Whiles he was in this poynt, Peter Theremyte cam to hym, & brought to hym the message fro the crysten men in the holy londe. Our holy fader the pope knewe moche wel the bounte, the wytte, and the religion that was in this Peter, and, ansuerd to hym moche swetly, and sayde that he shold goo hastyly speke to the princes and barons of the royame of fraunce of this werke, for yf he myght escape sauely fro the handes of themperour, he hym self had intencion to passe the montaygnes, and drawe hym toward tho parties for to helpe the better to this wherke, yf it were possible.

GHENNE Peter was right glad of this good answere of our holy fader, and passed Lombardye & the montaygnes, and cam in to France, and began diligently to seke the barons, like as he was sent expresly to them, and tolde to eche of them the shames and disconvenyences that the hethen peple dyde to the crysten folke in the holy londe. And the same he said to the mene peple, for he assembled them oftymes, and tolde to them the sorouful state of the londe & cyte of Iherusalem, in suche wyse that he made them to wepe many a teere. And at euery tyme he made some fruyt by his sayeng & exhortyng the peple to gyue socours to the holy lande. And like wise, as saynt Johan Baptyste preched to fore to make the way to fore Ihesu Cryste, so in the same wyse this Peter brought tydynges to fore the comyng of our holy fader, wherfore he hym self whan he cam was the better herd and byleuid, and the more dyde in this werke.

Of a general counseyl that the pope Vrban ordeyned for the reformacion of holy chirche & thamendement of the peple, capitulo xv

IN the yere of thyncarnacion of oure lorde M lxxxxv regned the fourth Harry, kynge of Almayn and emperour of Rome, the xviij yere of his regne, and xij of his empire, and in fraunce regned thenne Philipe, the sone of Harry. Thenne sawe our holy fader

the pope Vrban, that the world was moche empeyred and torned to evyl, & helde a counseyl therupon of the prelates of Ytalye at Playsance, where he made establysshemens by theyr counseyl, for tamende the maners of the clergye & of the laye peple ¶ After he knewe wel that he was not sure in the power of themperour, and passed the montaynes and cam in to the royame of fraunce. He fonde the peple euyl endoctryned and ouermoche enclyned to synne, charite faylled, & warres and discordes were emonge the riche men, and thought that it was nede to doo his power & myght for tamende cristiente. He ordeyned a generall counseyl of alle the prelates that were bytwene the montaynes & the see of Englande. This counseyl was sette fyrste at Clony, another tyme at Puy Nostre Dame, and the thirde tyme at Cleremont in Auuergne. This was in the moneth of Nouembre. There were many archebisshops, bisshops, abbotes, & grete prelates & persones of holi chirche of thise parties. Ther were by the general counseyl many commandements gyuen for tamende clerkes & layetee, for teshewe synnes and recouere good maners. There was holy chirche al reformed, of whiche it had grete nede.

GMONGE alle other, Peter Theremyte was there, whiche forgate not the werke that he was charged with, but admonested the prelates eche pryuatly by hym self, and prayde the comune peple openly moche wel & wysely. Thenne toke our holy fader the wordes, & shewed generally to alle the counseyl, what grete shame it

was to alle the cristen men, of our faith that was so nyghe destroyed and faylled in the place where it began, and it myght be grete fere and drede whan it faylled at the heed & welle, that the ryvers shold not endure, that were rennyng thurgh the world. And saide moche wel, that alle the very crysten peple shold take herof grete despite yf thus desherited by their defaulte, and his contre delyuered to his enemyes, & promysed that yf they wolde take vpon this pylgremage, he wolde chaunge theyr penaunce in to this werke. And yf they deyde in this waye, confessid and repentaunt, he wolde take it on his fayth, that they incontinent shold goo in to the joye of heuen. On that other syde, as long as they were in the seruyse of our lord, they were in the warde and kepyng of holy chirche, bothe they and theyr thynges, in suche wyse that they that dyde to them ony domage shold be acursed. And alle this commanded he to be kept of alle the prelates that were atte counseyl. This doon, he gaf euery man leue, and commanded that he shold preche this pylgremage and pardon, & tolde to them that alle men shold trauaylle to gyue and make longe trewes and pees of the warres, for taccomplysshe the better this pylgremage, and to performe it.

How many noble and hye men, and other of the royame of fraunce, crossed them for to goo ouer see, capitulo xvj.

OUR lord gaf his grace vnto our holy fader the pope in vtteryng of the word of god, which was said in suche wyse, that it was fyxed and roted in the hertes of them that herde hym, and not only of them that were present, but of alle other that it was recorded and tolde vnto, ffor the bisshops wente in to theyr countrees and preched to theyr peple like as it was to them commanded. How be it that it was a strange thyng and right greuous for a man to leue his contree, his wyf, his children, and lygnage, and leue them that he loueth by nature. But whan one thynketh what reward he shal haue of our lord so to doo, thenne he geteth a feruent loue in hym self for the charyte of our lord, and leueth the naturel loue of his flessh, for to saue his sowle. And this myght wel be perceyued and seen, ffor the peple of the royame of fraunce, and the grete barons, and other lasse that were enclyned to synnes and acustomed to doo ylle, as I haue sayd to fore, aftir they herde this prechyng, entreprysed so vygorously the werke of our lord, and auowed them to ward this pylgremage, as ye shal here, ffor it semed that euery man ought to entreprise tauenge the wronge & shame that the hethen dyde to our lord, and to his peple, in the londe of Iherusalem. Ye sholde haue seen the husbonde departe fro hys

wyf, and the faders fro the chylderen, & the childeren fro the fadres. And it semed that euery man wolde departe fro that he louyd best in this world, for to wynne the ioye of that other.

THER was so grete affraye, & so grete a meuyng thurgh alle the londe, that vnnethe ye sholde haue founde an hows, but that som had enterprysed thys viage. I saye not that alle that wente were wyse & of pure entencion toward our lord, for som monkes wente out of theyr cloystres without leue of theyr abbotes or pryours, and the recluses wente out of the places where they had ben closed in, and wente forth with the other. Som wente forth for loue of theyr frendes, to bere them felawship; other wente forth for bobaunce, lest they shold be reputed for euyl and not good; and som there were that wolde withdrawe them for theyr creancers, and haue respite of theyr dettes. But how that it was theyr entencions within theyr hertes, it semyd good for the grete enterpryse that they shewed outward. And it was of grete nede that this pylgremage was chosen at that tyme, ffor there were in the world so many synnes that they withdrewe the peple fro our lord. And it was wel behoueful that god shold sende to them som addressement, by whiche they myght come to heuen, and that he gaf them som traueylle, as it were a purgatorye to fore theyr deth. At this counseyl auowed presently this pylgremage, the good bisshop of Puy named Aymart, whiche afterward was legate in the same hoost, & conteyned hym moche

wysely & truly. Also the bisshop of Orenge whiche was an holy man and relygyous, auowed there the same viage, and ynowhe of other whiche were not at that counseyl that enterprised the same vowe.

OUR holy fader had commanded, and made the bisshops to holde it, that alle they that wolde auowe this pylgremage shold sette the signe of the crosse on their right sholdre, ffor thonoure of hym that bare the torment of the crosse vpon his sholders for to saue vs, and taccomplysshe this that oure lord sayth in the gospell: Who that wil lyue aftir me, renye hym self and take the crosse and folowe me. Wel forsaketh he hym self, that leueth that the flessh loueth for sauyng of his sowle. Whan one of the grete barons was croysed so on his sholdre in a contre, alle the peple of the contre that were also crossyd cam to hym, and chees hym for theyr captayne, & made to hym feaulte for to haue his ayde and warantise in the waye of the sayd pylgremage.

The names of noble men that enterprised this pylgremage, as wel on this side as beyonde the montaynes, capitulo xvij.

IN the royame of fraunce and of Allemayne, Hughe la Maine, brother of the kynge of fraunce, Robert therle of flaunders, Robert duc of Normandye, sone to kyng William of Englond, Stephen therle of chartres and of Bloys, whiche was fader to erle Thybauld the olde, whiche lyeth at Laigny, Ray-

mond therle of Tholouse, & many knyghtes of that londe. The valyant man Godefroy of Buyllon, duc of Lorayne, with his two bretheren, Bawdwyn and Eustace, and one theyr cosyn, Bawdwyn, sone to the counte Huon de Retel. Therle Garnyer de Gres, Bawdwyn the erle of Henawde, Ysoart the erle of Ye, Rembout therle of Orenge, William therle of forests, Steuen therle of Aubmalle, Rotrout the erle of Perche, Hughe the erle of Saynt Pol, & many barons & knyghtes that were not counted, as Raoul de Baugenel, Euerard du Puisat, Guy de Garlande, which was steward of fraunce, Thomas de ferre, Guy de Possesse, Giles de Chaumount, Girard Cherisy, Rogier de Baruyle, Henry d'Asque. Centon of Beart, Guillem Amanaix, Gaste the Bediers, Guillem de Montpellyer, & Gyrard de Roussilon. Ye may wel knowe that with this peple were croyssed moche grete plente of knyghtes and other, with grete nombre of comune peple, whiche Peter Theremyte gadred in the royamme of fraunce & in thempyre of Allemaygne. And by yonde the montayns men croyssed them also, Buymount the prynce of Tarente, whiche was soon to Robart Guychart, that was duc of Puylle, and Tancre his neuew, his sustres sone, & many other grete barons of this londe that were not so renommed ne knowen as thise were. There was grete appareyllemens, and araye that was made for this pylgremmage. The grete men had enterprised, that assone as the wynter was passed they wold putte them on this pylgremage. The mene peple, the knyghtes, the barons, & other, aftir they were acqueynted that one with that other, sente to

eche other lettres and messages for taccorde to goo to gydre, apoynted the tyme of departyng, and of the waye that they sholde holde.

AND whan Marche was come, ye sholde haue seen horses arrayed, with sommyers, palfroyes, and stedes, tentes and pauyllons, and to make armures. ¶ Ye maye wel knowe that there was moche to doo of many thynges, ffor the barons were acorded that they shold not goo alle to gydre, ffor no contre myght suffyse ne fynde that which shold be nedeful for them, ffor whiche cause alle the hoostes neuyr assembled, as ye shal here, tyl they cam vnto the cyte of Nycene. ¶ The mene peple charged them self not moche with tentes ne armures, ffor they myght not bere it, & therfor euery man garnysshid hym aftir that he was with moneye & goods, as moche as he supposed shold be nedeful for hym. ¶ Whan the daye of departyng cam, ther were grete sorowes, grete wepynges, and grete cryes at departyng of the pylgryms, ffor there were but fewe howses but of them som wente. And such howsholders there were that they wente alle, and caryed theyr wyues and bare theyr childeren with them. It was a merueyllous thynge to see this meuynges, ffor it had not byfore be acustomed to see suche thynges in fraunce, ne neuer byfore was crosse born ne taken for pylgremage.

Of thauentures that a rowte of cristen men had in this viage, of whome one Gaultyer without knowleche was captayne, capitulo xviij

THE yere of thyncarnacion of our lord. M. foure score xvj, the eght daye of Marche cam a gentilman, a knyght right noble, named Gaultier, without knowleche to his surname. With hym cam a merueyllous grete plente of folke a/foot, for ther were but fewe men a/hors/bak in this rowte, they passed in Allemayne, & drewe hem toward Hongrye. The royamme of Hongrye was alle enuyronned with grete waters, and large mershes, and depe lakes, in suche wyse that none myght entre ne yssue but by certayne places and strayt entrees that ben as yates of the londe. In Hongerye was thenne a kynge, a moche valyaunt man named Colemant, and was a very good cristen man. He knewe that Gaultier cam by londe with grete peple, and had therof moche grete ioye, and helde wel with the pylgremage that he had enterprised. He receyued them debonayrly in his londe, and commanded thurgh his royame that they shold haue alle maner vytaylle good cheap, & alle that they neded.

THE pylgryms passed alle Hongrye in good peas, tyl they cam to the ende, where they founde a water which was named Marce. This was the bounde of Hongerye towarde thoryent. They passed this water in good peas,

and entred into Bougrye, and withoute knowyng of this Gaulteer, some of his peple abode ouer the water, & cam to a castel named Malleuylle for to by vitaylles, of the whiche they had nede. The Hongres by cause that alle the hoost was passed sauf they, whiche were but a fewe, ranne vpon them, and bette them, and dyde to them ouermoche shame. ¶ They passed the water, and cam to Gaultier, and shewde to hym playnly how they had ben demened without forfaytte. They had moche grete despite, & moche sorowe herof and had passed the water agayn, yf they had not had so grete peryl and so grete distourblyng, and thought they wold goo theyr waye, and leue for tauenge this thynge.

SO long they wente tyl they cam to Bellegraue, whiche is the first cyte of Bougrye on thys syde. ¶ Gaultyer sente to the duc of the town, and requyred hym that he wolde late them ther by vytaylles, he wold not suffre ony to be sold to them. Thoost had grete disease for lake of vytaylle, & myght not lenger kepe them, but that a grete parte of them wente a fowragyng for to gete vytaylles for them, & for theyr beestys. They founde grete plente of beestes in the contre, whiche they toke and brought to theyr lodgynges. Whan they of the contre herd this, they armed them, and assembled grete peple of the countree, and ran vpon them where they droef their proyes, & fought with them, and toke the beestes fro them, and many of them they slewe, & hunted the other away. The nombre wel of Cxl of oure men, shytte them in a

monasterye for to kepe them there sauf, but the Bougres cam there aboute, and sette fyre on the chirche, and brente alle.

GAULTIER sawe that he ledde with hym many folyssh peple, whiche he coude not rule ne sette alle in ordenaunce, and withdrewe hym fro them, and toke them that wold be ruled and obeye hym, and wente in to forestes of Bougrye, which ben large and long, and began to passe the moost wysely & stylle that he myght tyl he cam to a cyte named Stralyce, and is a contre named Danemarche the Moyen, there fonde he a good man that was duke of the londe. Whan this duke knewe what they were and whyther they wente, he receyued them moche debonaryly, & made them to haue vytaylles & other thynges good cheep, and dyde to them bountes & seruyses ynowgh for the oultrage that was doon to them at Belgraue, and dyde redresse and yelde agayne to them as moche as he myght recouere, and aboue alle this, he delyuerd to them good conduyte & sewr tyl they cam to Constantynoble. Whan they were come to Constantinoble, themperour sente for Gaultier. He cam vnto hym, and sayde to hym thoccasion of his viage, & that he wolde abyde there Peter Theremyte, by the commandement of whom he had brought thyse pylgryms. Whan themperour herde this, he receyued hym moche wel and swetly, and assygned to hym a fayr place without the town, where as he lodged hym with his felawship, & comanded that they shold haue vytaylle and alle other necessaryes good chepe, and ther soiourned they a whyle.

How Pieter the Heremyte was chyef of a grete hoost in this viage toward the holy londe, capitulo xix.

IT was not longe aftir that Peter Theremite cam fro his contre, with grete plente of peple, vnto the nombre of xl M. He cam in to Lorayne, & passed francone, Bauyere, Osterych, & drewe hym toward Hungrye. Peter sente his messagers to the kyng of Hongrye, to thende that he myght passe his royamme; he sente hym worde that he shold haue good leue yf they wold goo in peas without medlynges and oultrages. They answerd that they were pylgryms of our lord and had no talente for to trouble the pees. Thus entred they the royamme of Hongrye, and passed by the lande without ony debate: vytaylles and other thynges had they ynough good cheepe. At thende they cam to the castel of whiche I spak to fore, named Maleuylle; there herd they saye, what was doon to theym of the retenue of Gaultier, & the grete oultrage doon to them without cause, and sawe yet the armes and despoyllis of theyr felawes that had be robbed there hange yet on the walles.

CERTE pylgryms that sawe this were alle as they had ben out of theyr wytte, and ran to armes, & began euery man to do wel. They toke the toun by force, and smote of the heedes of alle them that were within, sauf a fewe which ran in to the water and were drowned. Ther were founde of them that were deed wel a four M, & of

Peters meyne were slayn an C. Whan this was don the hooste fonde there grete plente of vytaylles, and abode wel v dayes in that place. The duc of Bougrie, which was named Nicita, vnderstode how thise pilgryms had venged their felaws ayenst them of Maleuylle, and doubted for as moche as he had defended the vytaylles to our peple, & that he had slayn many of them, and hym semed that Bellegraue was not strong ynough, therfor he lefte the town, and wente in to a strenger castel. Thus alle they of the cyte yssued with their goodes, & drewe them to the depe forestes. Peter whyles he laye yet at Maleuylle, herd saye that the kyng of Hongrye had herd of the deth of his peple, wherof he was moche angry, and that he somoned & assembled alle his power for tauenge his men that had be slayn, and doubted herof, and was no merueylle, wherfore he made tassemble alle the shippes that myght be founden atte ryue of the see to hym, and made his peple to departe moche hastely his cartes and charyottes, & the beestes. They had merueyllous grete praye, and lad away grete rychesses fro the castel of Maleyulle that they had there taken. Whan they were passed ouer in to Bougrye, they cam to fore Bellegraue, & fonde the cyte alle voyde, ffor they were alle fled.

AFTIR they wente eght grete iourneyes by many grete forestes tyl they cam to fore a cyte named Nyze. This town fonde they moche stronge, and wel wallyd with grete towres and stronge, and within was grete garnyson, and the beste men of warre of alle the londe,

and grete plente of armours & vytaylle. Peter the Heremyte and his hoost fonde a brygge of stone by whiche they passed a water rennyng nyghe to the cyte; they passed the brygge and lodged them, bytwene the water & the towne. And by cause they had not mete ynough, Peter sente his messages vnto the lord of the toun, and prayd hym fayr for hym, and for his peple that were cristen and pylgryms that wente in the seruyse of our lord, that they myght bye vytaylles of the toun at resonable prys. Thenne the lord sende worde to Peter that he wold not suffre that they shold not entre in to the toun; but and yf he would gyue hym good ostages, that his peple shold doo no harme ne oultrage to the peple and marcheauntes of the toun that shold come for to selle them vytaylle, he shold sende to them ynough at resonable prys. Whan Peter & his peple herd this they were glad ynough: they delyuered good ostages, and anon they of the toun cam out with grete plente of vytayl and other thynges necessarye in the hoost.

How some of the oost of Peter Thermyte vnwetyng hym sette fyre in the subarbes of Nyz at theyr departyng, capitulo xx

DOCHE was thys nyght the hoost of the pylgryms refresshyd of alle thynges that they had nede, ffor they had ben long fro ony good toun, and they of the cyte were to them moche debonair & resonable. On the morne they demanded theyr ostages,

and they were delyuerd gladly, & forth they wente in peas. But now ye shal here how the deuyl doth grete peyne for to empesshe and lette good werkes. In this companye had ben the euen afore a stryf to one of the marcchauntes of the town, and som of the oost. Whan the hoost was departed, the Duchemen assembled to the nombre of an hunderd, and for vengeaunce of the stryf, they sawe vij myllenes whiche stode at brygge nyghe the town, and sette them a fyre, and brente them anone. This was not ynough, but there was a litil borough without the cyte, and they sette that a fyre also and brende hit to asshes, and syth wente theyr waye aftir theyr felawship, whiche knewe nothyng herof.

Of this thynge the lord of the town, whiche had the euen to fore shewde to them grete debonayrte, was gretely meuyd, for he sawe that they rendrid euyl for god, and was half out of his wytte for angre, & this felonnye that this fewe dyde was wyted alle the hoost, whiche was euyl and pyte. He made anone arme alle the town, and yssued on horsbak and on fote; hym self cam to fore, and prayde & much desyred his peple for to venge vpon thyse false rowters, & theuys the oultrage that they had don. Whan they approched the hoost, they fonde fyrst thise malefactours, whiche had not yet ouertaken theyr felaws, and ronne on them, and smote of their heedes. It had thenne be ynowgh, but they were not content, but smote in the aftirst parte of thoost, whiche doubted nothyng. They fonde charyottes, sommyers, males, seru-

auntes, wymmen, and children, whiche myght not goo so faste as the other. They slewe many, and somme they ouerthrewe, & ladde away the cariage, and thus retorned into theyr cyte without hurte, and alle blody of the bloode of the pylgryms.

How Peter Theremyte was aduertysed of alle this, and of the harm that ensiewed, capitulo xxj

PETER was goyng with the grete companye of thoost, whiche knewe nought of this thyng, whan a messager cam to hym rydyng, and told to hym of this aduenture that was fallen in the taylle of thoost. Peter sente anon to them that were to fore, that they shold retourne agayn the way that they were comyn vnto the cyte of Nyz. In this retorne they fonde thynges ynowgh that displesyd them, ffor they fonde their felawes byheded, lyeng by the waye. They had grete sorowe herof; one fonde his fader deed, another his brother or his sone, and another his wyf or his doughter, there were many disconuenyents. Peter, whiche had his entencion pure vnto oure lord, entended not but tappese the malyce & leye doun the discorde which was sourded emong the peple. He sente som wyse and prudent men to the lord & to the mooste hyemen of the cyte, for to demaunde by what occasion they had don this euil and crueltees ayenst the peple of our lord. They answerd that this was by the default of the pylgryms, & that they had fyrst doon grete oultrage to brenne theyr mylnes and burghe.

WHAN Peter & the wyse men that were with hym herd this, they thought wel that it was no place ne tyme to venge theyr shames, & therfor torned the mater vnto peas & acorde, for to recouvre the praye, the prysonners and caryage whiche they had ledde away fro thoost, ffor there were of the mene peple which wold not be ruled, & wold not suffre them of the towne to haue pees with vs, but wold auenge by force the oultrage that they had doon. ❧ Peter felte this thynge, and apperceyued anone the euylle that sourded & sente of the wysest and grettest of his companye to make the pees. His peple wold not haue pees. He made a crye on payne of deth, in his name and the name of the barons, that noman be so hardy to breke the pees that was made, and this he charged vpon their pylgremages, theyr feaulte, & on thobedyence that they had promysed hym. And whan they of the hoost herd this, they beleuyd not, but folyssh peple wente forth & made grete noyse, and wold not obeye ❧ The messagers that were in the toun for taccorde this that was don, sawe that the noyse grewe more and more, and retourned to theyr felawshhip withoute ony conclusion or doyng that they had enterprised, and dyde theyr best to seece the debate, but they had no power, for there were moo than a thousend pylgryms, whiche noman myght holde ne reteyne, but that they wold goo armed to the toun. Out of the toun yssued as many or moo ayenst them: ther began the bataylle and the medle grete and thyk, & began to slee eche other largely. Peter ne his route meuyd not, but byhelde the bataylle.

They of the toun that were on the walles & at wyndows sawe that theyr peple had the werse, and apperceyued that the grete power of thoost entermeted not of this warre, & thought that they wolde not help them, and opened theyr yates and yssued oute by grete rowtes alle armed, and smote in the bataylle, and founde of our peple aboute a v C vppon the brygge, and addressyd themselues to them and slewe them alle, sauf somme that were caste in the water, and alle were perysshed. Whan the grete hoost apperceyued theyr peple thus euyl demened, they myght suffre it no lenger, but wente to armes, and smote in to the bataylle, one aftir another, lyke as they myght be armed. The peple that had bygonne this debate were discomfyted fyrst, and began to flee so fast that nothyng myght tary them. They began to bete them on horsbak, that cam for to helpe them, by whiche the good men were discomfyted, and they of the cyte that were nygh to theyr retrayt, began to chase them moche straytly, & to slee them. At last, whan oure peple were withdrawen, they retorned by the caryage and harnoys, and caryed alle, and ledde it with them, and toke wymmen and children that myght not flee, & putte them in prison. There were wel slayn and lost of the peple of the hoost x M, and the Bougres wan alle the harnoys of thoost. There was a cart lost that longed to Peter Theremyte, alle ful of rychesse, whiche had ben youen to hym in fraunce for to socoure & sustene the necessytees of the hoost. They that myght escape fro

this discomfiture, drewe them in to the forestes, & hydde them in the depe valeyes in the nyght, and on the morn they began to calle eche other, and to whystle, and sowne trumpes and busynes in the woodes, and thus began to reassemble, and gadred them to gydre on a territorie.

How themperour of Constantynoble, being aduertised of thise oultrages, sente his messagers to Peter Theremyte, capitulo xxij

AT the fourth daye were nyghe alle assembled aboute Peter, & they were about a four thousand. They were in moche grete meschyef, as they that had lost theyr frendes and theyr peple, and almost alle theyr harnoys. Not withstondyng they lefte not, but wente forth on the waye that they had enterprised, with grete mesease and payne for lak of vytaylle. And as they were in this poynt, they sawe came ayenst them the messagers of themperour of Constantynoble, whiche spak to Peter. And anon he dyde assemble the heye men and capytaynes of the hoost for to here the message that they brought And aftir they sayd in this manere: fayr syrs, moche euyl tydynges & renomme is comen of you to our lord themperour, for it is tolde to hym that ye goo by the countree of his empyre with force, & robbe the peple of suche as they haue, breke his townes, and slee his peple, and doo alle the oultrages and wronges that ye may. The good chere, bounte, and alle the seruyse that is doon to you

auaylleth nothyng, ne may adoulce ne aswage your hertes, therfore he commandeth you that ye abyde in none of his cytees more than thre dayes, but goo your waye strayt forth to Constantynoble, for he hath commanded vs to goo with you, and that we do bryng to you on the waye vytayll good cheep ynowe.

THAN thise good men herd this, that themperour had don to them this bounte, they had grete ioye, & excused them of thise bataylles & fyghtyng, & shewd openly what the Bougres had doon withoute theyr offence or culpe by force & grete oultrage. The messagers dyrected them on the way tyl they cam to Constantynoble. They fonde there Gaultyer sans sauoyr, and his peple, that taryed for them, & thenne they wente alle to gydre, and lodged them in the place that was assygned to them, and there eche tolde to other of theyr mysauentures. Themperour sente for Peter, & he wente to hym. He sawe in the towne many thynges, and in the palaysse many rychesses and marueylles, but he was a man of grete herte & courage, and abasshyd of nothyng. Themperour demanded of hym of thestate of his peple, and of other barons of thoccydent, that were thus meuyd to this pylgremage. Peter answerd hym moche wel of alle thynges, and said that they were pour peple, and were come to fore, but the prynces and hye men cam aftir with moche grete peple, which wold not long tarye. Themperour and his barons of the palays sawe alle that Peter was so lytil. and so wel, so wysely, so fayr & so wel appoynt of alle thynges,

answerd that they merueylled ouer moche, and alowed and preysed hym moche. Themperour gaf to hym grete yeftes, and receyued hym in his grace, and syth he lete hym retorne to his peple. There rested the oost of the pylgryms wel at ease and in peas, and a whyle aftir shippes were made redy by the commaundement of themperour, & they passed the see named the braas of Seynt George, and cam in to the lond named Bythyne. This is the fyrst partye of Asye, vpon the see. And they lodged them in a place called Cinintot.

Of the mayntenyng of the hoost of Peter Theremyte, & how thre thousand Duchemen toke a castel by assault, and slewe alle that were therin with the swerde, capitulo xxiij

THIS was in the marches of theyr enemyes. There was the hoost about two monethes, and euery day they fonde fresshe vytaylles to selle good cheep, wherof they were wel at ease, so moch that it coude not wel be suffred longe. They began to meue, and made routes for to goo en fourage in the contrey. Ther wente wel somtyme x M, or more, maulgre the barons, that were capytayns in the hoost. Neuertheless, Peter commanded and sente lettres to them, that they shold abyde, and not remeue fro the oost, to pylle tyl the grete prynces were comen. On a daye it happed that Pieter passed the braas, and cam in to Constantynoble for to speke for vytayl-

les, that began to wexe dere. The mene peple sawe that Peter was not there, and were the more hardy: they assembled, and were of a companye wel eight thousand a fote, & thre honderd a horsback. They made theyr bataylles, and wente alle in ordenaunce toward the cyte of Nycene, ayenst the wille and deffence of alle the grete men of thoost. ¶ Whan they cam nyghe to this grete cyte, they smote in to the townes about it, & toke merueyllous many beestes, grete and smale, and brought moche grete gayne, and retorned saufly without hurte home agayne in to the oost, with grete ioye and feste.

THE Duchemen, whiche ben a peple rude and hardy, sawe this glorye and this gayne that they had wonne, and had grete enuye therat & were meuid with couetyse of good, and to haue worship, relyed them to gydre alle of that tongue vnto the nombre of thre thousand a foote, & wente strayte toward Nycene. There was a castel at foote of an hylle, nygh vnto Nycene, at leste foure myle of. ¶ These Duchemen cam theder & began tassaylle the castel moche strongly; they within defended them to theyr power as long as they myght. But it auaylled not, ffor the castel was taken by force, & the Duchemen entred therin, and alle them that they fonde within, men, wymmen & chylderen, they slewe without mercy. They fonde ther in vytaylle ynowgh, & other thynges, & sawe that the place was moche fayr and delectable, and garnysshed it, and sayde that they wolde it holde tyl the grete prynces, whome they abode and taryed for, were comen.

How Solyman, lord of that contre, reprysed & toke agayn the castel, and slewe alle the Duchemen that where therin, capitulo xxiiij

SOLYMAN, whiche was lord of this contre and gouernoure, had herd longe to fore, that the cristen peple were meuyd of the royamme of fraunce for to goo in to the londe of Surye, and that they addressed them for to passe by his londe, therfore he had ben in thoryent, fro whens he was come, and had brought grete plente of knyghtes and other peple, by whom he entended to kepe his londe, & greue his enemyes that shold passe there by. He was thenne drawen toward our peple, and with his folkes was in the montaynes and woodes. He herde how thyse Duchemen had taken his castel and slayn his men, and cam the moost hasty wyse he myghte and assyeged the castel, and toke it without taryeng, & he smote of the heedes of alle them that he fonde ❧ The tydynge cam in to the hoost that Solyman had slayn alle the Duchemen and theyr felaws. They had moche sorow, and ther arroos a grete crye and grete wepyng in the lodgys ❧ The peple afote toke herof grete despite emonge them, and began to speke shewdly, and said that the barons of the oost ought not to suffre this, but that they shold renne a horsbak & auenge blood of theyr bretheren, that so nyghe was shed. The grete men of thoost, that knewe more of warre & of other thynges than the mene peple, wold haue holden them in peas, and sayde this may wel

be yet amended. And also themperour counceylled, and it was trouthe, that they shold abyde the comyng of the grete barons, whiche shold not longe tarye. The peple and the folyssh folke were not content with thyse wordes, but they had a capytayne named Godefrey Bureau, whiche brought them in suche reuerye and murmur that they spake largely and rudely ayenst the knyghtes, & sayde alle clerly that they were vntrewe and euyl, and that they lete not to auenge this by wysedom, but for grete cowardyse.

How oure men armed them for tauenge the Duchemen, & of a recountour that they had ayenst Solyman, capitulo xxv

THappeth oftyme that the werse counseyl ouercometh the better, and it is no meruaylle, ffor there ben more fooles than wysemen. Thyse mene peple, and without reson, meuyd them so moche & cryed that the barons and other men that were with hem ran to armes, on horsbak & on foote. There were wel xxv M on foote, and v C a horsbak, alle wel arrayed. They made theyr bataylles, & wente forth in ordenaunce toward the montaygnes by the woodes strayt toward Nycene. They were not departed thre myle whan Solyman, whiche had moche peple with hym, apperceyued them; for he cam alle couerd & secretely in the wode, for to make an assaylle in the oost of the pylgryms. But whan he herd the noyse & thaffraye in the foreste, he wyst wel that thei were the

cristen men that cam ayenst hym, & suffred them to passe. He hym self with alle his peple drewe hym incontinent oute of the wode in to the playn where as they shold passe. Whan oure peple were yssued, they sewed them sodenly, they toke none hede of hym, and anon with their felawship ran vpon our men with their speres & swerdes for tauenge theyr bretheren. The hethen men sawe on that other syde that certaynly they wold fyghte, & that euery man dyd his beste, receyued them moche fiersly. The bataylle began moche cruelle, and many were dede on bothe sydes, and the bataylle dured longe. But Solyman had moche more peple on horsbacke, whom the pylgryms a/fote myght not lenger suffre, but began to flee without ordenaunce, and were discomfyted. The Turkes folowed them aftir, sleeyng alle them that they myght atteyne, tyl they cam to theyr lodgyng. There were slayn Gaultier sans sauoyr, Reygnald de Broyes & foucher d'Orleans, whiche were good and valyaunt knyghtes, and almost alle were slayn and brought in to prison, ffor of xxv M men, and fyue honderd men on horsbak, coude not be founden thre to gydre, but that they were taken or slayn.

How Peter Theremyte beyng in Constantynoble was aduertysed of this disconfyture, & saued thre thousand cristen men, beyng in grete daunger, capitulo xxvj.

THIS vyctorye brought Solyman in grete pryde, and in grete sewrte he smote in to the lodgis of the cristen men, where as wer lefte thauncyent peple, men, wymmen, clerkes, and monkes, whome he put alle to deth. He fonde maydens and smale children, whiche he ledde with hym, for to be euer aftir in seruage. On that one side of the tentes nyghe vnto the see, was an old fortress forleten and beten doun, in whiche no man dwelled, nether was fonde therein dore ne wyndowe. Theder fledde of the pylgryms aboute a thre thousand, one aftir another for to kepe theyr lyues, they stopped thentrees the best wyse they myght wyth grete tymbre and trees, and with grete stones. The Turkes knewe therof, & eam and began tassaylle it on alle sides moche anguysshously. They defended them the best wey they myghte, ffor they had grete nede. Whyles they were thus assaylled, a messager wente hastely to Peter Theremyte, which was in Constantynoble, as it is said to you to fore: this message said to hym that alle his men were perysshyd, sauf a lytil remenaunt, whiche were at grete mischief in an old hows asyeged, whiche were in moche grete danger, yf they had not hasty socoure.

PETER was moche abasshed, & had meruayllously grete sorowe. Neuerthelesse, anon he ranne to themperour, and fyld doun at his feet, and prayd hym for goddes sake and for the sauacion of his sowle, that he wold sende socoure to this poure peple that were in so grete peryll, that yf he hasted not, they shold be alle deed. Themperour that moche louyd Peter sent anon his messagers theder, and commaunded the Turkes that essaylled them shold leue thassault & departe thens. They wente aweye anon whan they had herde the commandement of themperour, but they ledde with them prisonners ynowe, horses, mules, and other beestes, tentes, pauyllons, and gonnes, and wyth alle they retourned in to Nycene Here ye maye here how so moche peple was loste, by the folye of the moyen peple, whiche wold not haue ne endure the gouernaunce of the wyse men aboue them. Here may men wel see that it is grete peryl to truste to the bataylle or warre of them, that knowe not of it.

How a preest named Godechan made hym self captayn of xl M Duchemen in this viage, and of theyr oultrages, capitulo xxvij

SYTH that Pieter was passed in to Bythynie as I haue said, it was not longe aftir that a priest named Godechan had prechyd in Duchelonde, lyke as Peter Theremyte had doon in fraunce, and cam with his peple for to goo in in this pylgremage, ffor he had

wel assembled xl M of Duchemen. They entred alle in to the londe of Hongrye, ffor the kyng had comaunded that they shold be receyued debonayrly, by cause it was his neygbours, and that they shold bye vytaylle & other necessytees at prys resonable. They that fonde the londe right good began to abyde there alle the wynter, and for the ease that they had they began to wexe prowd, in suche wyse that they toke away the vytaylles & other thynges, and ledde awey the beestes oute of the feeldes. They toke wyues, bete theyr husbondes and slewe them, & for noman wold they leue thise outrages. ¶ The kynge of the londe herde the tydynges of this peple, and was moche displaysed, and was moche sory therfore, & myght not wyth his honour no lenger suffre it, lest it shold torne to ouermoche hurte of his londe and of his subgettes, and dyde do assemble moche peple on horsbak, and on fote for tauenge on thise Duchemen. He began to poursyewe them so ferre, that he fonde them right in the mydle of his royame by a castel named Bellgraue. The kyng had seen and also herd of thoultrages that they had doon in his londe whyles he siewed aftir them. The Duchmen knewe that the kynge cam vpon them and was nyghe, & they knewe wel that they had not ben wel gouerned toward hym, but had doon many ylle tornes and wronges in his londe, wherfor they had not deseruyd his grace and his loue. Neuirtheless they ranne to armes, and sayde that they wolde defende them fro the Hongres, and wold neuer deye for nought, but erst wold they selle theyr lyf moche dere. ¶ Whan the kyng and the Hongers sawe this,

they thought that this peple were moche stronge and hardy, & there as alle dispayred, and sawe that he myght not ouercome them without grete losse of his peple in that maner, & lefte the force of bataylle, and toke hym to subtilite & falshed, as peple that is ful of barate, deceyte, and trycherye.

THE kynge & the Hongers sente message to Godechan & to the grete men of the companye for to deceyue them by fayre wordes of peas, and sayd to them in this manere: Ouer grete complaynte and moche fowle renomme is comen to the kyng of you, fayr syres, whiche hath sente vs hether, for as he hath herd saye, ye haue not had to none of youre hoostes no fayth ne trouthe, but haue taken fro them that they hadde, and haue beten & slayn them. Ye have taken their doughters and wyues, and doo suche oultrages to them as it ought not to be sayd. The marcheauntes and other peple that ye fynde by the wayes, be not sure, and goo not quyte fro you, but be robbed and pyled. Of whiche thynges the kyng hath grete clamours aftir him; neuirtheles the kyng knoweth wel, that ye be not alle in this default, but ther ben emong you many good men & wyse to whom this folye moche displaysyth, and the oultrage of the malefactours whiche haue so angred the kyng and his peple, therfor the kyng wil not put the defaulte of one partye vpon alle, ne it is not right that the trewe pylgryms shold a/bye the trespas of the bad, & he doubteth to take vengeaunce on you alle. Wherfore we counseyle you that ye appese the kynge in this maner, &

we promyse you in good fayth that ye shal neuer haue damage. Offre, and putte your bodyes, your armes, and alle your thynges in his wylle and in his mercy, without makyng of ony appoyntement with hym, for yf ye wil not so doo, ye see wel, ye haue not the puysaunce ayenst hym, for ye be in the myddle of his royamme, and may not escape hym.

GODECHAN & the grete men of his hoost to whom this oultrages moche displesyd, and the folyes of the mene peple, trusted wel in the wordes that they had brought to them, and had grete hope in the hyenes and mercy of the kyng. They called the peple, counseyled and prayde them that they wolde rendre theyr harnoys, and put them in the mercy of the kyng. They wold not doo it, and sayde ther shold neuer come good to them to put them under so vntrew peple: neuertheles, atte laste they dyde by the counseyl & wylle of the wyse men. Theyr harnoys, and alle that they hadde they delyuerd atte commandement of the kynge. Whan they supposed therby to haue goten theyr lyf, they ran to the deth, ffor the Hongres assaylled them anon in the mydle of them alle armed, of the whiche poynt they toke none hede. They began to slee & smyte of heedes without demandyng who was good ne who was euyl. They slewe so many that they waded in the blood vnto the half legge, it was sorowe and pyte to see theyr bodyes of so fayr peple slayne in the stretes, wayes and feeldes. Som happed tescape that wente emong the other and retorned in to theyr contre, & tolde this meschef and

trayson, by whiche they taught alle the pylgryms that they fonde that they shold not truste to the peple of Hongrye.

How CC M cristen men a foote & thre M a horsbak withoute capytayn assembled in this pylgremage, & of theyr mayntene, capitulo xxviij

IN a litil tyme aftir this grete occisyon that I haue said to fore, assembled moche grete peple a foote without capitayne. Neuertheles ther wer emong them hye men and good knyghtes, but the comune peple obeyed them not, ne byleuyd them of nothynge. There was emonge them Thomas de fere, Clerembault of Vendueyl, Guillem Carpenter, & the counte Herman. These peple that were a foote dyde many ylles and oultrages by the waye, and ther arrose emong them a madnesse and a rage of whiche they coude not kepe them fro sleyng of alle the Iewes in alle the wayes and townes by whiche they passed. They slewe merueyllous grete nombre at Coleyne, at Magonce, and in other places. In thise partyes as they wente was an erle, a right noble lord named Emycon: whan he sawe this peple, he put hym self in theyr companye for to goo with them in this pylgremage, he chastysed not ne blamed the mysruled peple, but entysed them to doo euyl tornes.

THEY passed by francone and by Bauyere so ferre that they drewe in to Hongrye, and cam in to a toun named Meeszebors. Wel supposed they to haue passed in to Hongrye withoute ony gaynsayeng, but whan they cam to the brygge, it was deffended them and closed. There was a fortresse whiche was closed. on that one syde with the ryuer of the Dunoe, and on that other syde with the ryuer named Lintans; the remenaunt was enuyronned with a depe mareys. Within the fortresse was grete plente of peple wel armed, wherfore it was not lyght for to passe that toun by force, ffor the kynge of Hongrye had wel vnderstande of the comyng of this peple, whiche were withoute faylle wel cc M on fote, and on hors-bak were nomoo but thre thousand, and doubted moche that they, whan they were entred in to his londe, wolde auenge thoccision that was doon by falsehed and trayson vpon the peple of Godechan, ffor the rumoure and speche was moche yet of that fowle and vylanous fayte thurgh out al the londe. They that sawe that they myght not passe in to the londe, prayd them of the fortresse that they wold suffre them to sende messagers to the kyng of Hongrye, for to requyre his grace that they myght passe in good peas, and they wold lodge them ther whylest in tho places that wer ful of pastures to fore the paas.

How this peple began to destroye the londe of the kyng, by cause he wold not graunte to them leue for to passe, capitulo xxix

LYTIL whyle taryed they that wente to the kyng, but retorned anon, ffor they myght not spede of such thynges as they demanded. The kyng answerd that for yefte ne for prayer sholde they entre in to his londe. Whan they of the oost, grete & smale, herd this, they were moche angry, ffor they had trauaylled & despended moche good to come thedyr, and now they had loost their waye. They concluded among them that they shold brenne & destroye the contreye of the kynge, as moche as was on this syde the mareys; they sette fyer on townes, and toke the men, and destroyed alle the contrey. Whyles they dyde thus, the peple of the fortresse cam out, and with other peple of the kynges to the nombre of vii C, what of knyghtes and other peple wel armed, and passed by shippis er euer the pilgryms knewe of it ony word, and they sette them for to deffende the pylgryms at a paas that they shold not entre. Whan the pylgryms sawe this, they ran vygorously vpon them in suche wyse that er they myght saue them self they were slayn alle, sauf a fewe of them that withdrewe them in to the mareys, and hydde them in the reed.

THAN thyse pylgryms thus had the victorye, they mounted in moche grete hardynes, and said that by force they wold take the fortresse of Hongrye, & withoute leue they wold passe thurgh the londe. Thenne they began to somonne and recomforte euery man to doo wel. They toke poles & made scaffholdes moche grete plente, whiche they sette to the walles, & mounted vp couerd with theyr sheldes and targes, and assaylled it moche hardely. Many pyked with pykoys, & myned the walles with grete force that thentree semed al redy for to entre. They that were within were nyghe deed for despayer, ffor they defended slowly as men affrayed in their hertes, ffor they supposed anon to be slayn. And sodenly cam a fere and a drede vpon the hertes of the pylgryms that wened anon to be slayn, and neuer was knowen wherfore it was, and anon fyl doun fro the scaffoldes, & taryed not, but fledde sodeynly, & none wyste why they fledde. The Hongers whan they sawe this, myght wyth grete peyne byleue it, that this was trouthe, ffor they sawe no rayson why. Neuertheles, whan they apperceyuyd they descended doun and began to folowe the chaas in suche wyse that them next to fore them were almost alle taken and slayn. In this auenture was fonden none other reson, sauf that the peple was so ful of synne, that they had not deseruyd the loue of our lord, ne thonoure of the world, and therfor theyre synnes acowarded them in suche wyse that they myght not doo ne accomplysshe this grete werke, whiche they had nyghe achyeued.

THE erle Emycon cam agayn in to his contre with grete nombre of pepledisconfited. The other barons of fraunce that I fore haue named wente in to Lombardye, & so in to Puylle. There had they knowleche that somme of the grete barons were passed in to Duras, and fro thens in to Grece, they wente aftir & folowyd them. In this manere were the peple of fraunce disperpled and of the contrees ther by. The waye of Hongrye was moche more strayte & ner yf they myght haue goon it, and had not be destrowbled by theyr folye. But the other that cam aftir peyned them moche for to goo more wysely and more in peas.

How the duc Godefroy of Boloyne beyng with a grete hoost cam vnto Hongrye, sente his messagers to the kyng for to demande passage, capitulo xxx.

SOMEN was the moneth of Auguste, in the yere of thyncarnacion of our lord, M lxxxxvj, the xv day of the same moneth, the valyaunt Godefroy of Buyllon, duc of Loraygne, assembled them that shold be his felawes in this iourneye, and cam fro his contrey with so grete apparayllement as it apperteyned to his estate. With hym Bawdwyn his brother, Bawdwyn the erle of Henawde, Huge the erle of Seynt Pol, Euerard his sone, which was a moche valyaunt yonge man, Garnyer the erle, surnamed of Grees, Bernarde the erle of Toull, Pieter his bro-

ther, Bauwdwyn de Bors, cosyn to the duc, Henry d'Asque, Godefroy his brother, and many other good knyghtes with them. This men were so good frendes emonge them, and so wyse men, that in no wyse they wold departe that one fro that other. They cam alle hool with their thynges in to Osteryche the xx daye of Septembre, vnto a town which is named Tayllenborch, there renneth a ryuer named Lyntans, and departed thempyre of Allemaygne fro the royamme of Hongrye. Whan they were comen theder, they had herd by the waye euyl tydynges of the grete mesauentures, that Godechan and his peple had in Hongrye.

They assembled and took counseyl emonge them, how they myght passe this contre in peas. They alle acorded that they shold sende messagers and lettres vnto the kyng of Hongrye for to demande first by what reason theyr felaws, the pylgryms whiche were theyr bretheren, were thus perysshed in his power and his londe. Aftir this they encharged the messagers that they shold entre with hym in to comunicacion, that they myght passe his royamme seurly and in peas, and that herin they put them in deuoyr and payne, ffor this waye was for them moche shorte, & more couenable yf they myght haue it than for to passe by see. In this message wente Godefroy d'Asque, brother of Henry, by cause he had long to fore ben acqueynted with the kynge of Hongrye; with hym they sente other wyse men. They wente so fer that they fonde the kynge, and salewed hym in the name

of hem that sente them, and delyuerd theyr lettres of credence, and aftir sayd to hym thyse wordes.

How the messagers of the duc Godefroy declared their message vnto the kyng of Hongrye, and ther upon his answere, capitulo xxxj.

THE wyse man and noble, Godefroy, duc of Lorayne, & the other prynces that with hym come in pylgremage, haue sente vs now vnto you, & by you wolde knowe by what occasion the other pylgryms, whom they helde for felaws & bretheren, haue so cruelly be slayn and smeton in pieces in your power. Wel they knowe and sende you worde that they haue ben soo slayn, ffor they haue founden many of them that ben escaped. Moche they meruaylle how ye and your peple, which ben cristen as ye saye, haue thus destroyed the good companye, whiche for to enhaunse the fayth of Ihesu Crist ben departed out of theyr contre, in suche wyse that the most mortal enemyes that they haue, had not don werse. They desire moche to knowe yf it were by the defaulte of the pylgryms; ffor yf ye haue doon it by iustyce, or in deffendyng you and youre londes, or other wyse that they wold enforce and take ony thyng away. Yf it were so, the duc and his felaws wold take it more lightly, but yf it be doo without their trespaas, or for hate that ye had to them, and thus murdred them, they that sente vs hether lete you wete by vs that they haue lefte theyr owne countreyes for tauenge the wronges and the oultrages

that haue ben don to the peple of oure lord, and yf they finde that ye haue so doo, they be not in wylle to passe ferther, tyl they haue to theyr power auenged the deth of the pylgryms of our lord. And herwith Godefroy, that acounted this to the kyng, made an ende of his wordes.

THE kyng was in his palays, where he had grete plente of barons of his royamme and of other peple. Thenne answerd and sayde Godefroy, it plesyth me moche that ye be come in to this contrey for to speke to me: it is a moche good thyng for me for two causes. That one is that ye be of myn acqueyntaunce & my frende longe syth, and we shal afferme & renewe our loues & our acqueyntaunces in this youre comyng. That other cause is that I knowe you to be a man wyse, resonable, and of good wille, and am moche ioyous of this that ye shal here my excusacion. Trouthe it is that we haue the name of the cristiente, it were & shold be moche fayr to vs yf we had the werkes, but they that ben passed tofore with Peter Theremyte & with Godechan, haue not the werkes of pylgryms ne of cristen men. For we receyuyd Peter Theremyte and his peple in oure londes and in our townes with grete debonayrte, and departed with them oure vytaylles, and other thynges we gaf to them, but they, lyke as the serpent that prycketh or styngeth hym that kepeth hym warme in his bosomme, hath guerdonned and rewarded vs for our good dedes, for in thende of the royamme of Hongrye, whan they ought to thanke vs and rendre graces to god & to

theyr frendes, they toke by force one of oure best castellis, and put to deth alle that were therin, and caryed the beestys with them. They toke alle the maydens of the town lyke rowters and theues. The companye of Godechan cam after them, they abode not to forfaytte til the ende of our royamme, but assone as they were entred and passed the yates of Hongrye, they began to make alle thoultrages they myghte. They brente the townes, slewe the men, enforced the wymmen, and bare away alle thynges: they dyde so moche that for theyr trespaces were wel worthy to haue hate of god and of the world. We that be here in the place and in the dygnyte, by whiche we ought to kepe the peple as longe as it shal please god, and our barons that haue sworne the feaulte of the royalme, myght not wel endure thus to destroye our peple and our contrey, but haue put to the hand by force in vs defendyng. The thyrde companye cam also with folke a foote, we doubted the noyse & debate in suche wyse, that we wold not suffre them entre in to our londe ne come emonge vs. Our lord, that iugeth alle the wordes & knoweth alle thynge, wote wel that it is thus, and that I haue lyed to you no worde. Now we praye you that ye excuse vs oueraal where ye shal here speke of it.

CHAN he had said this, he sente the messagers in to theyr innes, where they had moche grete honour and grete feste. The kynge toke counseyl of his barons, & ordeyned his owne messagers, whiche he sente to the duc Godefroy and to the prynces that cam. He had

spoken ynowgh to Godefroy d'Asque, and made hym grete chere, and gaf to hym & his felawshippe yeftes, and aftir took leue of him and retorned al to gydre with the messagers. Whan they were comen to fore the duc Godefroy, one of them sayd the message in this manere: The kyng of Hongrye saleweth you, my lordes, and sendeth yow worde that he knoweth certaynly by renomme that ye be a man of moche hye lygnage, puyssaunt of peple, wyse & trewe of herte, prudent & valyaunt of body, in suche wyse that your prouesse is borne in to many londes, ffor thyse thynges our lord the kynge, whiche neuer sawe yow, preyseth & loueth yow moche in his herte, and hath moche grete desire to doo you honoure. These pylgryms that ben with you, & that haue enterprysed so hye a pylgremage he preyseth moche, and desyreth moche to see them, and to worshippe, and to haue theyr acqueyntaunce, ffor he holdeth hym self ewrous & gracious that our lord had sette hym in such a poynt, that he may doo seruyse and bounte to one so valyaunt a man. Therfore vnto you, fayr lord, & to the hye men of your companye he prayeth, requyreth & demandeth for a synguler yefte, that it wold plese you to come see hym at one his castel named Ciperon, ffor he desireth moche to speke to you at leyser, and doo that ye wille demaunde.

How the said kynge sente for to fetche the duc Godefroye, and how he wente, and of the deuyses that they had to gydre, capitulo xxxij

THAN the duc & his barons had herd the messager thus speke, he drewe them a parte and toke counseyl: they acorded wel that the duc shold goo. He sente for suche companye as he wold haue and wente forth with thre honderd horse, withoute moo, on his way. Hit was not long but he cam to Ciperon, he passed the brygge, and fonde the kynge, whiche made to hym grete ioye and moche honour. And long they spak to gydre, & the kynge excused hym of the deth of the pylgryms vnto the duc, lyke as he had doon to the messager. At thende the kyng cam so to poynt that they were appeased goodly: the kyng acorded to hym the passage thurgh his royamme, yf he wold sette hym suche hoostages as he shold chese for to kepe the pees. Alle this was graunted, and he demanded in hostage Bawdwyn, brother of the sayd duc, his wyf and her maygne, they were delyuerd to hym gladly. Thus entred they with alle theyr peple in to the lond of Hongrye. The kynge helde to them wel his couenauntes, ffor he dyde doo crye in alle the townes as they shold passe, & also thereby, that they shold selle to them vytaylles good cheep, and that noman shold meue to them no debate. The duc commanded also and made to be cryed, that none on payne of his lyf were so hardy to take ony thynge fro the lond ne fro no

man, ne for to doo no wronge, but holde them for felawes and bretheren. Thus it happed that they passed alle Hongrye without ony maner stryf or noyse.

THE kynge rode alwey nyghe to thoste, on the lyfte syde, ledyng his hostages with hym, redy for tappese yf ony noyse arroos. Atte laste they cam to Malleuylle, wherof ye haue herd to fore, whiche stondeth on the ryuer of the Dunoe. There they taryed tyl alle the hoost were passed by shippes, wherof were but fewe, but to fore he had don sette ouer a thousand men wel armed for to kepe the arryuyng on that other syde. When the hoost of the comyn peple were passed, the kyng cam to the duc and to the barons, and brought the hostages that were delyuerd to hym. He made to them moche ioye and honour at departyng, & gaf to euerych grete yeftes and ryche. Aftir he toke leue, and retorned home ageyn. The duc and the barons passed ouer with their peple, and cam to Bellegraue, a cyte of Bougrye, of whiche we haue spoken to fore, and there they lodged them. After they passed thurgh the wodes, til they cam to the cyte of Nyz, and after to Stralyce.

How the duc Godeffroye sente his messagers to themperour of Constantinoble, to thende that he shold delyuer Huon le Mayne & other that he helde in prison, capitulo xxxiij

HERE may be knowen the euil disposicion & deceyte of the Grekes, ffor syth themperours Latyns faylled in Constantynople, and thempyre cam vnto the Grekes, of whom the fyrst was Nycefores. Anon the barbaryns that were aboute them, the Blacz & the Comans, they of Bougrye, whiche ben toward the north supprised & toke thyse londes that were so good, plentyuous, and delytable, and conquerd alle fro the Dunoe vnto Constantynople, and on that other parte vnto the see Adryane. There is a cyte in Lombardye, nygh to the londe of the marquys of Este named Adre, and is right a litil cyte. But by cause it is nyghe the see of Venyse and of Ancone, hath this see the name of the see Adryane in wrytyng. This see goth right nygh Constantynoble, vnto a xxx myle. This euyl peple of thempyre of Constantynoble had wel wonne vpon the Grekes xxx journeyes of lengthe, and x of brede, ffor aboue this see that I haue spoken of, is a countre named Epyre. The chyef cyte is named Duras, of whiche Pyrrus was somtyme kynge. In the contre where these pilgrims passed were two Danemarches. The one is named of the Ripe which is at the left hand upon the rive of the Dunoe. The other is named

Mayene, that is in the myddle of the londe, where ben also noble cytees, Nyz and Stralyce. In this londe was Archade, Thessale, and Machedone, and thre landes euerych wherof was called Trace. And alle thise were conquerd vpon the Grekes. But afterward ther was an Emperour named Basilie recouerd thise londes, and brought the Blacz and the Bougres longe afore this tyme, in suche wyse that the two Danemarches were comen agayn to his power. But yet wold not the Grekes suffre to repayre agayn the townes, ne laboure the londes, which shold be right good, to thende that none shold enhabyte there, by cause they holde it for a strengthe, and that nothyng shold be fonde therin. Also in Espyre, whiche extendeth fro Duras vnto a mount named Bagulars, and endureth foure iourneys. By that passed the other barons, but the duc and his companye passed by Danemarche la Mayen, whiche is named otherwyse Mese.

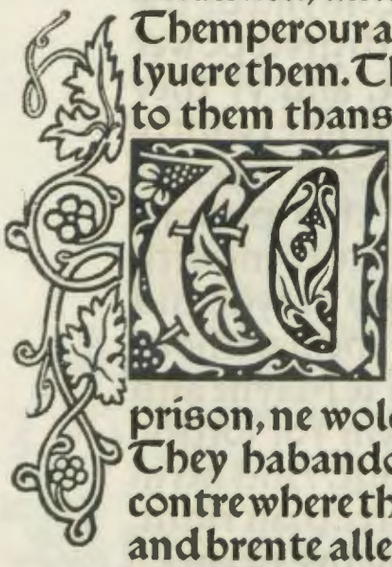
THEY cam by a destrayte, whiche is named the cloystre of seynt Basyle, & syth they descended in to a playne, where they fonde grete plente of vytaylle and of pastures, and cam vnto Asinepol, whiche is a moche fayr cyte and good. There herd they saye, and trouthe it was, that themperour of Constantynoble had enprisonned Huon le Mayne, broder of the kynge of fraunce, & many other barons that cam with hym. for thise noble men were hasty, and cam by Lombardye in to Puylle, ffro thens they passed to Duras, and soiourned for tabyde the other barons,

whyche ought to come in to tho partyes, ne they supposed to haue doubted ony thyng in the londe of the Grekes, that were cristen as they were. But the baylly of Duras toke alle the moost grete barons, and sente them in yrons to themperour of Constantynoble to doo his wylle with them. He helde them in prison, and abode the comyng of the other barons, by cause yf they cam with grete power he wolde delyuer them for theyr loue, and yf they cam not with grete myght he thought not lyghtly to lete them passe. ¶ Whan the duc Godefroye and the other barons herd tydynges of this prisonment, he toke good messagers, & sente them with theyr lettres to themperour. And they prayde and warned hym that he shold sende to them without delaye this hye and noble man Huon le Mayne and alle his companye, ffor they helde hym for lordes, bretheren & felaws of this pylgremage. And herin he had don more his wylle and his force than right, whan he had reteyned one so gentil & hye prynce.

How the duc Godefroye constreyned themperour by force to rendre and delyuere his prisonners, capitulo xxxiiij

IN this tyme was emperour a Greke, moche fals and ful of tricherye, & was named Alexes, & to his surname Conius. He was moche acqueynted & pryue with that other emperour Nychofores Bothoniat, in suche wyse that he made hym his steward, & was the grettest man of the londe sauf themperour. He by his

malyce purchaced euyl and harme ayenst his lorde, by thassent of grete peple that he helde aboute hym, and toke hym and helde hym in his prison vj yere tofore that our pilgryms cam theder. ❧ The messagers of the duc & the other barons demanded of this emperoure Huon le Mayne, lyke as they were commaunded, and the other prysonners in lyke wyse. Themperour answerde shortly that he wold not delyuere them. They retourned in to the hoost, & said to them thansuer of themperour.



THAN the duc & the other barons herd this, they were moche wroth, & concluded emong them by theyr counseyll, that they wold playnly make warre ayenst hym, that dyde so grete oultrage to holde so hye a prynce in prison, ne wolde not answere by mesure ne reason. They habandonned to the hooste to take, in that contre where they were in, alle that they coude fynde, and brente alle the townes. Thus abode they in thise partyes, & destroyed alle the contre, & dyde moche grete dommage and harme; & grete plente of proyes and other gaynes cam in to the hoost of the barons ❧ Themperour sente vnto the duc & vnto the other barons, that they shold doo holde theyr peple in pees, and that he wold delyuere Huon le Mayne and the other prisonners. They agreed & acordid gladly, & cam with alle theyr bataylles renged & in ordenaunce to fore Constantynoble, as for tassiege the toun. ❧ Anon yssued oute Huon the Mayne, Dreue de Neele, Guyllaume Charpentier, Clarembault de Venduel, and entred in to the pauyllon of the duc,

and thanked hym moche and alle the other of theyr delyueraunce. And the duc and the hooste receyued them with moche grete ioye, ffor they had moche grete angre & grete despite of that was don to them.

The grete despyte that themperour toke, that duc Godeffroy reffused to goo in to Constantinoble vnto hym, capitulo xxxv

THYLES they spak thus to gydre, cam the messagers fro themperour to the duc, & requyred them in theyr lordes name that he wold entre with a fewe of his companye in to the toun, & come speke with themperour ❧ The duc had counseyl herupon, and answerd, that he wold not yet come in to the toune. Whan themperour herd this, he had therof moche grete despite, & deffended oueral that ther shold no more vytaylle be sold to them, ne none other thynges ❧ The noble men sawe this, and sente out on fouragyng ouer alle the countrey, & they brought in vytaylle grete plente, in suche wyse that they had ynowgh, poure & ryche. Themperour sawe that this contre shold be destroyed, and doubted that they wold yet doo werse, therfor he commanded to his marcheauntes that they shold goo in to the hooste and selle to them suche thynge as they neded.

THE daye of Cristemasse or of the Natyuite of oure Lorde approched, therfore the duc and the barons dyde doo crye in the hooste, that no man sholde forfaytte ne trespace in tho foure dayes. The mene whyle cam the

messagers of themperour, that spak to the barons moche fayr, that they wold passe the brygge and come on the syde of the palays whiche was named Blaquerne, ffor there myght alle the hooste lodge in grete howses whiche were nygh the braas of seynt George. And alle this said they for tricherye and deceyte. Neuertheles our peple byleuyd them lyghtly, ffor the wynter was moche cold & sharpe of raynes and snowes, in suche wyse that the pauyllons roted, and ne myght not hold out the water of the rayne; the horses and poure peple myght not endure it. Herof toke themperour his occasion for to sende in to the hoost, and that they shold passe toward the town: and semed that he had grete pyte on them, but his entencion was alle other wyse, ffor he dyde this to thende that he shold enclose them in a place more strayt, that they shold not renne in to the contre, & that he myght haue the gretter power to constrayne them therin.

Of the descripcion of Constantinoble, & of many countrees & londes ther aboute, capitulo xxxvj

HOR to vnderstonde how the barons were enclosed by the desloyaulte of themperour, it is to wete how the cyte of Constantinoble stondeth. The see whiche is in Venyse cometh nygh vnto xxx myle of Constantinoble; ffro thens departeth an arme like a fresshe water, and estendeth it toward the eest in lengthe ij C xxx myle. It is not like euen, ffor in somme place it is but a myle broode, & in an-

other it is wel xxx of brede or more, after the places that it renneth in. And it renneth bytwene thyse two auncyent cytees, Sexton & Abydon, of whiche that one is in Asye and that other in Europe, ffor by the arme is deuyded thyse two londes. Constantinoble is in Europe: that other parte is Nycene, whiche is in Asye. This braas or arme, thus as it is moost brode toward the see, lyke a roode where the porte is, it is sayde that it is mooste paysible, and easyer than the see is. Nyghe therto stondeth Constantinoble, whiche is lyke a tryangle. The first syde is bytwene the porte and this arme, ther standeth a chirche of seynt George, of which that see is named the braas of seynt George, & this endurith vnto the new palays of Blacquerne, after the porte. That other pan of the walle dureth fro this chirche of seynt George vnto the Porte Oire. The thyrde pan fro that yate vnto the palays of Blacquerne. The towne is moche wel closed toward the champayne of walles, of dyches, of towres, and of barbicans. Atte porte descendeth a fressh water rennyng, which is lytil in the somer, but in wynter it becometh moche grete for the rayne. This water hath a brygge, on whiche oure men passed ouer, the whiche were enclosid bytwene the grete see and the braas, behynde the porte, where they were lodged in houses & were there made for tabyde that comyng of other barons.

THEMPEROUR sente of tebis messagers to the duc, and sente for hym to come and speke with hym. The duc doubted moche his tricherye, & wold not goo. But to thende that he toke it not for euyl, he sente to hym thre noble men, that is to wyte, Conon de Montagu, Henry d'Asque, and Bawdwyn de Bort, & excused hym by them that the barons that were with hym wold not counseylle hym to goo & speke with hym tyl that the other barons were comen. Themperour was moche wroth, and deffended agayn that no vytaylles shold be sold to the hoost. And dyde yet werse, ffor he sente on a daye erly in the mornyng shippes al ful of archers, that cam sodenly by the braas right there as the duc was lodged. They shotte grete plente of arowes, in suche wyse that they slewe moche peple that was goon on the see syde, and many they hurted by the dores and wyndowes.

How our peple brente theyr lodgys and toke theyr harnoys, and of an assault that the Grekes made on them, capitulo xxxvij

WHAN the duc & the other barons herd this, by comyn counseyl they sente the brother of the duc for to take the brigge, to thende that they of the toun shold not seasene take it. They toke v honderd men, what knyghtes as other wel armed, &

cam fyrst to the brygge and kepte it, and sawe that alle the cyte was meued and armed for to come on them. Our men were then adcerteyned that they of the towne were theyr enemyes, and sette fyer in the howses where they lodged in, & in other by whiche they doubted and fered, wel a vj thousand or seuen, in suche wyse that som of emperours owne howses were brente. ¶ After they dyde do sowne theyr trompettes, and wente them alle in ordenaunce after the duc toward the brygge, ffor they doubted moche that they of the towne wold come theder for to deffende them the paas. But as I haue sayd, Bawdwyn, brother of the duc, had thenne goten it vpon the Grekes, whom he had ouerthrowen & chased ryght ferre. The hoost and alle the cariage passed ouer, alle in to the contrey, and arrested there alle in ordenaunce in a fayr playn, moche fyers and courageous, by the chirche of seynt Cosme and Damyan, which now is named the palays of Buymont and palays of Blacquerne.

THAN it was come nygh the euentyd there were many slayn of them of the towne, and of the other, but not so many. The Grekes myght no lenger sufre, but the pylgryms discomfyted them & chassed them, sleyng and hewyng alle them that they myght arreche, in suche wyse that they droof them in to the toun by force. Thenne retourned they agayn as they that had wonne the felde, and lodged in the playne. ¶ The Grekes were moche swollen and angry of that they had lost so many men & had ben so euyl demened,

and began to ordeyne thurgh the town how they myght yssue oute with moche more affraye and strenger than they had. But the nyght cam that destourned their counseyl ❧ This was an euident thynge, that themperour had don the barons passe the brygge by tricherye and vntrouthe for to haue closed them as within barryers.

How after this our peple began to destroye the contre. And of a message of Buymont vnto duc Godefroye, and the answer of the duc vpon the same, capitulo xxxviij



Ssone as thoost apperceyued on the morn the day, it was cryed that euery man on payne of deth shold arme him, on horsbak and on fote. The capitayns of som bataylles were ordeyned for to lede the peple in fourage ❧ The other sette them in ordynaunce for to kepe their lodgys, ffor wel they apperceyued certaynly that themperour pourchassed for them alle the euyl that he myght. They that wente for vytaylle withdrewe them wel lx myle: they pylled al aboute them alle the townes that they fonde, and brought corn, wyn, beestys, and other rychesses, whereof the londe was full, that vnnethe myght they conduyte alle. And they were oute sex dayes, and aftir retornned in to the hooste with alle this merueillous gayne.

Whyles as they conteyned thus, messagers cam fro Buymont to fore the duc, and salewed him in theyr lordes name, & delyuerd to hym lettres whiche saide in this manere. He salewed in his lettres the duc as he ought to salewe suche a man. Aftir they sayde: Knowe ye, sire, that ye haue to doo with a moche vntrewe man, whiche alwey sette his herte & purpoos to deceyue them that truste in hym. Specially he hateth the Latyns to the deth, & doth his power in alle maners that he can to doo euyl to our peple. And yf ye haue not yet apperceyued it, ye shal knowe al by tyme as I saye to you, ffor I knowe wel the malyce of the Grekes, & also the trycherye of themperour. Therfor I pray you, that ye withdrawe you fro Constantinoble, and retorne toward the playnes of Andrenoble or of Sympole, & there ye may wyntre you where as is grete plente of alle goodes. And I myself, yf it please god, assone as the sprynge of the yere cometh, shal come & haste to meue, & shal assemble with you, and shal helpe you, as my lord & frende, ayenst the vntrew prynce that entendeth to doo euyll with alle his power vnto cristiente.

Whan the duc had herd thyse lettres, by the counseyl of his barons he sente to hym ageyn other lettres that after the salewyng spak thus: We thanke you gretely, and so doo the other prynces that ben with vs, of the loue and trouthe that ye haue sente vs. And knowe ye certaynly that we haue founden on the

prynce and on the peple of Grekes, lyke as ye wene wel to knowe. We knowe wel that ye saye it of wysedome and of trouthe. But we doubte moche the armes, that we toke in our contrey for to warre on the hethen men, shold retorne and conuerte ayenst them that bere the name of cristiante as we our self doo. We attende and desyre moch your comyng: thenne, yf god will, whan ye shal be comen we shal doo take you to our counseyl.

How themperour appesed the duc Godefroye and sente for hym, and of the honour that he dyde to hym, capitulo xxxix

THEMPEROUR was moche anguyssous emong his pryue counseyl, and thought how he might appese to hym the duc & his peple by cause he destroyed his contre, of which he herd the clamours right grete and ofte. And by cause that he knewe that the messagers of Buymont were come, and had brought tidynges that he wold hastely come, he sente ageyn his messagers to the duc, and prayd hym that he wold come speke to hym, and yf he doubted of ony thyng he wold sende Iohan his sone in hostage in to the hoost ❧ This message plesyd moche to the barons whan they herde it, and they sente Conon de Montagu and Bawdwyn de Borgh for to receyue the hostage. They receyued hym & delyuerd to Bawdwyn brother of the Duc, whiche abode for to reule and gouerne the hoost

and to kepe the hostage. The duc and other barons wente in to Constantynople to fore themperour which had moche desyred them. The Grekes made to them grete ioye merueyllously what someuer they thoughte. Themperour kyssed them alle, and demanded of euerych his name, for to honoure euerych by hym self, as he that wel coude do it. They were wel beholden of alle them of the palays.

AT last themperour satte in his mageste, and the barons aboute hym, and sayde to the duc thyse wordes. We haue herd saye many tymes in thys londe, that thou art of hyghe lygnage, and of moche grete power in thy contre, and a good knyghte and trewe, in suche wyse that for the fayth of Ihesu criste tenhaunce, hast enterprised to warrre ayent the mescreauntes and hethen peple, whiche greue the cristen peple merueyllously. for alle thyse thynges we prayse the and loue in our herte, & wylle honoure the with grettest honour that we may doo, ffor thou art worthy and dygne. It playseth vs and therto accorden our barons, that we cheese the & auowe for our sone, & we put our empyre in to thyn hande, that thou kepe it as our sone from henssforth in good estate and in termes of loue. Whan he had seyde this, he dyde hym to be clad with the robe of an emperour, and to sytte by hym. And thenne the barons made to hym right grete feste and solempnyte aftir the custom of the londe in suche thynges. And thus was the pees affermed bytwene the prynces and also bytwene the peple.

Of the yeftes that themperour made to duc Godefroye, to the barons and to the gentilmen of his hoost, capitulo xl

ANONE whan this was don, the tresour of themperour was opened, and was presented to the duc & to his felawship so grete yeftes and so grete rychesses that it was merueylle to see. Ther was grete plente of gold, of syluer, & of precious stones, many clothes of sylk ryght ryche, vayssellys of dyuerse facions, whiche were merueyllous of facions and of matere. Oure peple meruellyd moche of this grete rychesse. Thyse yeftes cessed not at the fyrst tyme, but fro the daye of the Epyphanye vnto Thassencion tyde, themperour gaf to the duc euery weke as moche as two myghty men myght susteyne, of pierrye, of pens of gold, of copper, and of tyn he gaf to hym ten muyes, euery muye is four busshellys. But the duc departed alle thyse thynges vnto knyghtes and alle aboute where he sawe that it shold be wel employed. Whan they had ben with themperour a lytil whyle, they toke leue and cam agayn in to the hoost. They sente agayn Iohan his sone, whom they had holden in hostage moche honourably. Themperour dyde do crye vpon peyne of deth, that noman shold doo harme to the pylgryms, but shold do selle to them alle maner wares at prys resonable. The duc in lyke wyse dyde doo crye, that euery man as dere as he louyd his lyf

shold doo no force ne wrong to them of the contree. Thus forthon lyuyd they in moche peas.

THAN Marche cam the duc knewe wel that the other barons wold come, and apperceyued wel that the wille of themperour was that he wold pass with his peple the braas of seynt George: to the same acorded the barons & the other of the hoost. And saide to themperour that he wold passe ouer, and he anon dyde do make redy many shippes & passed wel alle and cam in to Bethnie, whiche is the fyrst partye of Asye. They lodged them aboute the cyte of Calcedonie. Of this cyte fynde we wryten, that in the tyme of pope Lyon and Marcyen themperour assambled there one of the iiij grete counseyllis, where ther were iij C xxxvj prelates, for to condempne an heresye that a monke named Entyses had founden, and that helde a patriarke of Alysaundre named Discretus, but there they were dampned. This cyte is so nighe Constantynoble that there is but the braas bytwene them bothe. And there was the hoost lodged moche easely, ffor who so had to doo in the cyte of Constantynoble he myght passe twyes or thryes in a daye. The cause why themperour made the duc to passe, was for he wold not that the hoostes of the barons that were to come shold not assemble to gydre so nyghe hym. And in lyke dyde he to the other barons that cam aftir, ffor he neuer wold lodge tweyne to gydre.

How Buymont was made capitayn of a grete hoost, and the names of many nobles of thoost & of their mayntene, capitulo xlj

AFTIR this maner contened hym themperour and duc Godefroy. But Buymont the sone of Robert Guychart, prynce of Tarente, had passed the see Adryane, and was come vnto Duras. Whan alle his hoost was comen he toke his waye thurgh the desertes of Bougrye, and wente softe and fayr by cause of them that folowed hym. In his rowte were many noble men, of whom we shal name to you a part; that is to wyte, Tancre the sone of Graal the marquys, Rychard the pryncipal sone of William fierbrace, the brother of Robert Guychart, Raymont his brother, Robert the Hanse, Herman of Caryn, Robert of Sourdeval, Robert fytz Tristen, Vmfrey fytz Raoul, Rychard sone of therle, Ranyol erle of Rousygnol, and alle his bretheren, Ogan of Chartes, Aubery of Cannac, and Vmfrey of Montygneux. Alle thyse had made Buymont their capytayn. They cam in to the cite of Castore and made there the feste of Cristemasse and helde it moche hyely. But by cause they of the contre wold selle to them nothyng, which helde them for enemyes, therfor by force they muste sende out on fouragyng & brought grete proyes and good gaynes, of whiche they dyde moche harme to alle the contrey. Aftir they cam in to the londe of Pelagoine, whiche is

moche good and fertile, & lodged them there. Aftir they herd saye that nygh by was a castel right stronge, wherin alle the popeliquans of the lande were withdrawen for the strenght of the place, and there were none but suche mysbyleued peple. Buymont & his peple armed them and wente theder anon, and founde there moche grete rychesse in the towne and grete proyes, whiche they put out a part, and after sette fyer ther in the town, and alle them that yssued they slewe with the swerde, and the remenaunt bothe men and wymmen they brent alle.

THEMPEROUR herd say that Buymont cam with grete peple, & doubted moche, and had his comyng moche suspecyonous, ffor he had many debates ayenst hym and his, of whiche he had alwey the werse. The souldyours of themperour and alle they that entermeted of armes soiourned & wyntred in thyse partyes by whiche Buymont passed. Themperour commaunded to his conestables of alle his peple, that they shold cooste Buymont with as moche people as they myghte gete vnto the water named Bardare, in suche manere that yf they myght greue, ennoye, & dommage in ony paas to them, that they shold come on hym strongly. Thus he had ordeyned cautelously behynde them. But to fore as he was moche disloyal & couuert, & coude wel make semblaunt of other thynge than he thoughte, he sente vnto Buymont of his grete men, & by them lettres moche payssyble and of fayr wordes, & of bountes moche debonayr and deceyualle whiche were as folowen.

Messagers and letres fro themperour to Buymont, and the contenue of the same as foloweth, capitulo xlij.

THE salewyng to fore was moche fayr, and aftir sayde: We knowe certaynly that thou art an hye prynce & moch noble sone of an noble & valyaunt man, ffor this in grete maner we preyse the, and haue the in chierte. And also for thou hast enterprised, with so good herte & so good wille in this tyme the seruyse of our lord, and the pylgremage whiche is due from alle them that byleue in Ihesu criste. We haue ferme wylle & certaynly purpoos to honoure the, & shewe by dede our grace that we haue thought. Therfor we praye and requyre the in good fayth, that thou commande to thy peple that they doo none oultrage to oure peple, and haste the to come to vs all surely, ffor thou shalt haue ther by honour and prouffyt. Our messagers that come to the shal by our commandement doo thyn hooste haue resonable market of vytaylles & of all other thynges. The semblaunt of thise wordes were fayr, but ther was ther vnder moch venym and of felonnye.

BUYMONT, whiche was wyse and knowyng many thynges, had many tymes preuyd the desloyalte of themperour, and receyued thyse wordes by semblaunce moche aworth and in thanke, but he preysed them lytil in his courage. Neuerthelesse, he thanketh hym by

mouth and by lettres that he daygned to wryte to hym and sende, considered that he was so smal a man ayenst hym & sente hym other curtoys wordes, &c. ¶ Thise messagiers that were thus comen, conduyted the hoost vnto the ryuer of Bardre. Whan the moost partye of the hoost were passed ouer, & the other ordeyned them for to passe after, the conestables of the soldyours whiche had awayted and folowed them wened to haue founden theyr poynt, and launced on this parte of thoost whiche was not yet passed, and were many moo of them than of oures. The noyse and the crye aroose moche grete. Tancre whiche moche was appert & hardy, had tho passed half the ryuer whiche was grete, but whan he herd this, he retorned agayn as hastly as he myght, and ij M of the moost noble retourned with hym and discomfyted them vigorously and putte them to flyght. And many he took of them a-lyue, whom he brought to fore Buymont.

DE demanded them in the presence of alle, wherfore they had ronne so on the hoost of the cristen men, whiche were also cristen and peple of themperour their lord & frende? They answered that they were seruauntes and soldyours of themperour and muste doo his commandement, ffor by hym they had this don. ¶ Here by myght alle they apperceyue that herde this, that the fayre wordes that themperour sayde were but deceyuaunce and tricherye. Buymont, whiche was wyse and knewe that he muste passe by thempyre, made semblaunt that he apperceyued not, and made

good chere to thise men for to couure his courage. And that plesyd not som of his barons.

How Buymont approuched Constantinoble, and was sente to come to themperour, and how by the prayer of duc Godefroye he wente toward hym, capitulo xliij

BUYMONT & his hoost wente so ferre by the contrees that they approched Constantynoble. Whan themperour knew that, he sente agayn grete messagers to hym and prayde hym entierly that he wold leue his hoost & come speke with hym with a pryue meyne. Buymont wyst not what to doo, ffor he was in the daunger of hym so grete a man, whom he doubted to angre; and, on that other parte, he knewe his falsenesse & deceyuaunce, and had wel apperceyued that he louyd hym not, & therfore, he fered to goo to hym. Whyles he was thus entredeux, the duc Godefroye cam to hym the Thursdaye afore Esterdaye, ffor themperour had so moche prayd the duc, by cause he doubted that he wold not gladly come to hym, that the duc wente to hym for to make hym come to themperour. Whan the duc and Buymont mette, they made moche grete ioye to gydre, & spak to gydre of many thynges; after entred the duc for to praye hym to come to his fader themperour. Buymont was loth tobey his prayer & request, but with grete peyne the duc vaynquysshyd hym by prayer, and made hym to goo. Themperour receyued hym with grete honour and ioye and kyssyd hym, and

aftir spak so moche to hym & to the duc, that Buymont by the counseyl of the duc made to themperour hommage with his hondes, and swar to hym feaulte as to his lorde. Thenne sholde ye haue seen come out of the tresour of themperour many grete rychesses, gold, syluer, vessel, precious stones, & clothes of sylk, so moche that vnneth myght be preysed.

TYLES that Buymont abode in the palays, Tancre his neuew, sone of his suster, that was right wyse and of grete herte, retched not for to see themperour ne to speke to hym, but made alle the hoost to passe ouer the braas seynt George, and to lodge in Bethine, nygh to Calcedoine, where thoste of the other barons had ben a good whyle. Whan themperour knewe that Tancre had eschewed hym, he was moche wrath, but he made no semblaunt therof, as he that wel coude couure his courage. He made moche grete feste to the barons that were with hym, and euery daye he gaf to them grete yeftes and newe thynges. Aftir they departed by his leue, and passed the braas with the other. There soiourned they, and abode the comyng of the other barons. There was brought to them grete plente of vytaylles, & of other thynges fro the cyte of Constantynoble & fro the countree aboute.

How the erle Robert of flaunders with his hooste approched Constantynoble, and how themperour sente for hym, & of their deuyses to gydre, capitulo xliiij



OBERT, the erle of flaundres, whiche was comen to fore the wynter to Bar, a cyte of Ouylle, where the body of seynt Nicholas lieth, had passed the see, & was descended at Duras. Ther in a moche fayr place and plentiuous he had wynterd hym, but assone as it began to wexe fayr tyme, toke his journeye after the other, and hasted faste to folowe them. But it happed that er he cam to the barons, he receyued the messagers of themperour, that sayd to hym in hys name, that he shold leue his hooste and come see themperour, and speke with hym wyth a fewe of his meyne. He demaunded and knewe wel, how the other barons had don to fore hym, and therfor he cam in to Constantynoble with a fewe of his companye. Themperour receyued hym wyth grete ioye & honour. They spak of many thynges to gydre, & after, lyke as other barons had don, he dyde hommage & made oth of feaulte. Themperour gaf to hym grete yeftes, and to alle them of his companye. Whan he and his peple had abyden & sojourned there, by the wylle of themperour he made his peple passe ouer, and he hym self wente after vnto the other barons, whiche with grete ioye receyued hym, & spak moche to gydre of theyr auentures of the waye, & ofte they

were in counseyl, how they shold doo fro than forthon. They were moche displesyd for taryeng of the other barons whom they abode. It was not longe after, but that the messagers of the erle of Tholouse and of the bisshop of Puy were come, & tolde how theyr lordes cam, and that they were nygh, and shold be hastely in Constantynoble.

Of the mayntiene of the hooste that therle of Tholouse and the bisshop of Puy brought ouer see, capitulo xlv

THYSE tweyne noble men departed to gydre out of their countrees with grete nombre of peple with them. They were accompanyed with many valyaunt and puyssaunt men of theyr countreyes. Ther was fyrst William bysshop of Orenge, Raybout erle of the same cyte, Gaste de Bedyers, Giralt de Roussylon, Guillem de Montpeliers, Guillem erle of forestes, Raymont Peles, Centon de Beart, Guillem de Amaneux, & many other barons moche worshipful, whiche for the seruyse of oure lord lefte theyr countrees, theyr lygnages & alle theyr delytes. They cam alle in to Lombardye, & passed by the syde of Aquylee, and aftir cam in to the londe called Ister, ffro thens in to Dalmace, whiche is a grete contrey bytwene Hongreye and the see Adryane. Therin be foure archiebisshopps, Iadre, Spalete, Antibare, and Raguse. The peple of that contre is cruel & moche acustomed to robbe & to slee. There be montaynes, and the londe is ful of depe waters rennyng, & large mareyses in suche wyse that there

is but lytil londe gaynable. Beestes ther be grete plente in the pastures by whiche they lyue; neuertheles, they that dwelle nygh the see ben of other maner lyuyng of habyte and of langage, ffor they speke Rommant. And the other speke not but Sclauoun as they be nourysshid.

THE noble men of whom I spak, camen in to this londe & had ther many grete trauayllys & diseases for the wynter, which was ouer cold, & for the contre, whiche was euyl garnysshyd of vytaylles. They hadde merueyllous grete suffraunce, ffor alle the peple of the contree for feer of the pylgryms had lefte cytees, castellys, & townes for to flee & hyde them in montaynes: they had born theder all theyr thynges. From thens they poursiewed the pylgryms, and them that were olde, seke and feble, & taryed after the hoost, they slewe alle. The erle whiche was wyse toke hede of the hoost, the other barons he sente to fore, he kepte alwey the rier garde with grete nombre of his peple wel armed aboute hym. The ayer of the contre was so ful of mystes and so thycke, that they byhynde myght vnneth folowe them to fore; ffor this londe, as I said to fore, is ful of ryuers rennyng and waters, of lakes and mareys, that a grete nyle sourdeth euery day, it semed that it shold neuer sesse. On that other syde the Sclauouns and the Dalmaces that knowe the places and the countrees made on them many assaultes at certayn paas, & slewe many of them that were vnarmed. The erle and the good men of the hoost closed them in, and slewe many of them, and many moo shold haue slayn yf the wodes & their

retraytes had not be so nyghe. Somtyme it happed that therle toke of them a lyue, and made to smyte of theyr feet and handes, & lefte them lye in the waye for to fere with the other that cam after.

IN this maner they were thre wekes in that londe in grete paryl, and in grete mysease. After they cam in to a castel named Serdre, there they founde the kyng of Sklauonye. The erle that was wel bespoken, spak moche fayr to hym & gaf to hym largely grete yeftes and iewellys, ffor he hoped ther by that he wold haue holden his peple in peas, and haue don hem had couenable market of vytaylles. But it auaylled not, for neuer for prayer, ne for no seruyse, might they aswage his courage, ne mollyfye the peple of the countre, but they founde them more cruel & more vyllanous than to fore. Thus were they foure wekes after in this sorowe, ffor they were fourty dayes in passyng this contre. After cam they to Duras.

Ambassadours of themperour to the sayd erle and bisshop, and of the contenue of his lettres, and of the daunger wherin the said bisshop was thenne, capitulo xlvj

THEMPEROUR had in suspection the comyng of therle, by cause that he knewe wel that he was a moche wise man & of grete courage, and wel herd saye that he had with hym grete plente of good men. Therfore he sente to them to Duras noble men of his

londe that delyuerd to hym lettres fro themperour, which spack in this maner after the salewyng ❧ The good renomme that renneth of the thurgh the world, hath made vs to haue certayn tydynges that thou art a man of grete wytte, of grete power, and of grete prouesse. Therfore we moche desyre to see thee, & honoure as hym that we loue of good herte, & preyse. And we praye the moche acertaynly, & requyre for a grete yefte, that thou do thy peple passe our contrees without oultrages and doyng harme. And haste the to come to vs, alle sure to haue oure grace and oure bounte. We haue commanded that vytaylles and other necessytees shal be sold to thy peple at prys resonable ❧ Whan the erle & alle the barons herde thise tydynges by thyse lettres, they were glad and ioyous, ffor they had longe suffred grete diseases. They toke theyr waye by forestes & by montaynes, & passed the londe of Epyre. Aftir they cam in to Pelagonne, where they fonde moche grete plente of alle goodes.

THE valyaunt bisshop of Puy lodged hym on a day fer fro the hoost in a fayr place that he founde, and in the nyght the Bougres assaylled hym in his lodgys & toke hym. But by cause he was necessarye to cristiente oure lord sauyd hym, that they slewe hym not, ffor one of the barbaryns demaunded of hym gold, therfore he defended hym fro the other, that they slewe hym not. In the mene whyle the noyse was herde in the hoost. Thenne they ranne to armes, and syth ran on them, and recouured the bisshop with alle his

thynges. On the morn they toke theyr waye and passed Salenyke, & alle Macedonie, and after grete trauaylles & many iourneyes they cam to a cyte named Redost. Thether cam the messagers of themperour agayne, and spak to the erle, prayeng hym in theyr lordes name, that he wold come to fore his hooste with a fewe of his companye in to Constantynoble. Messagers ther were also fro the barons that had passed the braas, & requyred the same by mouthe, & by lettres fro theyr lordes. The erle hym self had sente messagers to fore to knowe the beyng of the countre, and of the barons, and they were retorned, whiche acorded moche to the same, & counseylled hym to doo that themperour requyred.

How the erle of Tholouse beyng with themperour wold not do hommage to hym, and of the despyte that themperour dyde, capitulo xlviij.

BY the prayer of so moche peple therle muste nedes doo soo at theyr instaunce, & thus lefte his hooste, & cam in to Constantinoble with a fewe of his meyne. Many messagers encountred hym, whiche alle cam for to fetche hym. Whan he cam to fore themperour he was well receyued with moche grete chere and ioye of hym, & alle the barons of the palays. After themperour dyde to be sayd to hym, & requyred hym right swetly, that for to haue alwey alyaunce and amytee with hym, & also for the grete prouffyt that he shold haue therof, he shold make

hommage to themperour, lyke as alle the other had don. He answerd shortly that he wold none make ne doo to hym. Themperour had grete desdayne, & was moche wroth. He sente to fetche the conestables of his souldyours, & for them that had the charge of his men of armes, & commaunded them secretely in counseyl, that they shold auyse theyr tyme and poynt, and smyte in to the hooste of the erle, & doo to them alle the harme they myghte, and slee grete plente of them. This dyde themperour comaunde them the more surely, by cause that he wyste wel that they that were on that othersyde myght not helpe them, and by cause they were his men they wold not sone greue hym. And had commaunded that alle the shippes to bere ouer vytaylle, sholde come hastely ageyn in to the cyte, so that they on that other syde shold not come ouer agayn, ffor euer he had suspection of thassemble of oure peple, & therfore he made them to passe ouer eche after other as they cam. The grete chere that he made to them, and the grete yeftes that he gaf, cam more by barate and of drede than of loue or of largesse. But oure peple, & specially the frenssmen, myght not byleue that this ioye that he made to them, ne the rychesse that he gaf, myght come of ony trayson ne of euyl. They knewe not by experyence so moche thenne as they dyde afterward.

How themperour, for tauenge hym on therle, made his conestables tenbusshe them, and assaylle the hoost of therle, capitulo xlviij

THE conestables whiche had commandement of themperour, spak to gydre to theyr men, and made a busshement nyghe to the hooste of the erle of Tholouse. In the nyght, whan they had supposed alle wel to be assured, themperours peple smote in emong them, and slewe and wounded many or they were awaked and apperceyued it. But whan the crye aroos, & the noble men of thooste apperceyued the trayson, they armed them and reteyned theyr peple that began to flee, and after ran vpon them of themperour, and slewe many, and chassed the remenaunt. On the morn they of the hooste began to be moche esmayed of the trauaylle that they had suffred in the nyght, and of the trayson of the Grekes, and theyr hertes began to cole, & to faylle of the purpoose of theyr waye & pylgremage. And not only the smal and comune peple, but many of the grete and noble men had forgoten theyr vowes and theyr honours, and wold haue retorned home vnto theyr countrey. But the noble bisshop of Puy and the bisshop of Orenge were emonge them, and many good, wyse, relygyous men and clerkys, that prechyd to them the wordes of our lord, & recomforted them moche wel, and shewde them that yf they retourned, they shold lese thonour of this

world, & also of that other. Thus with grete peyne they reteyned them.

THAN the erle, whiche was in Constantynople, herde of the trayson that was don to hym in his hoost, he was as a man out of his wytte, & anon sente his men to themperour, and sente hym word that he had betrayed hym, ffor whyles he reteyned hym and made hym good chere, he had doo slee his peple by trayson. And sente worde hereof to the barons that were on that other syde, prayeng them as his bretheren that they wold come to hym to auenge it. Wel may ye knowe that yf therle had power sufficient, he wold not haue departed tyl he had auengyd hym, and that it shold haue ben dere bought, ffor he was a man of grete courage, and forgate not lyghtly shame don to hym. Themperour sawe that this thynge was goon ouer ferre, in suche wyse that he repented hym that he had so commaunded in his angre and hastynes, and hasted hym moche for to sette counseyl in this werke. And sente for Buymont and therle of flaundres to come & speke with hym, by cause he wold sende them for to appese therle of Tholouse. They cam, whiche were moche angry of this that was don.

THEY wente to therle in the name of themperour, but they sayd to hym more on theyr owne behalue than of themperours. They shewde hym wel that it was not tyme ne place for tauenge his shames that had ben don

to hym in the seruyse of oure lord, ffor it shold be empesshement vnto the grete werke that they had enterprised for to saue theyr sowles, and on that other syde, yf they wolde so doo, they had not the power ne puyssaunce. Therfor it were better to hyde their thoughtes than to discouere theyr hertes to theyr domage and shame. ¶ The erle, thus angry, was no fool, but souffred that his wytte vaynquysshe his angre, and said that he wold submette to thyse two noble men that spak to hym, and byleue them. ¶ They cam to themperour priuely, and shewd to hym al the fowle dede and werke that was commysed. Themperour vnderstode the grete yre that they had in their hertes, and sente for therle to come to hym in to his palays, and excused hym to fore alle pryue, and apperte, and estrangers, that he had not comanded this fayte to be doon, but it displesyd hym moche. And yet he, beyng without culpe and blame therof, he was redy to restore to the duc alle the dammages that were don to his hooste after his power. ¶ Thus euery day by day, and more and more, myght wel be perceyued the grete hate that the Grekes had to the Latyns, and of the desloyal felonnye that themperour had in his herte ayenst oure peple, but it must be suffred, ffor it myght not thenne be amended.

How at thynstaunt prayer of the barons of the hooste, the erle made hommage to themperour, whiche gaf grete yeftes to hym and his, capitulo xlix

AFTER the counseyl of the other barons, the erle was therto meuyd & by the grete prayers of themperour, that he dyde hommage to hym, and sware to hym feaulte, lyke as the other had doon, and the pees was affermed emong them. Themperour gaf to them so grete yeftes, that alle they were merueyllously esmayed. The other barons, that were come ouer agayn on the hether syde, receyued newe yeftes and presentes. After, they passed the braas, and retourned in to Bethnie, & they prayd moche the erle that he shold not longe tarye and abyde there. The erles hoost cam in to Constantynoble, & he made them passe ouer the braas, and to lodge with the other. He hym self abode in the toun, for certayn necessytees that he had do to doo and to ordeyne. And he, as a moche wyseman, prayde and incited ofte themperour, that he sholde enterpryse the seruyse of our lord, and that he wold be lord and captayn of alle the hoost, where as were so many noble men, and he had hope that our lord shold sende to hym suche honnour that he shold delyuere his peple and londe by hym. Wel coude the erle make to hym remonstrance, acordyng to that which the other barons had shown him whiche had spoken in this

mater ❧ Themperour answerd to them alle in one maner, that this pylgremage was a moche hyghe thyng, and that he moche desyred the pardon, & aboue alle other thyng the companye of so hye noble men plesyd hym moche. And about hym & his empyre, he sayd, he had moch cruel peple and moch vntrew, as the Bougres, the Comans, and other that gladly wold doo harme to hym & to his londe, and conquere his empyre, as moche as they myght gete ❧ And therfore it was grete parylle for me to withdrawe fro my countreye. ❧ Well & fayre he excused hym without forth, but that he sayd to oure peple was but trycherye and falsehed; ne he had neuer talente to helpe our peple, but thought wel in his herte how he myght noye them to his power.

THEY that were ouer the braas, the duc Godeffroy, Buymont, therle of flaundres, and the bisshop of Puy, aduysed and ordeyned theyr affayres for them, and sayde they wold drawe them to ward Nycene, ffor to abyde there the other barons that were comyng on the waye ❧ Whan they approched a cyte which was named Nycomede, which is the oldest cyte of the countre of Bythyne, be ye certayne that Pieter Theremyte, with a fewe peple that had abyden there, yssued oute of the poure place, and had ben there for the wynter, and cam ayenst thyse barons, and salewed them. ❧ They made to them good chere, and demaunded them of theyr waye and iourneys. They gaf to them grete yeftes, of whiche they had grete nede. Pieter tolde to them theyr grete mesauentures, and sayde

that it cam by theyr owne oultrage & folye. Thyse noble men of whome I haue sayd, had peple ynowgh, and cam to Nycene, and assieged it the xv day of Maye. They lefte places ynough for to lodge the other barons that cam after. The erle of Tholouse, whan he had do made suche thynges as hym neded in Constantynoble, he toke leue of themperour, whiche gaf to hym ryche yeftes alle newe, and cam after hastely to the syege of Nycene.

How duc Robert of Normandye, & other here named, approched Constantinoble, and made homage to themperour, capitulo l.

IN the whyle that they leyde the syege, Robert duc of Normandye, & other noble men with hym; that is to saye, Steuen therle of Chartres and of Bloys, Eustace broder of duc Godeffroye, sente to themperour & to other barons theyr messagers. In theyr companye were Steven Daubmarle, Hlayn fergaunt, & Conayn, two hye barons of Brytayne, the erle Rotheron of Perse, Rogyer de Barneuylle. Thyse & other ynowgh were with the count of flaunders and huon le Mayne in the yere to fore, in thentre of wynter, comen in to Puylle & in to Calabre. But whan the others passed ouer unto Duras, these for the force of the winter rassembled to them their men, and cam again into Puylle & into Calabre, whiche ben good countreyes. Whan the newe tyme was comen, they assembled theyr peple, and ordeyned theyr passage on the see, and cam to Duras, & by

cause they had taryed so longe, they hasted them moche, and passed Macedomone and the two Thaarses, and by grete iourneyes and grete trauaylles cam vnto Constantynople. Themperour sente for them to come to hym. They, that knewe how the other barons had don, cam in to his palays to hym: he receyued them with moche grete ioye, alle his barons made to them grete feste. He spak to euerych by hym self ryght swetly, & acqueynted with hem, after dyde do requyre of them hommage & feaulte. They dyde as the other had don that were passed to fore, and sayd it was no shame to ensiewe thensample of so valyaunt men, ne to doo that they had don: they becam his men, and dyde hym hommage, & swore to hym. Themperoure receyued them in his grace, & gaf to them so grete yeftes that they were abasshed alle, ffor the yeftes were so ryche and so dyuerse, that they neuer to fore had seen none such. And after toke theyr leue of themperour & passed the braas of seynt George, & cam with grete haste to Nycene, where as the hooste of cristiente abode for them. The ioye was grete whan they were comen, whyche were the laste. They lodged theym in the places that were kept for them.

How themperour sente for to destroye oure cristen men one his seruaunt, faynyng to be a trewe conduyteur and guyde, capitulo lj

ATYNS was a Greke, and wel acqueynted wyth themperour, the moost fals, vntrewe man that euer was. And so he wel semed, ffor he had his nosethrellys remuled and tourned. This felawe, by the commandement of his lorde, wente with oure men, and sayd that he wold conduyte them, ffor he knewe wel alle the contre and the paases by whiche they wold passe and goo. But themperour dyde alle this for euyl, ffor he trusted in the falsenesse of thys false Greek, whiche counseylled them allewey to theyr dammage, and was alway as the serpent emonge the elis. And themperour had charged hym for to late hym wyte euery day how the hoost behaued them, & of theyr purpose, and therupon he wold send to hym his wylle and entente. At this siege oure peple first assembled to gydre, & the capyteyns and barons spak of theyr comune werkes and counseyls, ffor to fore they had neuer ben to gydre, ne seen eche other. There was knowen certaynly that they had by nombre & by extymacion to fore Nycene, whan they were alle assembled, sixe C thousand men a fote, and of knyghtes and men of armes on horsbak, an hundred thousand or moo. They alle had moche grete wylle for to employe them wel in this

warre. And desyred moche at this fyrst begynnyng of theyr warre to enterprise so hyely and doo so wel, that alle other peple shold doubte them.

Of the situacion of Nycene, and how our peple approched therto, merueyllyng of the place & of the strengthe, capitulo lij

Of the cyte of Nycene, knowe ye that it had be vnder tharchebysshop, & it was a place of honour, by cause the fyrst of the iiij grete counseylles had be sette there; ffor in the tyme of seynt Syluestre the pope, ther was a patryarke of Constantynoble, named Alexandre, and emperour Constantin, ther was a mescreaunt named Arrius, which mesprised certeyn poyntes of the fayth, and many men folowed hym. Therfor assembled in the cyte of Nycene iij C xviij prelates, and there was disputed ayenst this popelican. And by wytnes of scripture, and by thaccord of holy men that were there, Arryus was condempned & his myscreaunce. Syth after, in the tyme of an another Constantyn emperour, whiche was sone vnto Ayerne, assembled another counseyl in the same place, whiche was the vij. Thenne was Adryan pope of Rome, and Tareste was patriarke of Constantinople. There were dampned som mysbyleuyd peple, that said that alle the ymages that were made in holy chirche were ayenst the fayth, and they were false cristen men and vntrewe that suffred them. This cyte of Nycene stondeth in a playn, but the montaynes ben

nyghe, and it lacked not moche, but they be round aboute it hool. The countrey is moche fayr and plentyous, the grete forestes ben by a ryuer nyghe the cyte, toward the weste, moche longe and brode. By that ryuer the shyppes brynge vytaylle & other marchandyse in to the cyte; whan it is a grete wynde, the grete wawes smyte sore on the walles. On that other part of the toun ben grete dyches, brode and depe, & ful of water of a lake & other ffontaynes. The walles aboute be stronge, hye, thycke, & fulle of grete tourettys. The peple within the toun were fiers and hardy, and wel aduysed of armes, and grete plente there were. Whan oure men approched it, they merueylled moche of the strengthe of the toun.

How the puyssaunt Turke Solyman, with a grete hoost, aduysed tyme & houre to assayle & smyte on our peple, for to reyse the siege, capitulo liij.

SOLYMAN, of whom I haue spoken to fore, whiche was a moche puyssaunt Turke, had the seygnorye of this cyte, and of alle the countre aboute. He was moche wise, hardy & manly of his body. fro the tyme that he herde of the comynge of our peple, he was garnysshed of his frendes and soldyours for to defende his cyte and his londe. An vncle of his, named Belphet, moche puyssaunt and ryche, had late conquerd alle the londe that is fro the braas of seynt George vnto Surry, whiche is xxx iourneyes longe. In that tyme Romanus Diogenes was em-

perour, whiche was to fore Alexes, that was deposed. This Belphet, soudan of Perse, had gyuen the gretter part of the londe to Solyman his neuew, in suche wyse that he had alle the londe fro the cyte of Tarce, that is in Cylyce, vnto the braas of seynt George. Thus this Solyman had his baylles with in sight of the town of Constantinoble, whyche resseyuyd his passages & custommes of the marchans of the toune and of other. This Solyman was withdrawen to the montaynes with as moche peple as he myght haue, a x myle fro the hoost, and dyde lye in a wayte and espye how he myght fynde the maner to reyse the siege, yf he had mocht.

How Solyman, beyng in the montaynes, sente his messagers to them of the toun, and of the comfort that he gaf to them, capitulo liiij

CURE peple cam to fore the toun, and without acorde & without ony ordenaunce began tassaylle, in suche wyse that they within myght not yssue, ne they without entre. But the grete lake that touched the towne destroubled moche, ffor they myghte, maulgre the hooste, goo and come by the see as ofte as they wolde. Oure peple had none shippes, ne myght not deffende the lake: certaynly they had besyeged it wel by londe. Solyman, that sawe this cyte thus enuyronned with peple, wherof he was wroth and angry, & doubted moche that they of the toun shold be abasshed of the grete multytude, ther for hee sente two of his preuy messagers, and commaund-

ed them in his name that they shold entre in to the toun, and saye thyse wordes: I holde you so valyaunt men, and of suche prouesse, that I byleue certaynly that ye preyse and sette lytil by this peple, that ben comen fro so fer contreyes, where the sonne goth doun, and they be wery, euyl ordeyned & garnysshed, & haue none horses that may endure trauayll. We ben fressh, and our horses rested in our contre, wherof it is no doubte we be better than they an C tymes. And that ye maye wel knowe, ffor it is not longe syth that we disconfyted in one day moo than l M. Therfor conforte you & mayntene you as noble men, ffor to morn, to fore the houre of none, ye shal be without faylle delyuerd of them alle. But be ye wel aduertysed and redy, that whan we smyte in the hoost, ye opene youre yates and yssue vpon them in suche wyse that ye thenne be parteyners of the vyctorye, of thonour, and of the prouffyt.

How the messagers of Solyman were taken by our men, & by them was knowen the couyne of the sayd Solyman, capitulo lv

THE messagers of Solyman cam upon the lake, and arryued a lytil ferre fro the toun, & after began tespye & see how they myght entre in to the cyte. Oure peple apperceyued them & ran on them, that one of them was slayn atte takynge, that other was brought a lyue to fore the barons. They made hym to be drawen & payned to saye the trouthe: he confessyd and

sayde that Solyman had sente them in to the cyte ffor to garnysshe them & make them redy, ffor theyr lord on the morn shold come and smyte sodanly in the hoost ❧ The barons byleuyd hym wel, & commaunded hym to be kept, and toke counseyl emong them how they shold doo. Therle of Tholouse & the bisshop of Puy were not yet come vnto the hoost; the barons sente for them hastely for this thynge. They cam & rode alle the nyght, in suche wyse that they cam in to the hoost to fore the sonne rysyng. The baners were displayed, & the trompes sowned. Ther was moche peple, and vnneth myght they be lodged in the places that were kept for them. Thenne Solyman at the hour of tierce, lyke as he sayd that was taken, cam doun from the montayne in to the playn. Thenne our peple that were wel aduertysed armed them, and dyde do sowne the trompettes. Euery man drewe hym in to his bataylle as it was ordeyned, and moche quyckely were alle sette in ordenaunce.

How a grete bataylle of Solyman cam smyte vpon our peple, and of thende of the scarmuche, capitulo lvi.

Of the hooste of Solyman departed a bataylle fro the other, wherin were x M men on horsbak, and drew them toward the gate right toward the south. Ther was lodged therle of Tholouse, and this yate was delyuerd hym to kepe. But Solyman that the day to fore had espyed that waye and had seen no man

there lodged, and wende that no man had ben there, ffor he knewe nothynge of the comynge of therle ne his companye, this bataylle smote in emonge the peuple that were comen. They receuyed them moche fiersly with glayues & swerdes, & sore adommaged them, and made them to resorte agayn bakward. Solyman that ensiewed made them to retourne with hym, & assembled to the peple of the erle of flaunders. The duc Godefroye, Buymont, and therle of Thoulouse, aduysed & sawe that ther were so many of the Turkes, that the erle of flaunders myght not suffre alle, & adressyd theyre bataylle to that parte, and smote in emonge them. The medle was moche harde & aspre, and many Turkes were slayn. Ther was so moche don & so wel, that Guy de Gerlande, seneshal of the kynge of fraunce, Guy du Puysette, Rogier de Barneuylle, thyse bare aweye the prys to fore alle other. But this bataylle endured wel an houre al hoole.

IN thende the Turkes myght suffre no more our peple, but were discomfyted & fledde away moche fowly. Our peple folowed them not ferre, ffor the montaynes & the wodes were ouer nere in which they fledde, but were of Turkes slayn iiij thousand, & som ther were a-lyue taken ❧ Oure peple had moche grete ioye of this vyctorye, and cam ageyn to theyr siege, & besieged the toun as wel as they myghte. for to angre & discourage them within the toun, whiche awayted after socoure, they made to be caste with engynes to them within the toun, grete plente of heedes of the Turkes that had

ben slayn in the bataylle. The prisonners a-lyue & a thousand heedes of the Turkes they sente to themperour. He coude them grete thanke and had therof moche ioye, and sente to them agayne newe yeftes of iewellys, of clothes of sylk and other thynges right largely. And commaunded to the marchauntes that they shold lede vytaylle ynowe vnto the hooste, and other thynges necessarye.

How oure barons were lodged in the sayd siege, of their mayntene, and how euery daye they enforced them tassaylle the toun, capitulo lvij

ADOCHE thought our barons how this cyte myght be assieged on alle partyes, ffor other wyse them semed they myghte not gete it. By comyn counseyl they lodged them alle: they sette ayenst the sonne rysyng the duc & his two bretheren, toward the north were lodged Buymont & Tancre and the other barons that were in theyr companye. The duc of Normandye and the erle of flaunders lodged by them. To ward the south, the erle of Tholouse, Hue le Mayne, the bisshop of Puy, therle of Chartres, & other barons many, with alle their peple, were so lodged that alle the cyte was enclosed sauf the lake whiche was in the weste. And after sente they hastely in to the forest, and made to come grete plente of tymbre for to make engyns. Alle the carpenters of the hoost & sawyers cam forth, of whom was grete nombre: in a lytill whyle reysed they engynes & slynges, & made in therthe wayes & caues couerd for to fylle the dyches

& to myne the walles. Ther was grete caste of grete stones at the walls and tourettes, so that in many places the walles were clefte & broken in many partes, ffor to do thyse thynges, they were wel vij wekes. There were in this while many assaultes & fyghtes oft to fore the yates.

ON a day the barons acorded that the toune sholde be assaylled; but thys assault endamaged lytil the toune ne them within; but ther were loste two valyaunt men. That one was named Bawdwyn Chauderon, a ryche man & a good knyght of Berry. That other was of flaunders named Bawdwyn of Gaunt, noble and hardy. Thyse two wente so ferre to fore that daye, that the one was slayn with a stroke of a stone, and that other with an arowe. An other day the barons were accorded to make agayn the assault, and was slayn with an arowe, Guyllem erle of forest, and Galles de Lylle; thyse two were hye noble men, & assaylled moche that day. In this tyme deyde of sekenes in the hoost Guy de Possesse, a moche good knyght. The hooste were sorouful of the deth of thyse noble men, but euery man had a ferm hope that our lord wold gwerdone them perpetually in heuen ffor the good seruyse that they deyde in. They were honourably buryed. And after entended thoost unto theyr werke.

How our barons made theyr castellys of tree & approuched the toun, and how they within the toun brake one of them & slewe them with inne, capitulo lviij

ON a day the capytaynes of the hooste were acorded that the castellys that they had made shold be drawen forth and aproche the walles, ffor eche of the greet men had commaunded to make an engyne hastely in hys parte. The erle Herman of Duchelond and Henry d'Asque, that were good knyghtes & enterprisers, had deuysed a thyng of a grete tronke of an oke, and had sette theron xx knyghtes alle couerd aboue, and vnder they had men ynough for to myne the walle. They approuched the castel that it ioyned to the walle. The knyghtes aboue began to deffende them, and they vnder persed the walle. The Turkes within had dressed the greatest part of theyr engyns to this castel, and many strokes had smeton so longe that wyth the strok of a grete stone they brake hit, and fylle alle doun to gydre in such wyse that neuer one escaped aboue ne vnder, but alle were deed. There was grete sorowe in the hoost, & moche more shold be, ne had not be the grete comforte that they had in our lord. They lefte not herfore, but euery man payned hym more & more to greue them with inne, and gaf to them so many assaultes day & nyght, that they lete them haue but lytil reste. But one thyng ther was that greued our peple moche, & that was that there cam euery day in to the toune

fresshe vytaylles and newe men, armours and artyllery, by the lake, and they coude not defende it, wherof they were moche marryd.

Of the counseyl that our men take for tassiege the toun by watre for to constreyne them not for to entre ne yssue, capitulo lix

THEROf wold our barons haue counseyl how they myght distrouble this comyng by water. They assembled and acorded that they would sende of theyr knyghtes grete plente, wyse men, and men a fote, and take alle the shippes at the see syde that they coude fynde, and set them vpon charyottes of the hoost & brynge suche as they myght brynge hoole, and the other they shold part in two pyeces or three, and also they wold sende to themperour and praye hym that he wold delyuer to them shippes. They that had charge of this werke cam to the see without taryeng and fonde shippes grete plente, suche as they had nede of, and by the commaundement of themperour, whiche graunted gladly, drewe out of the water ynowgh. Thenne coupled they to gydre four cartes or fyue, after that the shyppes were, and sette them theron by force of peple al hole, and with many men drewe them forth with cordes and with trayse of the cartes in one nyght vij long myle or more. Thise shippes were taken of and launched in to the lake moche hastely, ffor many hondes make light werke, and the peple wente therto with a good wylle. They had emonge them many maronners that

coude wel shippecrafte, and they were sette therin. Moche peple offerd them selfe to entre alle armed; they toke as many as neded, & garnysshed wel thyse shippes; somme shippe had in an honderd, & other l, or xxx, or xx, after theyr gretenes. In suche wyse that the waye that they had in the lake, oure men hadde taken from them. Whan they of the hooste sawe that this waye of the lake was taken from them of the toun they had grete ioye, and hoped that the siege shold not endure. The Turkes of the toun when they apperceuyed that oure men had don so grete a werke and so stronge, they fyll in despayre and were abasshed and merueylled of the vygour of our peple that had don this in so short tyme, and thenne were enclosed on alle sydes, & had loste the waye for theyr shippes.

How after the cyte was asseyged by water and by londe oure men assaylled it, and of a shotte that duc Godefroye dyde, capitulo lx.

WHAN the barons sawe that theyr shippes were in the lake in suche wyse that no man myght greue them, anon they dyde do crye that alle men shold arme them and come to thassault, and it was acorded that eche of the barons shold assaylle in that parte where he was lodged; they admonested & enforced theyr peple to doo wel. Thassault was more than euer it had be. There somme threwe out of thengyns grete nombre of stones. Euery man dyde his parte: toward the south, in the partye that was delyuerd

to therle of Thoulose, there was an hye toure more grete than ony of the other; by that tour was the palays in whiche Solymans wyf was. Therle had sette alle his entent for to breke this tour longe tyme, ffor he had doo throwen therat grete stones, & had not broken one stone of the tour. And by cause he wold not for shame so leue it without takyng of it, and ordeyned gretter stones alle newe, which began to breke the creuaches of the same tour, & with the strokes of the stones moche powdre cam out of the clyftes. The peple of the hoost apperceyued it, and sawe that the toure began to falle, they passed the dyche & brought engyns vnto the walles. Ther began they with grete exploit to myne the walle and to perse it: they within caste grete stones upon the engyns, & with shotte of handbowes and arbalestres they hurted many of them that they sawe discouerd, and by cause they sawe that the closyng of the toure began to faylle, they walled it within forth with stones & chalk, and made a right strong wall good and thycke. Our men that were atte tour had made an hole in the halle, that two men myght wel entre attones frely.

ON the walle in the parte where duc Godeffroye assaylled, ther was a Turke stronge, grete & hardy, which dyde grete dommage to oure men, & hurte many with a stronge bowe turquoys that he had, and with a lytil of oure langage that he coude cessed not to saye euyl and discourage them that assaylled & called them cowardes. Hit happed that duc Godeffroye sawe it

and auysed hym many tymes & was merueyllously displesyd with hym, and thought how he myght chevysshe to be at his ease. He toke in his hand a arbaleste good and myghty, and held it bent til the Turk cam agayn & abandouned hym. The duc toke his syght and marke and shotte at hym, and smote hym right thurgh the bely, that he fyl doun to the ground fro the walle. The crye and the showtyng began grete in the hooste and the ioye. The duc had grete honour and many good prayers therfore. The other Sarasyns that were on that other parte of this deffence were moche abasshed & ferd, that they deffended them the more cowardly.

THE other that were in the other partyes of the toun caste fro the tours stones vpon our peple that were atte assault, & hurte many with castyng, shotyng, & throwyng vpon oure engyns pytche, oyle and grece alle boyllyng, and threwe also brondes and other thynges brennyng moche thycke, in suche wyse that somme they brente. They that assaylled on the partye of therle of Tholouse, at the tour that I sayd to you to fore, laboured sore for to myne the walle, but one thyng destroubled them sore, what someuer they brak on the day, they within made it again in the nyght, in suche wise that they were in wylle to leue it, and wrought more slowly than they dyde byfore. Wherfore a moche valyaunt knyght of the hooste of the Normans cam right theder and admonested the assaylers for to goo forth. He passed the dyche tofore with his helm laced, the shelde vpon his heed,

& brak vygorously the walle where as the Turkes had made agayn. But ther was none that folowed hym, and they of the wallys threwe so grete stones on him & so thycke that they slewe hym in the presence of the other that were by, & after with hookes and crochettes they drewe the bodye vp to them on the walle, and there disarmed hym, and threwe the bodye to our peple. Thenne our men that were there toke the body, and buryed it worshipfully. He was moche bewaylled in thoost of cristen men.

How after many assaultes, oure men being in counseyl, a Lombard cam to them, whiche offred to make an engyne that shold destroye the toun, capitulo lxj

THENNE sawe the barons that they loste moche peple with thassault, and dyde but litil harme with theyr engyns vnto the toun and theyr enemyes, & assembled for to make counseyl how they myght doo. There cam a man to them, a Lombard, which had seen the grete hurte and losse of our peple, & sayd to the barons that he was a good maister to make engyns, yf he myght haue stuff and maters therto propice and necessary, which with goddes helpe shold in short tyme ouerthrowe the tour where to they had don so moche payne, and wold make large waye for to entre in to the toun who so wolde. They that herde hym promysed hym that he shold haue alle that shold be nedeful, & yet a good reward and

ryche for his laboure. This maister toke werkmen and made them to werke as he commaunded, that in short tyme he had made his engyn, whiche was merueillously strong & grete, and ioyned it to the walle alle ful of men of armes and footemen. They that were on the walles vpon the tour threwe with grete myght grete stones and fyre brennyng moche thycke, but thengyne was so stronge and rude, that the strokes dyde it no harme, ne the fyer myght not fastne on it.

WHAN they of the toune apperceyued that they coude not noye this engyn, they were sore a/ferde, and discouraged merueyllously, and alle in despayre. Our men traueylled to theyr power to take oute the grete stones atte fote of the walle of the toure. And vndersetted it with strong stanchons & grete. Whan they had so moche myned that them semed that it was ynowgh, they toke theyr habyllemens and sette them ferre fro the walle, & thenne put fyer on alle sydes vnder the toure, & wythdrewe them to their habyllemens and to thengynes alle in saufte, whiche were a grete way of. About mydnyght the fyre had soo brente and wrought that this tour fylle doun to therthe with so grete a noyse and tempeste that it semed that alle therthe trembled, and there was none but he had grete horrour and feer in his herte. Oure peple made hastely do sowne the trumpettes, and crye to armes for to come dilygently to thassault.

How after that this engyn had so wel wrought, the wyf of Solyman, with two of her childeren, wente out of the toun and were taken by our men, capitulo lxij

THE wyf of Solyman, that longe had be in mesease of drede, had so grete feere that almost she deyde for drede, and sayde she myght no lenger see it ne suffre, and made sodanly make redy a vessel, and put it on the lake for tescape by nyght. But oure peple that were in the shippes for to kepe the water fro theyr enemyes cam ayenste her, and toke the lady with her two sones that she had with her thenne in her companye. They presented them in the mornyng to fore the barons. They made them to be kept right surely with the other prisoners that they had. The Turkes in the toun were thenne in grete meschief, as wel for thentre that was so grete & brode, as for their lady that they had loste; thenne they axed trewes for to speke to the barons to gyue ouer the toun & them self in to theyr handes. Latins, the Greek of whom I haue spoken to fore, whiche was moche double & malycious, spak to the noble men that had the gouernaunce of the toun in counseyl, and shewd to them that thyse pylgryms were straungers of ferre countrees and euyl and cruel men, and shold doo to them alle the harme they myght, and destroye the peple & the londe, yf they yelded the cyte to them. But and yf they wold ad-

uowe and take themperour to theyr lord, and yelde them to hym theyr lyues sauf, and theyr goodes in to his hande, he shold kepe them well & saufly, and shold doo to them grete good, ffor he was theyr neyghbour. So moche sayd he and dyde, that they of the toun toke theyr counseyl and cam to the barons, and sayd to them that they wolde put in the handes of themperour theyr lyues sauf, theyr bodyes, the cyte, and theyr godes. This displesyd not moche to the barons, ffor theyr entencion was for to passe forther, & hoped that themperour wolde departe the gayn, proye and goodes of the toun, generally in thoost. Neuertheles, to fore that they wolde graunte them this thynge, they sayde that they shold delyuer entierly, and doo come in to the hoost alle the prisonners of Pieter Theremyte that were in the castel of Civintot, and in lyke wyse alle the other that they had taken in the siege, and them to fore that Solyman helde. And this don, they acorded that they shold yeld them to themperour. Thenne the barons, prynces and knyghtes, & also the comyn peple, sente by one acorde messagers to themperour for to sygnefye hym how they of the cyte had yelded them to hym. Therfore they sente to hym, that he shold send of his hye and noble men with grete nombre of peple for to resseyue the toun, and the persones of whom they had many, ffor they alle acorded that the honour shold be his, and that the toun shold come in his demayne, and the prisonners at his wylle. They that had enterprised theyr vowe for taccomplysshe, had purposed for to departe fro this place, & to goo forth vnto the lande of Surye.

How themperour sente grete barons for to receyue the sayd toun after that our peple had acerteyned hym that they wolde yelde it, capitulo lviij

GRETE ioye had themperour of thyse tidynges. He taryed not, but sente of his moost priue men, as wel barons as knyghtes, with grete quantite of men of armes, that resseyued the cyte in hys name, and garnysshed it of alle thynge that was nedeful, and dyde repayre the walles and alle that was broken of the torettes. Alle that euer they founde in the toune of armures, of rychesses, and of vytaylles they seased for themperour, and sente the prisonners in to Constantinoble. Themperour sente to euerych of the barons special lettres, presented to them grete yeftes, and thanketh them moche of thonour that they had don to hym, & of this that they so wel kepte theyr promesse, ffor that toun had don grete gryef and anoyaunce to thempyre. The mene peple that moch had trauaylled in the siege & had holpen with grete courage, compleyned sore, ffor they had hoped that alle the hauoyr and goodes of the toun shold haue ben departed emonge them, but themperours men bare it alle away, and they that trauaylled for it were not rewardid. The worde that was moche grete cam vnto the barons, and they sayd that they had grete wronge, ffor the couenauntes made bytwene themperour and them were suche, that yf they gate in theyr waye ony cytees that had ben to fore themperours, they shold

delyuere the cyte and the londe to themperour, but the proyes and gayne shold be departed in thoost. Ayenst thyse couenauntes dyde themperour, but it was not tyme thenne ne place to make argument ne debate ayenst the Grekes, therfor the noble men made the comyn peple to tarye, to thende that they shold not enpesshe this pylgremage. Thus was suffred that the wyf of Soliman & his ij sones and grete plente of prisoners were ledde in saefte vnto themperour, which made moche grete feste to the lady and her childeren, and as longe as they were in the toun he helde them moche honorably. Afte in short tyme he sente them agayn to Solyman, alle quyte delyuerd, without demandyng of ony raunson. This dyde he to thende to haue the loue and grace of the Turkes, in suche wyse that ther was bytwene them a counseyl and acorde to greue our peple, and also for another rayson, that is to wete yf they were in such poynt of another cyte or place, that the cristiens constreyned so by force, that they shold not be aferd to yelde them frely in the hande of themperour. Thus was taken the cyte of Nycene, the yere of thyncarnacion of our lord a M lxxxxvij, the xx day of the moneth of Iuyn.

How our hoost departed on theyr iourney, and how som departed fro theyr felawship, and how Solyman determyned tassayle them, capitulo lxiiij

THE hoost of the pylgryms departed by the commandement of the barons, the iij daye to fore the entree of Iuylle, fro the place where they had holden syege. They wente two dayes to gydre moche peasybly, & after lodged them by a brygge for the ease of the water. On the morn, after theyr customme atte spryngyng of the day, they passed the brygge. Duryng the derknesse of the nyght, ffor it was not wel day, or peraventure, they departed wetyngly the one fro the other, ffor Buymont, the duc of Normandye, therle Steuen of Chartres, Tancre and therle of Seynt Pol torned away on the lyft syde, & descended in to a valeye named Gurgom, and lodged them there about none by a ryuer, where as was grete plente of water. There rested they al that nyght in peas, but, neuertheles, they made theyr hooste chaunge theyr watche diligently. Alle the other torned on the right honde alle the day, and went thurgh a fayre countre, and lodged them in fayre grete medowes vpon the water syde, and that one hoost was fro that other more than two myle.

SOLIMAN had his herte swollen, and was felly an angred that he had thus loste his wyf with his children and his noble cyte. He commaunded to folowe oure peple on the lyfte syde, & dyde grete peyne to see how he myght

greue them, he had with hym a moche grete nombre of men of armes on horsbak. His espyes were with the pylgryms, whiche toke heede of alle theyr couyne; they dyde hym to wete that oure hoost was deuyded in two parties, and that the lasse partye was torned toward the lyfte side ner to hym than that other parte. He was moche glad and ioieful whan he herde thyse tydnges, he sawe that he was wel in poynt for to venge hym, and had his men al redy & ordeyned his bataylle to poynt at the day sette, departed for to befyghte oure men.

THUS as the spryngynge of the day began to clere, the men that made the watche this nyght that were withdrawen a lytil fro thoost, apperceyued them, and cryed to armes, and blewe hornes and trompettes moche affrayedly. The hoost awook sodenly, and our men armed them right hastely, and ordeyned theyr bataylles as they had deuysed. The wymmen, sekemen and children were ledd a part besyde a water al ful of reed, by whiche men myght not come to them, to fore were they closed with cartes and charyottes, wherof they had grete plente. And after sente messagers vnto the grete hooste, ffrom whiche they were folyly departed, for to praye them that they dylygently wolde come socoure them, ffor they were in moche grete paryll. Whan theyr bataylles were thus renged, euen right the first day of Iuyll at the houre of pryme, be ye certayn that Solyman, with a grete nombre of men of armes, estemed at two honderd thousand wel armed to poynt and horsed,

arryued. Ther was not one of them but he was on horsbak. Oure peple were but fewe, and the moost part of them on foote, & it was no merueylle though they doubted the comyng of theyr enemyes.

Of the bataylle that Solyman had ayenst som of our peple that were departed fro theyr felawship folyly, capitulo lxv

THAN the hooste of the Turkes smote in on our men, the noyse was moche grete of busynes, of trompes, of men, & of horses, that none myght be herd, and was grete hydour to here the fyrst comyng on of the Turkes. They shotte so thycke vppon our peple that there was neuer rayn ne hayl so like, in so moch that ther were many hurte of our peple. Whan the firste route had made theyr shotte, the second route cam after, where moo archyers were than to fore, and began shote moche more thycke than may be recounted. Our knyghtes sawe that they loste theyr horses and them self by the shotte, and smote in to the Turkes vygorously, but the multitude of the Turkes were so grete, that our men had grete dammage, which were but fewe. They that had theyr sheldes & targes they kept them som what, but they that were without armour muste flee. or ellys they had be slayn emong the horses, and many were slayn & hurte. There were slayn of oure peple, as wel of footemen as of horsemen, two thousand. Ther was slayn a moche valyaunt yong man, noble and hardy, whiche had don wel alle that day,

Guyllam, sone to the marquys, brother of Tancre, he was smoton with an arowe and dyde in the place. And another valyant man in like wise named Robert of Paris, he deyde by his prowesse. Tancre that was hardy made merueylles of armes, and abandouned hym self, as he that sette not by his lyf. Buymont sawe hym, and he brake alle the prees, and cam there as he was, and toke hym by the brydle and brought hym bak. The Turkes sawe oure men moche hurte and trauaylled, and toke theyr bowes on the lyfte arme, and after ran on them with e swerdes & maces in suche wyse that they ouerthrewe them & put them a bak vnto theyr caryage. There they helde them and hydde them by the reed, and deffended them vygorously, and suffred the grete plente of Turkes discharge vpon them one route after another.

Of the dilygence that duc Godeffroy made whan he was aduertised herof, & how Solyman was discomfyt and his bagage taken, capitulo lxvj

OUR barons, Godeffroy the noble duc, and the other prynces herde thyse tydynges how Buymont and his companye were at suche meschyef, hasted them sore. Ther cam to gydre the duc and his ij bretheren, Bawdwyn and Eustace, the erle Raymont, Hue le Mayne, & many other barons ynowgh. The peple a foote, and they that were euyl horsed, they lefte for to kepe the lodgys: they wente forth, and were wel xl m, alle armed and wel horsed. Whan

they approched the place where the batayll was, and sawe them so put a back, and herde thaffraye of trompes and hors, the peple of Buymont espyed them, anon ther herte cam agayn and were entierly refresshyd, and smote in to their enemyes as they that nothynge doubted, and began to doo well. The good bisshop of Puy was there, & comforted ofte the barons and the knyghtes for tauenge the blood of the cristen men whiche thenemyes of our fayth had there shedde. Incontinent the barons that cam smote in to the Turkes so vygorusly that it semed that euerich myght abyde the burthon of the batayle. They slewe so many, and bete doun in theyr comynge, that the other durst not abyde, but fledd away discomfyted. The nobles folowed them, and chaced them wel iiij myle, sleyng al them that they myght atteyne, and they founde many of our men prisonners that the Turkes ledde with them, whom they delyuerd.

AFTER they wente to the tentes of Solyman, and there they founde so grete plente of rychesses, of vytaylles, of sheep, of horses, and other beestes that it can not be recounted, robes, vayssel, & pauyllons of dyuerse colours and of straunge facions, in suche wyse that ther was none but he was ryche; ffor ye may well knowe that ij c M men that Solyman had, behoued grete plente of lodgys and of other estorementes. Our peple cam agayn in to oure tentes with grete ioye and honour. Ther were lost wel in that batayll of our men a foote aboute a iiij M, and of horsmen

but fewe. Of the Turkes were founden dede iij M., and there were of them many grete men. This batayll endured fro the hour of pryme vnto nyghe none, and ofte our peple had the werse; ffor, as I haue said, Solyman had ij c M men, alle on horsbak. Our peple were but l M on horsbak whan they were alle assembled the one with the other.

WHAN our lord had thus gyuen this victorye to his peple, they rested them in this fayr place where the tentes were thre dayes; theyr horses refresshed them right wel in this whyle. Of the armures & other gayne that they had conquerd vpon theyr enemyes, they arayed and apparaylled them right wel that to fore were euyl armed. Moche wel dyde they in this batayll, and grete honour had they and shal euer haue, and in especial they that here be named, Bawdwyn le Borgh, Thomas de fedre, Regnault de Beauvays, Gale de Chamont, Gaste de Bedyers, and Gerart de Cherysy. Thenne was ordeyned and acorded by the barons and cryed in thoost, that no man shold ryde fro thens forth by hym self without leue of the captayns.

How the iiij day after this victorye our peple went forth on their waye, and of the grete mesease of thoost the same day, capitulo lxvij

AFTER this, whan they had abyden there thre dayes, the fourth daye folowyng by tymes to fore day, they dyde doo sowne theyr trompetes, and wente forth on theyr waye. Syth they passed Bythyne, and entred in to the londe that was named Piside. They trauaylled so long, that at the laste they fonde a contre moche drye and infertile, without waters. The tyme was moche hoot & brennyng, as it falleth ofte in Iuyll. They had so grete thurst that they wyst not what to doo. The peple on fote specially faylled and faynted, alle for the duste, for the heete, and for thurste; ther deyed wel this same day of mysease fyue honderd men and wymmen. And knowe ye certaynly that ther happed a merueyllous thynge that day in the hoost, that we fynde nowher in none other historye, ffor the wymmen with childe that yet were not come to theyr terme, by thanguyssh of the heete and of the mesease of thurst, that they were delyuerd of theyr childeren and childed, and not only the pour wymmen, but the ryche also; this was a grete sorow, and pyte to see. The men, that ought to be more hard & stronge ayenst trauaylle, wente theyr mouthes open, and sought thayer and moysture therof, whiche they myght not haue: the heete, and also the swote de-

stroyed them. Ye shold haue seen the horses and other beestes, that myght not goo forth, in suche wyse that they muste leue them, whiche deyde in the waye, houndes for the chace and huntyng, fowles for the flyght, as ffawcons, hawkes, & sperhawkes, ye shold haue seen that day abyde and deye. And in lyke wyse the grete stedes and cursours, whiche were moost peryllous, becam alle araged and wood for thurst, and with grete payne were ledde forth.

WHAN they had ben long in this mesease our lord beheld them in pyte, & made them to adresse in to a valeye, where they fonde a rennyng water, fayr and grete; thenne ranne oure peple to the brynke or ryuage with grete haste. Many ther were that drank so moche that they deyde vpon the place; ffor som of them that had eschewed the deth, fonde it there by cause they kepte no mesure. And this fylle vnto knyghtes and other men, and beestes, whiche dranke as moche as they wolde ❧ Whan they were escaped this euyl aduenture, they cam in to a londe moch fayr and fertile, ful of woodes, of ryuers, of medowes, and of good feldes labourable. This was by Anthyoche the lasse, whiche is the chyef cyte of the londe of Pisside; and there lodged they with theyr hoost.

How somme of the grete barons of thoost, after to haue approuched Antyoche the lasse, departed for to goo vytaylle them, capitulo lxviij

ERO thens departed som of the barons of thoost & helde their waye, by cause it was a greuous thyng to fynde vytaylles to so moche peple to gydre. The fyrst was Bawdwyn, brother to the duc; with hym was Peter therle of Stadenay, Reynart therle of Toul, Bawdwyn de Borgh, & Guyllebert de Montcler, ther wer wel v C on horsbak, and ladde with them men a fote largely. The second was Tancre, & with hym Rychard du Pryncipat, Robert d'Anse, and other knyghtes grete nombre, that they were v C on horsbak, and had also many men a foote as the other had. Theyr entencion and purpose was to ride about the thoost in the contre, for to seche somme aduenture and vytaylle; and yf they had founde ony parylle of a grieuous paas, or plente of theyr enemyes, that they wold lete thoost haue knowleche therof. They wente strayte theyr waye and passed by syde ij cytees: that one was named Lychonie, & that other Eraclee. After, they torned on the right honde and passed toward the see side. The duc Godeffroy and the other prynces abode in theyr lodgys, for the plesaunt & delytable places that they had founden, by cause they wolde playe and refresshe them of the trauaylles and annoyes that they had suffred. Thenne said they that they wold goo hunte in to the forestes, whiche were nygh to them on alle sydes and were ful of wilde beestes.

ON the morn they entred in the woode, eche helde his way at his wille. The duc, as he wente a path thurgh the foreste, herde a man crye, & he drove thederward, and he sawe a poure man, that was goo for to fetche wode for to bere in to the hoost, fledde strongly cryeng to fore a grete bere. The duc ran vpon hym, and drewe his swerd for to delyuere the pour man fro the beeste. Thenne the bere adressyd hym vnto the duc, and lefte the pour man that fledde fro hym; he hurte the dukes hors so sore that he caste the duc to therthe. The duc leep a foot, and drewe oute his swerde. The beeste was nothyng aferd of hym, but made a felonnous crye, horryble and hydous, and syth ran vpon the duc, and bote hym right cruelly in the thye. After, he adressyd hym right vp, and embraced hym with his potes, or feet to fore, for to haue caste hym to grounde. The duc, thus hurt as he was, was yet moch strong, & fyl not to the erth thenne, but caught hym by the skyn about the necke with his lyfte hande, for to put away his heed from hym; & with that other hand he put his swerd in to his body, thurgh bothe the sydes vnto the crosse, and so slewe hym. After, he wente & sette hym doun on therthe right by, ffor he had so moch bledde of his wounde that he had in his thye, & was so merueyllously sore hurte that he myghte not stonde longe on his feet.

THE poure man, which he had delyuerd fro deth, ran hastely in to the hoost & tolde them this tydynge of the duc. Alle they that herde it were so effrayed that they ranne with grete haste theder, the barons, and alle the other that myght goo. They founde hym lyeng on the ground, pale & discoloured; and after toke hym in a lyttier, & bare hym in to the hoost. But neuer man was more demened, ne more sorowe made, ne noe moo pytyous cryes and lamentacions thurgh alle the lodgyses, as wel ryche as poure, & men as wymmen. Anon were sette alle the maistres and cirurgens for to dychte hym and to hele hym; there were many, ffor euerych of the prynces had of them for to awayte on them in the hoost.

Here recounteth thystorye of somme aduentures that thenne fylle in the hoost of cristen men, capitulo lxix

IN this sayson, the same tyme, it happed that another valyaunt man, named Raymont, erle of Tholouse, laye doun seke of a maladye moche greuous & perylous. Neuerthelesse, the hooste wente forth alwey. Therfor he muste be caryed forth in a lyttier. On a day it happed that he was so deteyned of his maledye that certeynly they supposed that he shold deye. They that kepte hym made the littier to be sette doun to the grounde, ffor they sawe hym

so feble that they thought certaynly that the sowle shold departe. The bisshop of Orenge, whiche was a moche holy man and a religyous, sayd the commendacion for the sowle and the seruyse, as of one deyeng, sauf syngyng masse. Alle the hoost was ouermoche discomforted by cause they supposed alle that anon and sodanly to lese thise two grete men, whiche were of moche grete counseyl and of grete ayde. They made prayers and orysons thurgh alle thoost, where as they songe masses. The ryche and the pour prayde moche humbly and with good herte, that our lord wold rendre them hool & sauf, for to socoure & counseyle them as they had nede. The barons departed in charyte largely almesse vnto the pour peple. So moche dyde they, one & the other, that oure lord, whiche is ful of pyte, herde them and gaf helthe to the two noble men in short tyme, in suche wyse that they rood al hool, and in good poynt with thooste.

THEY passed al Pissyde & after entred in to a lande named Lycaone, & cam vnto a cyte called Licone; they founde it alle voyde, & nothyng therin. They had grete meseases of vytaylle, ffor the Turkes, whiche had herde the tydynges that oure peple cam, trusted in none of theyr fortresses, but voyded them & fledde in to the forestes and montaynes, men, wymmen & childeren, horses, beestes, vytaylle, and alle other thyng they caryed with them. They suffred moche disease to passe that contre; they cam in to Eraclee, and after cam in to a cyte named Marase. There they

lodged and soiourned thre dayes, Bawdwyn, brother of the duc, that was departed fro the hoost, lefte his wyf with his two bretheren. She deyde there of sekenesse, she was an hye lady of Englond, valyaunt, wyse, and good, Gutiera was her name. She was buryed and enteered moche honorably in the same place. She was moche bewaylled in the hoost.

How Tancre that was departed fro the hoost, assieged Tarse, and toke it by certeyn couenaunt, capitulo lxx

TANCRE, whyche was a wyse man, and of grete courage, rode thurgh the londe sekyng auenture, in suche wyse that he fonde in his waye a cyte called Tarse. This londe of Scylyce is a countre of thoryent, toward the sonne gooyng doun. In this londe ben twoo grete cytees, whiche ben archebisshoprichs, that one named Tarse, of which I said to fore; therin was born seynt Poul thappostle. That other was named Anauazie. And eche of thise two cytees haue other cytees vnder them. Tarse founded one of the childeren of Noe, Ionen, whiche was sone of Iaphet, the sone of Noe. Neuertheles, Solins sayth that Perseus founded it, but it maye be wel that one founded it, and that other repayred and amended it. Tancre assieged this cyte, and constreyned them within, what by menaces and fayr wordes, that they yelded it to hym in a manere. They sette his banere vpon the hyest toure of the

toun, and he swar and affermed to kepe them from damage and hurte; ne non shold be put out of his hows, ne lese ony thyng that apperteyned to them vnto the comynge of the grete hoost, and thenne shold they yelde the toun vnto the grete prynces of thoost without ony debate. Thus was it acorded bytwene hym and them of the toun. In this toun were cristen men, Hermyns and Grekes, and in alle the londe about. But the Turke helde alle the fortresses that medled with armes, and had the seygnorye vpon this peple, and wold not suffre them of nothyng, sauf to occupye and laboure therthe, and for to marchaunte to bye and selle.

How Bawdwyn, brother of Godeffroy, sechyng his auentures, sawe Tancre & his peple to fore Tarse, and adressed hym to them, capitulo lxxj

BAWDWYN, brother of the duc, and the peple that he ledde with hym, were entred in to a countre moost barayn, where they suffred grete peyne for vytaylle. After, they cam vpon a montayne, where they myght see alle the londe of Scilice, and the cytees vnto the see. They sawe Tarse nygh them, and the pauyllons, and they supposed that they had be Turkes that had assieged the cyte. They descended doun for to knowe what peple they were, and also for tenquere the beyng of the countre about. They that were with Tancre, in thauaunt garde, sawe thyse men of armes approuche, and lete theyr lord haue knowleche. Tancre wende certaynly that they

had be Turkes, that cam for to socoure them of the toun, and made eche man to arme hym dylygently, and sette them in ordenaunce; & after yssued out ayenst them, the baners displayed. But whan they approuched that one to the other, and knewe eche other by the armes, they opened theyr helmes and embraced eche other, & made moche grete ioye, and after cam to the cyte. And thenne Bawdwyn was by Tancre right wel & honourably lodged, ffor Tancre had grete plente of vytaylles, of whiche Bawdwyn and his peple had grete nede.

Of thenuye that Bawdwyn and his peple had to see the baner of Tancre vpon the walle of the toun, and how Tancre departed, capitulo lxxxij

IN the morne whan the sonne was vp, & cleer daye, Bawdwyn and they that were with hym sawe the baner of Tancre vpon the hyest tour of the toun. And had therof moche grete enuye, & began to murmure and speke maliciously of that they had gretter power, and moo peple and better, and said that they oughte to haue the worship of this toun. It is trouthe that vnto this day there, Bawdwyn and Tancre had ben lyke two bretheren, in moche pryue acqueyntaunce and trewe loue, but Bawdwyn, by enuye of his herte, and by euyl wordes that som of his men made hym to vnderstonde, was thus of this thynge meuyd. Tancre, whiche was moche wyse, attemperat and resonable man, vnderstode thise wordes, and dyde moche payne for tapese hym.

And cam in persone to Bawdwyn, & shewde hym howe to fore that he was comen, ne that noman knewe of his comynge, were thyse couenauntes made bytwene hym and them of the toune, and his baner sette vpon the toure, and herin he vnderstode not that he myght haue ony shame ne dishonour. Bawdwyn was not content of thise wordes, & he founde somme that attysed hym in his folye; he spak grete wordes, ylle and iniuryouses, to Tancre, in suche wyse, that with lytil more they wolde haue don armed theyr men for to haue destroyed eche other.

THENNE sente Bawdwyn for them of the toun, and whan they cam he menaced them strongly, & saide that they shold throwe doun the baner of Tancre to therthe, & sette vp his on the tour: and yf they dyde not, they shold wel knowe that he wold destroye them, & alle that they had without the toun, & take the toun and caste it to therthe, maulgre alle that Tancre myght doo. They of the cyte sawe that Tancre myght not warannte ne deffende them ayenst Bawdwyn, made with hym suche couenauntes as they had made to fore with Tancre, and sette his baner where as he commaunded. Tancre saw the force that was don to hym, and was gretely desplesyd, & had grete yre in his herte. But he couerd his thought wysely, & wold not suffre the peple, that were comen in this pylgremage for to make warre ayenst thenemyes of the fayth of Ihesu Crist, shold slee eche other for thoccasion of hym. He departed fro this place, ffor he doubted that somme noyse or medle myght sourde

herof, and cam to a cyte nygh by, named Adane. There myght he not entre, ffor a noble man of Burgoyn, named Gelphes, was parted fro thoost with a grete route of men of armes as the other dyde, for to seke auentures, and he had taken this cyte by force, and had caste out the Turkes, and helde it entierly. Tancre herde that somme of our peple helde it, & sente good messagers to Gelphes, and prayd hym to opene the yates, and suffre his men that they myght goo in to the toun for to bye to them suche as they neded. This Gelphes dyde it debonayrly, and hym self gaf to them largely ffor nought, ffor he had founde the toun ful of gold and syluer, of robes, of beestes, of whete, of wyne, of oyle, and of alle good that a man had nede of.

How a lytil after Tancre cam to the cyte of Anamystre, whiche the Turkes helde it, and toke it by assault, capitulo lxxiij

TANCRE on the morn toke leue of his hooste, and toke his way with his peple, & rode so fer that he cam to a cyte named Anamystre. This was one of the beste cytees of that londe, it was fayr & moche delytable. Tancre cam theder, and knewe certeynly that the Turkes helde it; he assieged it al aboute, & fro the tyme that he cam he assaylled the toun. Thus he dyde the first, the second, and the thirde day; so many assaultes he made to them, and hurted them of the toun, that they were strongly greuyd and a-

basshed. They without toke the toun, and entred vnder the walles, and thus was the toun taken by force, and alle them that he fonde therin of hethen peple he put to deth without mercy. The toun was ful of rychesses, and alle maner of vytaylles were grete plente. Tancre departed al the gayn and the goodes of the toun to his men, as he that wel knewe how that he shold doo, and to eche man after that he was, in suche wyse that alle his men were ryche. They refresshed them moche wel, & theyr beestes, of the mesease that they had suffred in theyr waye. They soiourned there a grete whyle with moche grete deduyt.

How Bawdwyn entred in Tarse, and how iii C of our pylgryms were slayn of the Turkes to fore the same toun, capitulo lxxiiij

BAWDWYN sawe that Tancre was departed fro Tarse, & sente for them of the toun & sayde to them that they shold lete them entre in to the toun, ffor hym thought shame to lye long and abyde there ydle without doyng ony thyng, tyl the comynge of the grete hoost. They sawe & aduysed wel that they had not powerynough to resiste them, and thought yf they lete them not entre with theyr agreement that they wold entre ayenst theyr wylle and with force. Thenne they opened their gates, & wold that Bawdwyn shold haue two toures where he shold lodge, and other of thoste in the howses in the toun alle peasibly. The Turkes that had the seygnorye of

the toun helde yet the other towres in theyr puissaunce, they had in moche grete doubte and suspection Bawdwyn and his men that were lodged in the toun, & they thought that they shold haue no socours. And aboue this they had moche grete drede of the grete hoost that shortly shold arryue there, and sought emonge them the moyens and maner how they myght yssue oute of the toun, and lede with them theyr wyues and childeren with theyr pryncipal bagues and jewellys.

IT happed that this same nyght thre honderd men afote that were departed fro Buymont for to folowe Tancre arryued alle to fore this cyte of Tarse, where they thought to fynde hym. Whan Bawdwyn knewe what peple they were & that they wente in thayde of Tancre, he wold not suffre them to entre in to the toun. They were wery and trauaylled and prayde hym moche swetly, and cryed hym mercy many tymes, that for the loue of god he wold doo so moche that they myght this nyght be lodged in the toun, ffor they wold no thyng but good. Herof the foteman of his companye prayde hym in lyke wise, but he wold in nowyse here them. Neuertheles by cause they without had mesease, the mene peple in the toun aualed doun with cordes, breed ynough, & wyn in barellys, and other vytaylles, with whiche they myght wel passe this nyght.

WHAN our peple were a slepe in the toun, and they without began theyr first sleep, it happed that the Turkes that were within the toures opened the yates of whiche they had the keyes secretely withoute noyse, and ledde out theyr wyues, theyr children, and alle their thyngs. And all the hethen men of the toun thought they were not sure with theyr ghestes, and yssued out of alle the toun. Whan theyr wyues & children were withdrawen a lytil fro the toun, they wolde leve tokenes cruell and ylle of theyr departyng; they cam vnto the thre hondred pylgrims that laye withoute gate and slepte strongly as they that doubted of nothyng, & put them alle to deth and slewe them; yf ony of them escaped he was happy.

How the peple of Bawdwyn knewe the departyng of the Turkes, and of the slaughter of the cristen men, capitulo lxxv

ON the morne erly when oure men awoke in the toun they sawe the toures, where the Turkes had be lodged, open & the howses voide. They knewe wel that they were fledde; they serched the walles & yates for to enquyre how they were goon. They wente so ferre that they fonde this grete occision and slaughter at the gate. Thenne began a sorow and a moche grete crye in the toun; alle men put the blame and culpe on Bawdwyn & hys knyghtes, ffor they wold auenge the deth of theyr bretheren, whom the Sarasyns

had so shamely & vylaynously slayn, by cause that the knyghtes of Bawdwyn and also he hym self wold not suffre them to come in to the toun. And in dede the men of foote sayd this was don by grete oultrage and grete falshede, and yf they had not lyghtly withdrawen them in to the toures, they had smyten them alle to deth. The knyghtes helde them alle stylle tyl that the footemen were cooled, and after sente messagers whiche spak to them and requyred them to forbere so long tyl that Bawdwyn had spoken to them. They were content to here Bawdwyn speke; Bawdwyn excused hym to fore alle, & swar & affermed that for none other thynge the entre was deffended them, but for that he had sworn to them of the toun, that by hym shold none entre tyl the grete hooste cam. By thyse wordes and by cause other entermeted to make the peas and spoken debonayrly to the mene peple, was Bawdwyn acorded to the foote men and his knyghtes also.

IN this toun they soiourned & abode a certayn whyle, vntyl a mornynge they sawe in the see nyghe them a shippe aboute iij myle fro them; they yssued oute of the toun & descended to the see. They that were in the ship approched to them in suche wyse that they spak to gydre. They of the ship sayde that they were cristen men; they demaunded of what contre, and they answerd of Flaundres, of Holande, & of Fryselande. And trouth it was they had be escumours of the see and robbers the space of viij yere. Now they repented them, & by penaunce cam in pylgre-

mage to Iherusalem. They desyred them to come a londe, and they cam and made to gydre grete ioye. They had a maister ouer them named Guynemer, and was born of Boloyne vpon the see in the londe of erle Eustace, fader of the said duc Godeffroy. Whan he herde that Bawdwyn the sone of his lord was there, he lefte his ship & said he wold goo with hym to Iherusalem. He was moche ryche of this euyl gayne, and had many men with hym that he ladde in his ship. Thenne Bawdwyn lefte .v C men of armes for to kepe the toun wel in poynt, and after he toke his way for to seke somme auentures as he dyde to fore.

DE helde the ryght way til he cam to the cyte of Anamyster, whiche Tancre had goten by force of armes vpon the Turkes, as I haue sayd you to fore. Bawdwyn thought wel that he wold not lete hym entre in to the cyte, and therfor he lodged hym in the gardyns about. Tancre knewe that Bawdwyn whiche loued him not was so nygh hym, and he had not forgoten the wronge and the oultrage that Bawdwyn had don to hym. Thenne he dyde do arme his men, and sayde that thenne was tyme for to venge hym, ffor he was nygh his retrayt, and Bawdwyn was fer fro his ¶ They sente archiers to fore in grete nombre for to hurte and slee theyr horses, whiche they had sente in to the pastures. Tancre had with hym fyue honderd men of armes in good poynt and wel horsed, and smote in sodanly in to the peple of Bawdwyn whiche were not aduysed of them. They slewe many and

moo they hurted; the men of Bawdwyn ran hastely to arme them and cam and fought with them that ran by the tentes. There began a bataylle bytwene them moche grete & fiers, but it endured not longe, ffor Tancre had not so grete plente of peple that myght endure ayenst the men of Bawdwyn, therfor they wold withdrawe them in to theyr toun, but theyr enemyes enchassed them strongly so moche that they muste flee. There was a brygge ouer a water bytwene the hooste and the cyte; the peple of Tancre entred so thyck that many were lost and slayn vpon the brygge and drowned in the water. Whan they were put in to the toune agayn they were moche angry in their herte, & wold take more peple & retorne agayn; but the nyght cam that destroubled it.

IN this scarmuche was taken Rychard le Pryncipat, cosyn germayn of Tancre, & Robert d'Anse, both two were noble men, by their counseyl & atysement Tancre had ronne vpon Bawdwyn. Of that other syde was taken a moche noble man, named Gylbert de Mountcler. They were moche angry on that one syde and on that other for them that they had loste, ffor they doubted that they had ben slayn or drowned. Whan it cam on the morn & theyr hertes a lytil aswaged, they sente messagers eche to other, and knewe certaynly that thyse men that were taken lyued, of whom they dredde that had ben deed, & good men wente bytwene and medled for to speke of pees, in suche wyse that they cam agayn to entier concord-

aunce and parfyght loue by the grace of the holy ghoost that adressyd theyr hertes. They amended theyr trespaas eche to other, and kyssed to gydre as frendes in good fayth.

How the sayd Bawdwyn retorned to the grete hooste, and how Tancre mayntenyd hym moche wel in conqueryng contrees, capitulo lxxvi

BAWDWYN had counseyl whan he was come to Maraze, as I have recompted, that he shold goo no ferther forth, but retorned in to thoost of the barons, by cause he herd saye how the duc his brother had be hurte peryllously, & wold see and knowe of his estate & how he ferde. Theyr counseyl was that Tancre shold goo forth. Bawdwyn lefte with hym Guynemers, and them that were in his companye comen fro the shippe. They passed all Sylyce and bete doun alle the fortresses of the hethen men that they myght fynde, they brente the townes, and slewe theyr enemyes. And after cam vnto a cyte called Alexandrye the lasse, that they toke by force, and conquerd al the contre about. The Hermyns and Turkes that dwellyd in the montaynes of this contre, herde tydynges that Tancre and his men were so valyaunt and so myghty that nothyng myght holde ayenst them, and sore dredde that lyke as he conquerd the playne, he wold come vpon them in the montaynes, and destroye the londe entierly and the peple. For tappease his courage they sente to hym good and certeyn messagers, whiche brought to hym grete

yeftes, as gold, syluer, precious stones, clothes of sylk, horses, and mulettis. They sente hym moche largely, ffor whiche cause Tancre lefte them in peas. ¶ Thus dyde he wel his honoure and his prouffyt in alle places that he went by, in suche wyse that it semed wel to euery man, that oure lord god adressyd his way and mayntened his werkes vertuosly.

How Bawdwyn conquerd a grete contre vpon the Turkes by the counseyl of a knyght Hermyn, named Pancrace, capitulo lxxvij

NOW ye haue herde how Tancre mayntened hym in Sylyce. The grete hoost that folowed hym came vnto Marase. ¶ Bawdwyn that had seen his brother the duc hool & sound, had herd agayne tydinges of Tancre, how he dyde by the contre where he wente. He had moch grete desire to gadre to gydre peple, and goo serche the contre lyke as he dyde to fore, but he had lost moche the good wyl and grace of thoost, ffor they of thoost had herd tolde thoultrage that he had don to Tancre and to his men, and therfore many doubted for to entreprise the way with hym. Buymont and his men also had not lyghtly suffred this thyng vnauenged, ne had it ben for the loue of the duc his brother. Therfor Bawdwyn founde but few felawes that wold goo with hym. Godeffroy the duc, whiche was a moche wyseman, & of good wyl, blamed & repreuyd moche his brother of this werk; he brought hym herto that he knowleched his folye to fore alle the peple, and sayde that he had made

amendes to Tancre after his will, and yet wolde amende it vnto his playsyr, & swar that he had doon it more by the counseyl & atysement of other than of hym self. By thyse wordes he appeasyd the hertes of many men; for he was a moche valyaunt man and moch curtoys and neuer was perceyued in hym vylonye.

HE had an Hermyne with hym moche pryue named Pancrace. He was right wyse & an hardy knyght, but he was ouermoche trycherous and vntrewe, he was escaped oute of the prison of themperour of Constantynoble, and cam into the hoost at Nycene, where he acqueynted hym with Bawdwyn. And he prayd hym and admonested that he shold take men and goo in to a contre where he shold lede hym to, whiche was moche plentyuous and ful of goodes, & yf he wold goo he shold conquere it lightly. So ofte he said to hym herof that he began to take his way and departed with two honderd knyghtes and other men of armes ynough and footemen grete nombre. They folowed Pancrace alle, whiche brought them toward byse in a moch ryche lond. They that dwellyd in this londe were alle cristen men, sauf a fewe Turkes whiche helde the fortresses; they were lordes of the contre, and suffred not the cristen men shold meddle with ony armes in no wyse. Whan they that were of oure fayth sawe Bawdwyn & his men, they were glad & ioyeful, ffor they loued not the Turkes; they delyuerd ouer the contre where they had puyssaunce, in suche wyse that in a short tyme that he

had conquerd alle the londe vnto the flood Eufrates ¶ Bawdwyn was moch drad & doubted thurgh alle the contre ther about in such wyse that for drede they lefte hym alle the fortresses wel garnysshed, and toke them without debate. The cristen men whiche had receyued hym in to his londe, bycam so fiers & hardy, that they hunted alle the hethen men out of the contre. Ther were somme barons of the contre that seruyd Bawdwyn with alle theyr puyssance, and heelpe hym to brynge thyng to his wylle.

How they of Rages sente theyr messagers to Bawdwyn prayeng hym that he wolde come to them, capitulo lxxviij

THE renomme of this grete man, of whom his prowesse & wytte spredde oueral, cam vnto the cytezeyns of Rages, hopyng by hym to be delyuerid of the seruage in whiche they had ben long. The grettest men that had the gouernaunce of the toun sente certayn messagers to Bawdwyn, and prayd hym for the loue of god, for his honoure and prouffyt, that he wold come vnto theyr cyte, whiche was named Rages ¶ As is founden in the byble, thether sente Thobye his sone, yong Thobye, for to demaunde the moneye that Gable his cosyn ought hym, and on the way wedded Sara his wyf ¶ The cytezeyns of this cyte receyued cristen fayth anon after the deth of oure lord Ihesu criste, by the prechyng of seynt Iude appostle, brother of Symon, as it is founde wreton the book of Eusebee of Ce-

saire. They helde yet fermly this lawe that tyme, but the Turkes that were about them constreyned them so moch that they made them paye greuous and grete tributes euery yere. In so moche, whan tyme cam for to gadre theyr fruytes, of theyr vynes and other, they raunsouned them and muste paye at theyr wylle, or ellys they wolde destroye alle. Neuertheles in the toun durst noman dwelle but he byleuyd in Ihesu criste, ffor this only toun was holden hool and entierly in the fayth. The hethen peple had conquerd the other townes, and therfor they greued moche the cristen peple of this toun, ne wold not suffre them ysaue out of the toun for to doo theyr nedes, ffor on alle sydes of them was the puyssaunce of the Turkes.

IN this toun had the seygnorye a Greek that was moche oold, & had no childeren. He had ben there syth the tyme that this londe was vnder themperour of Constantynoble, ffor he was sente thyder by themperour for to be baylly, and whan the Turkes toke alle the countrey, he departed not thens, but abode alwey in his bayliage. Neuertheles he was that made neyther hoot ne cold, ne kept not the peple, but at theyr wyll. Whan the cytezeyns were acorded for to sende for Bawdwyn he knewe it wel and was content ❧ Whan Bawdwyn herde that they of Rages had sente for hym by comyn counseyl and acorde, he toke counseyl with his men & fonde by his counseyl for to goo theder. He ordeyned lxxx horsmen without moo for to goo with hym. He passed the

ryuer of Eufrates, and lefte the remenaunt of his peple in the fortresses that he had conquerd in the contre to kepe them surely. The Turkes that dwellyd in this lande knewe the tydynges how Bawdwyn shold come to Rages with a fewe men, and made an embusshement by the waye where he shold passe, & sette there grete plente of men of armes.

THYSE tydynges wer sayde to Bawdwyn, and therefor he torned to a castel by, whiche an Hermyn helde. He receyued hym gladly and al his men moch honorably, & was lodged there ij days. The Turkes that were ennoyed to be so longe so embusshed, yssued out and cam with baners displayed to fore the castel where Bawdwyn was inne; none yssued out for ther were ouer many men. The proye that they founde in the pastures, they brought alle with them, and after torned in to theyr countrey. On the thirde daye Bawdwyn yssued out and toke his waye and cam to Rages. The duc of the toun that was a Greek, as I haue said to fore, cam ayenst hym. And alle the other on horsbak and a foote with trompes and busynes. The peple of the toun receyued hym with procession the moost honorably they myght. Euerych peyned hym to make hym feste after his puyssaunce.

How the duc that was at Rages varyed for to holde this that he had promysed to Bawdwyn, capitulo lxxix

GRETE suspection had the duc in his herte whan he sawe this ioye that alle made to Bawdwyn. Thenne by enuye he began to fynde occasions by whiche he myght parte fro the couenauntes suche as he had sente, whiche were suche, Bawdwyn shold haue half the rentes of alle the cyte & of alle thexploytes, as long as the duc lyued. After his deth, which was olde, he shold haue alle the seygnorye entirely and hool. Now the duc wold not holde this, but sayde, that yf Bawdwyn wold deffende the cyte fro the strengthe of the Turkes, and fro theyr gryeues that they made in the countre, he wold gyue to hym & his men reasonable souldye and good wages. Whan Bawdwyn herd this that he was come theder for to be a souldyour, he had moche grete desdayne, and sayd that he wold not abyde there so, but wold ordeyne for hym and his men for to retorne.

THE cytezeyns of the toun sawe that this thynge wente not well, and cam to the duc, & shewde hym that grete euyl & peryll shold folowe yf he lete this noble man departe, ffor by thayde of hym they and alle theyr thynges shold be kept in peas and deffended, & they

shold be in grete franchyse. The duc sawe wel by thyse wordes that he shold do folye yf he sette hym ayenst them of the toun, therfore he couered his herte for that tyme, notwithstondyng he considered many thynges & thought, but sayde that he wold acorde therto, & made semblaunt that he dyde it with good wille in the presence of alle them of the toun. And avowed Bawdwyn to his sone, and graunted hym the half of alle that he had and shold haue his lyf duryng, and after his decees to haue alle as his heyr. Grete ioye had they in the cyte whan this was made, and had moost ferme hope for to recouuere the franchyse of the tributes that the Turkes had charged them with. fro that day forth they began to remembre in theyr hertes the wronges and gryefs that their duc had done to them in tyme passed, and thought moche that yf tyme and place cam to poynt, they wold suffre it no lenger, but thought how they myght auenge this that they had suffred alle the tyme that he had be duc.

How Bawdwyn wente to assaylle famossette, the cyte nyghe to Rages, capitulo lxxx

THE cyte was there nyghe by, moche stronge and wel garnysshed, named famosette. An vntrew Turke named Blanduc was lord therof, he was a trychour, but he was noble & hardy in armes. This sarasyn had don moche harme to the cytezeyns of Rages: he sette on them trybutes and dyuerse

demaundes ofte, as they had ben his bondemen, & for to haue thyse thynges he had good ostages. He helde theyr childeren so fowle as they had ben in seruage, he made them to bere donge and fylthe, and doo fowle werkes; herof they of Rages were moche greuyd. They cam to fore Bawdwyn, and kneled to hym at his feet, & prayd hym with ioyned handes right humbly, wepyng grete teres, that he wold delyuer them fro this Turk forsayd, in suche wyse that they myghte recouure theyr childeren, whom he helde so shamefully. Bawdwyn wold fayne doo theyr requeste after theyr desire; at this theyr first requeste, & to gete theyr loue & thanke, he dyde do arme hym and alle that he myght haue, and yssued with them out of the toun, and cam to fore famosete, and assaylled the toun moche vygorously, but they within deffended them as men wel garnysshed and in a strong place.

THAN Bawdwyne had ben there, I wote not how many dayes, & sawe it coude not lightly be taken, he lefte in a fortresse nyghe by lxxx knyghtes, and put in it garnyson of men of armes and vytaylles, and commanded them that euery day they shold renne to fore the toun of famosete, and suffre to yssue of the toun neyther man ne beste; and after he cam agayn to Rages. The cytezeyns of the toun sawe wel that Bawdwyn was a moche curtoys man, wyse, noble, and valyaunt in alle his thynges, & had despyte and grete desdayne, that this old duc whiche was nought worthe, and that had don to theym

moche sorowe, and was not his felaw but his lord in the toun. Therfor they toke counseyl emonge them, and sente for a puyssaunt man, whiche had many fortresses by them in the montaynes, named Constantyn, and acorded alle to gydre for to slee their duc, & wold make Bawdwyn duc & lord vpon them, ffor they moch hated this old man, that without fayll had greued them long tyme in many maners, for he toke fro them gold and syluer and all that plesyd hym in the toun, and ther was none so hardy that durst withstande hym ne displese hym, ffor yf they dide, anon by the Turkes with whom he was acqueynted, made them to destroye theyr vygnes and fruytes, and brenne theyr whete and corne, and lede away theyr beestes, and yf ony of them went out of the toun, they had fere for to lese theyr heedes.

How they of the toun of Rages slewe theyr duc, and chees Bawdwyn for to be theyr lord, capitulo lxxxi

THEYE had not forgeten the wronges and iniuryes that they had suffred of theyr duc. They hoped al, that yf he were deed, that Bawdwyn shold deffende them better than he. Therfore they wente al armed, as it was enterprised, vnto a tour where as he laye, and began strongly tassayle it, & enuyronned round about. The duc sawe that the peple was so sore meuyd and angry on hym, and called

Bawdwyn, and prayd hym to take of his tresour as moche as he wolde, & repease the peple. Bawdwyn cam emong them, and trauaylled moche by prayers & menaces for to haue supposed to haue repeased them, but he myght doo nothyng, ffor al way ther cam moo & more, in suche wyse that the companye encreced. Bawdwyn departed thus fro them, and spak to the duc, and said that he shold take to hym suche counseyle, that he myght eschewe the furye of the peple, ffor he myght not remedye it ❧ Thenne the duc, as a man despayred, bonde a corde to a wyndowe and descended doun therby; but whan they apperceyued, he was thurgh smeton with arowes er he myght come to therthe. ❧ Thenne they toke hym al deed, and drewe hym thurgh the town, and after smote of his heed, and coude not doo ynough to satisfie theyr cruelteés.

ON the morn they toke Bawdwyn by force, ayenst his will in deffendyng hym self, and lyft hym vp as theyr kyng and lorde. They made to hym oth of feaulte, and after delyuerd to hym the grete fortresse of the toun, and gave to hym at his will rychesses and moche grete tresours that the Grekes had assembled by long time. Thus was the cyte of Rages delyuerd without contradiction to Bawdwyn ❧ Blanduc, that was lord of famosete, sawe how Bawdwyn conquerd alwey the londes and contrees, and encreced his puyssaunce, & sente to hym messagers whiche lete hym wete how that his cyte was moche stronge, and myght not lightly be wonne, but he

wold gyue hym x M besauntes ❧ Bawdwyn aduysed hym herupon, and by counseyl acorded to bye it, and payd to hym that somme, and receyued the toun entierly, and Blanduc rendred thostages that he had holden alle thenne ❧ And thus he conquerd the hertes and loue of them of the toun, that they called hym theyr fader, & they dyde alle that plesyd hym to theyr power, and redy tobeye hym to the deth.

How Bawdwyn wente and assyeged the toun of Serorge, nygh to Rages, and toke it, and of his ordenaunces, capitulo lxxxij



N this londe was a cyte named Serorge, wherin dwellyd none other peple sauf hethen men; the lord of the toun was named Balak. The Turkes that were therin dyde many traueyls and vylaynous oultrages, so many that they prayde Bawdwyn theyr lord for the loue of god, and for thaffection that he had to them, that he wold take counseyl and sette a remedye of this thyng. He answerd curtoysly & sayde that he wold doo it gladly. Thenne he commaunded that euery man shold arme hym dylygently, and whan they were redy they shold yssue out of Rages, and goo strayt for to assiege the cyte of Sororge. Thenne dressyd they theyr engyns, and began to leye the siege and brak the walles and torettes. The Turkes that were within the toun were moch abasshed, for they thought wel that Bawdwyn ne his peple wold not lightly departe fro the siege, ne they

vnderstode of no socours fro noo syde, wherfore they sente theyr messagers to Bawdwyn, and so entreted that, theyr lyues saued, they wolde yelde the toun to hym. Bawdwyn receyued the toun, & put in the grettest fortresse one, his bayly, that shold doo his commaundement in that countrey, and ordeyned a moche grete tribute on them of the toun, & lefte hem therin, for he had not other peple ynough for to people the toun yf they wente theyr waye. By the prise of this cyte, was alle the way delyuerd of the hethen, fro Rages vnto Anthyoche, for to fore myght none goo vnto the ryuer of Eufrates for the peple of Sororge. Thus cam Bawdwyn to grete honour and to moche ioyous feste in the cyte of Rages. Now we shal leue to speke of Bawdwyn and shal speke now of the grete hooste that cam be hynde after.

How the grete hoost cam to fore Marese, and how the Turkes that were within fledde, and how our peple payned them to conquere countrees, capitulo lxxxiij

THE duc Godeffroy and the grete plente of the barons & knyghtes and noble men and other with them, they passed moche greuous wayes, and were comen by valeyes & montaynes vnto a cyte named Marese. This is not that toun that I spak of to fore, for that is named Maraze. This cyte named Marese was enhabyted with cristen men. Neuertheless the Turkes helde the fortresses, and had the seignorye

of the toun, & euyl entreted the cristen peple. Thyse hethen peple herd of the comying of our peple, and fledde by nyght for fere of them, and there abode none of the toun sauf they of oure fayth. Whan the hooste approuched, the barons knewe the trouth of this toun. Then they deffended generally that none shold doo no harme to them of the toune ne to theyr thynges. They lodged them in a moche fayre place and delytable, and had vytaylles ynough and good cheep.

THEY of the countre lete the barons of thooste haue knowleche, that there fast by was a ryche cyte and ful of goodes named Artaysse, & dwellyd in the fortresses of the toun none other but hethen men. The prynces toke counseyl herupon, and sente Robert the erle of flaundres theder. He toke with hym Robert de Rosoye & Gossolyn the sone of Cononde Montagu, they were wel a thousand men of armes whan they cam to fore the toun, anon they assieged it. The Turkes that were within trusted not the walles of the toun, and wold haue withdrawen them to the gretter fortresses of the toun, but the Hermyns and the other men of our fayth, to whom the Turkes had don long tyme grete shames and moch harme in the toun, whan they sawe oure men they had grete affyance & trust in them, & toke vnto them moche grete hardynesse, and ranne to armes, and er the Turkes myght with drawe them in to the fortresses and toures, they slewe them & threwe their heedes ouer the walles to our men, & aftir opened the gates

and receyued them in to the toun with grete ioye, and therein they fonde al that they had nede of, for the cyte was merueyllously ryche. fro thens vnto Anthyoche was but xv myle, this cyte of whiche I speke is vnder the patriarke of Anthyoche, and for fere of oure peple were the moost parties of the Turkes fledde in to Anthyoche.

THAN they herd saye that Artayse was thus taken, and they had slayn them that were lordes, they toke counseyl emonge them for to aduyse how they myght hurte thoost. They choos out x M to whom they comanded taccomplysshe this thyng. They wente forth, & whan they approched thoost they put them all in a busshement sauf xxx wel horsed and lightly armed, whom they sente forth for to drawe men fro thoost. They approched so nygh that the hooste of the toun sawe them, for they made samblaunt for to take fourriers & the horses nyghe them. Oure peple ran to armes, and began to folowe so ferr that they fought to gydre folyly vpon theyr watche, they sprange out and wold haue ronne bytwene them & the toun for ten close them in, but our men assembled them & ran to gydre, and cam deffendyng them vntyl they cam into the toun in suche wyse that they loste noman.

THE Turkes sawe wel that they myght not recouure the toun, and began to assiege it, for they had peple ynowgh, & after began tassayle it. They within deffended them wel that they without loste more than wan. Whan the

Turkes sawe that the grete hooste made them redy and approuche, and that they prouffyted not, they toke counseyl and retorned in to Anthioche, but the brygge that was bytwene they garnysshed moche wel. The erle of flaundres and the other that were with hym within Artayse went not out, but kept the toun, but that day maladye toke Goselyn, the sone of Conon of Montagu, a yong man, curtoys and moche valyaunt. He deyde of that maladye, & was buryed in that toun with worship & grete lamentacion.

How it was commaunded vnto alle the barons to come vnto thoost for to goo vnto Anthyoche, and of som recountres that they had in the way, capitulo lxxxiiij

THAN the Turkes that were come fro Anthyoche for to recouure Artayse were departed from thens, at the spryngyng of the day, tydyngs cam that the grete hooste was lodged nygh by, for they had herd saye how therle of flaundres was besieged, and therfor by comyn counseyl they had sente xv C horsmen to fore to socoure them yf they had nede. They commaunded them that yf the siege were departed, they shold leue peple resonably to kepe the toun, and shold saye to therle of flaundres, and to them that were with hym, that they shold come agayn in to the hoost. Tancre, whiche had conquerd alle Sylyce, had in commaundement to come agayn, and he retorned, & alle the other also that were de-

parted fro the hooste generally were comen agayne, sauf Bawdwyn, whiche abode aboute Rages, where he did wel his thynges.

WHAN the hoost was thus counseylled and ordeyned, they dyde do crye thurgh out alle thoost that noman shold departe without leue. Thenne toke they alle theyr way for to goo strayt vnto Anthyoche. They herd wel saye that ther ran a water whiche they muste passe, but the brygge vpon this water was moche wel garnysshed of theyr enemyes. To thende thenne that the hoost shold not be destroubled for to pass whan they shold arryue there, by comyn counseyl of them alle, Robert the duc of Normandye, shold goo to for to knowe yf he myght delyuere the passage, and to sende worde to the barons what he founde. With hym wente Euerard du Puysaut and Rogyer de Barneuylle. Thyse two he made conestables of his hooste and had thauaunt garde, for they were bothe moche cheualrous and proued in armes. Thus departed they fro the hooste & cam to the brygge. The brygge was vpon the water which has to name in the ancyent scriptures Orontes, also it is called in the contre Helle; the brygge was moche strong, and had at thentre on this syde hye towres and stronge. In euery tour were l men of armes for to deffende with bowes and arabalestres the entree of the brygge and the passage of the water. On that other syde toward Antyoche were comen seuen honderd horsmen for to kepe that syde of the water toward them. This ryuer of Helle renneth on the syde

of Antyoche, & cometh by another cyte named Cesaire, but it sourdeth by another cyte named Eliopee, and is called Malbec, & descendeth in to the see by there as I haue sayd.

WHAN our peple were comen to this brygge thentre was wel denyed them, for grete plente of Turkes were descended doun to the bariers. The other toures rested not to caste stones & shote so sore that it was a moche grete scarmuche and fiers. They fought so moche to gydre that tydynges cam in to thoost, which alwey meuyd and was thenne not fer fro the brygge. They auaunced theyr paas & sowned trompes and busynes, and smote on them that helde ayenst them the paas. They that were in the toures durst holde them no lenger there for fere of the grete peple that they sawe come with the grete hoost, for they thought they sholde not be there sure. The other also descended and were put alle to flyght, in suche wyse that our men toke the brydge. The other knyghtes of oure peple that myght not come to the baryers for the prees whilis the scarmuche was, were moche anguysshous, and descended doun where as there was a place to passe whiche they of the contre knewe not of, and passed ouer & discomfyted the seuen honderd Sarasyns that kepte the bancke. So moche dyde one and other that alle the hooste passed delyuerly ouer and caryage after. They lodged them in a moche fayr place, a vj myle fro the toun. On the morn they approched alle the grete waye bytwene the montaynes and the ryuer, in suche wyse that they lodged but a myle fro the cyte.

How Antyoche, by succession of tyme, had dyuerse names, and of the noblesse of auncyente, capitulo lxxxv

ANTHYOCHE is a moche noble cyte, which conteyneth the third place emong the patriarkes after the chirche of Rome. This cyte was named sometyme Reblada, after that the auncyent wrytynges witnesse ❧ Nabugodonosor, kynge of Babylone, brought Sedechyas, kyng of Iherusalem, theder, whan he had taken hym & slewe his sones to fore hym, and after put out his eyen, as is founden in the fourth book of kynges ❧ Whan Alysaundre, kyng of Macedone, was deed, Anthyochus had this part of the londe, and enforced moche the cyte of grete toures and wallys, and wold haue it named after hym Anthyoche, and ordeyned it chyef of alle the royame ❧ The prynce of thappostlys, seynt Peter, was first bisshop there, in a chirche that Theophilus made to hym of his hows, which was a noble and a myghty man in the toun ❧ Seynt Luke, the holy euangelyste, was born in this toun. To the same Theophile wrote he thactes of thappostles, whiche was the vij bisshop in Anthyoche. Ther was the first counseyl of them that byleuyd in Ihesu Criste after his deth, and thenne was establysshed that they shold be called crysten men of Crist; ffor byfore they were called Nazaryens, of the cyte that he was of ❧ This cyte was conuerted by the prechyng

of seynt Peter. Therfore he gaf it the name of Theopoble, whiche is as moche to saye as of god oure lord. Vnder Antyoche ben xx grete cytees of whiche ben xiiij archebysshopryches. The sex haue two prymates, whiche ben called Catholicos; that one is in the cyte whiche is named Amene, and that other is at Bandras. And alle this is claymed thoryent.

Of the situation of Anthyoche, capitulo lxxxvj

THIS cyte, of whom I haue spoken, is Anthyoche and stondeth in the londe of this Surye, and is parte of the londe of the grete Surye. It stondeth in a moche fayr place and delytable. Now I shall recounte to you how it stondeth. It is a moche grete towne, and aboute moche good londe, for to bere habondaunce of whete, of corn, of fayr fontaynes and smale rennyng waters, and it is emonge the montaynes toward the eest, whiche contre dureth wel xl myle of lengthe, and wel vj myle of brede. Aboue ther is a lake or mere, assembled of sprynges & wellys, that renne therin, whiche is full of fysshe. Of this lake yssueth a rennyng water, whiche cometh nygh the cyte, and renneth in to the ryuer that renneth by the toun. The montaynes closed the two sides of the toun; neuertheles, ther ben vnder them fressh waters and erable londe. The mount whiche is toward the south is named Oronte, lyke as I sayd you of the ryuer; for seynt Gregoire sayth that Antyoche is sette bytwene Oronte the ryuer and

Oronte the montayne; one partie of this montayne, that goth toward the see, is moch hye, in such wyse that it had a name by hym self. Somme peple wene that this hylle be Pernasus, a montayne of whiche scripture speketh moche, by cause of a fontayne that is atte the foote of the same hylle, which is named Leschielle Buymand. But, without faulte, this is not the mount of whiche the auctors speke, for this montayne Pernasus stondeth in the lande named Thessaylle.

THAT other montayne, whiche is toward the south, is named the black montayne, fulle also of sprynges & wellys, of wodes & of pastures. There were wonte aunciently thermytes for to dwelle. Thurgh this valeye renneth the ryuer that I spak of to fore, and renneth to ward the see. In the montayne toward the south, begynneth the walles of Antyoche, and come vnto the ryuer, hit is a grete espace within the closure. Ther ben enclosed within the walles twoo montaynes; vpon the hyest stondeth a fortresse, so stronge that it is not prenable, but by famyne. Bytwene thyse two montaynes, whiche ben moche hye, is a valeye right depe, but it is strayt; in that renneth a litil water, right faste and swyfte, and entred in to the toun and doth moche good to the toun. In the cyte ben many fontaynes, but the beste is the fontayne whiche is named the fonteyn of seynt Poul, and is nygh to the eest gate. Ther is another fontayne without the toun, whiche by crafte and conduytes is brought in to the toun right subtylly.

Alle the walles of the toun; that is to wete, they that ben on the montaynes, and they that ben hangyng, & also they that ben in the playn, ben merueyllous thycke, for they ben of ouer stronge werke. Ther ben toures moche hye & wel defensable, that is toward the sonne goyng doun. The ryuer renneth so nygh the toun, that the brygge on whiche men passe ioyneth to the walles and to the gate of the cyte. The lengthe of the toun is wel two or thre myle. Hit is nyghe vnto the see xij myle of.

Who that was thenne lord of Antyoche, & in what manere he was comen vnto this seygnorye, capitulo lxxxvij

Of this cyte of Anthyoche was lord a Turk, named Ancean. He had ben of the meyne of a puyssaunt sowdan of Perse, of whom we haue spoken to fore, named Belphet, which had conquerd alle thyse londes, and after whan he wold retorne agayn in to his contrey, he departed entierly his conquest to his neueus, and to somme of his meyne, by cause that he wold that they that were his trewe men and frendes, shold holde peas, eche in his partye, and shold be as defendours and the closyng of the londe. He gaf to his neuew Solyman, Nycque, or Nycene, with alle theyr appertenaunts, as ye haue herd to fore. To another neuew, named Ducar, he gaf the cyte of Damaske, and alle the countre about, and wold that eche of them shold bere the name of Soudan, and

lyke dygnyte. Solyman, by cause he marched on the Grekes, had euery day debate ayenst themperour of Constantynoble. Ducar was ayenst them of Egypte, and ofte made warre eche to other, for they loued not to gydre. To thende thenne that thyse two, Solyman and Ducar, myght the better mayntene theyr warre, he wold that they were puyssaunt and hye men as soudans. To one his seruaunt, named Assougur, which was fader of Sangum, & graunt fader of Noradyn, of whom ye shal here here after, he gaf the renommed cyte called Halappe. To this Ancean, of whom I spak to fore, he gaf this hye & noble cyte Antyoche, and lytil lond about, for the Calyphe of Egypte helde alle the countre vnto the boundes of Surye.

THIS Ancean, whan he herd that the grete hoost of cristen men cam, he sente messagers and lettres to the barons of thoryent, & hym self spak to them by mouth expressedly, and requyred the caliphe of Bandras and the soudan of Perse, which was more myghty than ony other, that they wolde socoure his londe and hym. They beleuyd al this lightly, for Solyman was comen to them that had wel assayed what oure men coude doo, therfore he also requyred moche to greue oure cristen men, and that they wolde auenge hym. Ancean requyred that they wold deffende hym. The grete barons of thoryent, and other hye and noble men, promysed hym that they wold helpe hym certaynlye. Ancean forgate not in the mene whyle, but gadred as moche peple as they myght haue in

the contreye aboute hym, as they that fro day to day abode the siege. He assembled vytaylles, armures, engyns, and alle other thynges necessarye to peple assyeged, and prayd moche ententifly the cytezeyns of the toun that euery man shold make prouysyon and garnyson for hym self as moche as he myght. Thenne wente the cytezeyns of the toun to vyllages and other places ther aboute, & brought alle in to the cyte, whete, wyn, oyle, & alle maner of beestes, so moche that the toun was merueyllously garnysshed. Many hye, puyssaunt, and noble men were comen fro the contrees that oure peple had passed, whiche were fledde in to this stronge toun for to kepe them self; in so moche that it was sayd and was trouthe, that there were in the cyte vij M horsmen, allearmed and wel in poynt, and of footemen there were that bare harnoys moo than xx M.

Dyuerse oppynyon of our men to fore they assieged Anthyoche, and how they acorded alle for tassiege it, capitulo lxxxviij

CURE men were approched so nygh the cyte, that they sawe it nygh to them. After, they assembled for to take counseyl how they shold procede forth, for there were somme of the barons that counseylled that they shold tarye the siege vnto the newe tyme of the yere, for the wynter cam on, whiche shold be moche greuous to lye out. On that other parte, ther were many of thooste that were sprad about

in the cytees & castellys, whiche myght not lyghtly be assembled tyl after the wynter. And ferthermore, they sayde that themperour of Constantinople shold sende grete peple for to helpe them. Therfor it were wel reason that they shold abyde them. Also, on the other syde of the montaynes, they sayde they shold haue peple al fressh, of whom they had grete nede for tassiege suche a toun. And in the mene whyle myght the peple and theyr horses soiourne alle the wynter in the countre about, & shold be the fressher & harder, and strenger for tendure trauaylle and payne whan it shold nede.

THE other barons acorded that they shold sette the siege forthwith without delaye, ffor yf thenemyes that were in the cyte had the respyte, they shold garnysshe them better of men, of armures, of engyns, and of other estoremente than they had thenne: they also that were comyng, shold haste them the more yf the cyte were beseged for to helpe them. To this counseyl acorded fynably alle ❧ They ordeyned theyr bataylles, & cam to fore the toun, there they lodged them the x day of Octobre. In oure hooste were men well armed to the nombre of ccc M, without wymmen, childeren, & other men that bare no harnoys. And yet myght not alle they besiege alle the cyte, for without the montaynes, where was thought to leye no siege, was at the foot of the hylle vnto the ryuer, a grete part of the walle in a fayr playn, which myght not be leyed about with peple. In the comyng of this grete hoost, was a moche grete bruyt & noyse

of buysyns, of horses, of peple, of cartes and charyottes. But this daye, ne on the morn folowynge, was no noyse, but semed that the toun had ben alle voyde, & noman therin; but this was don by cause they had moche grete garnyson of peple & of other thynges.

How, after the situacion of the toun, eche of the hye barons of the hoost were lodged at the sayd siege, capitulo lxxxix

ANTHYOCH had conteynyeng in the cyte v yates. Toward thoryent ther was one, & was named the porte seynt Poul & that was by cause it was vnder the monastery of seynt Poul whiche is hangyng on the territoire. The second was toward thoccident, and the lengthe of the toun is bytwene both thyse yates, and that is named the porte of seynt George. On the syde toward byse ben thre yates, whiche alle yssue toward the ryuer. That yate above is named the porte of the hound; ther is a brygge to fore this yate, by whiche men passe the mareys which is vnder the walles of the cyte. The seconde is named the porte of the duc: the ryuer is ther wel a myle long fro thyse two yates. The thirde is named the yate of the brygge, by cause the brygge is there, by whiche men passe the ryuer; ffor bytwene the port of the duc, whiche is in the myddle of thyse thre, & this that is the laste on that syde, approuche so the flood of the toun, that fro thens it renneth costeyeng the toun

alle ioynyng to the walles. Wherfor it was that this yate, ne the yate of seynt George, our men myght not assiege, for noman myght come theder but yf he wente ouer the ryuer.

BUYMONT assieged this yate aforsayd of thound, with them that were comen in his companye. Beside hym, in aualyng doun, were lodged Robert the duc of Normandye, Robert therle of flaundres, Steuen therle of Bloys, and Huon le Mayne. Thyse had pourprised fro the lodgys of Buymont vnto the yate of thounde, ffor the frensshemen, the Normans & the Bretons, were with them to fore this gate. Thenne was lodged therle Remont of Tholouse, & the bisshop of Puy, with them that were come in theyr companye; that were the Prouynceaulx, the Gascoyns, and the Burgoynons, ther was moche grete peple. They toke alle the place vnto the gate next after. At this gate were lodged the duc Godeffroy, Eustace his brother, Bawdwyn therle of Henawd, Reynold therle of Toul, Conon de Montagu, & other barons, many whiche alwey helde them with thyse prynces. Ther were the Loraynes, the Henewers; they of Sessougne, they of Bauyere, and they of francoine; they toke vp alle the place almoost to the yate of the brygge, and helde the ryuer that ranne there. In this partye, toward the toun, was grete plente of apple trees, of fygtrees, and of other trees beryng fruyt, whiche our peple cut and hewe of alle for to lodge them. They of the toun byhelde, by the hourdeys and batyllemens of the walles, the manere and contenaunce of thooste, and

meruaylled moche of the armes, of the tentes, and of the facion and manere that they had for to lodge them. They were in grete doubte, ffor they were wel adcerteyned, that so moche and grete peple wold not lightly departe fro this siege without doyng them grete dammage and harme. Ther were many that were so gretely effrayed for theyr wyues, theyr childeren & theyr other frendes, that they wold that they had ben deed & buryed long to fore, to thende that they shold not see the destruction which they doubted for to see.

How our peple assembled in counseyl for to fynde the moyen for to sende for vytaylle, & of a brydge that they made, capitulo lxxxx

OUR peple, that were thus lodged, founde not about them pastures for theyr horses ne for theyr other beestes. Therfore them behoeued ofte to passe the ryuer, and to renne thurgh the contrey. Thus dyde they many tymes, by cause they of the toun meuyd not yet; & it was a noyous and greuous thynge to passe the ryuer, ffor ther was no brygge, but feried ouer in botes bothe horse and man. Whan the Turkes of the cyte apperceyued this, they sente secretely ouer theyr brygge theyr peple, whiche toke and slewe our men, that they fonde so sprad in the contre. And this dyde they surely ynowgh, by cause they myght not retourne but by the ryuer, and they of thoost myght not socoure them. Wherfor our barons con-

seylled them to gydre, & concluded that they wold make a brygge in somme maner, by whyche they myght passe without daunger of them of the toun. They fonde shippes in the laye, & aboue in the ryuer they toke & ioyned them to gydre, and sette plankes on them, and nayled them in suche wyse that thre or four men myght passe on a front, this brigge dyde moche ease to alle thoost. This brygge was nygh the lodgys of duc Godeffroy, right ayenst the yate that he kepte; & therfor the yate was named the yate of the duc; ffro this brygge of tree vnto the brygge of stone was a grete myle, as I sayd to you to fore. By this yate and by this bryge was moche harme don to our peple, & by the yate named the porte of the hounde; they greued moche our peple, ffor they had a brydge of stone by the toun ffor to pass the marese of dyuerse waters gadred to gydre, that ran there; by that brygge they made theyr assaylles day and nyght vpon the peple of therle of Tholouse, which kepte the gate. Oftymes they opened the yates, and yssued out vpon theyr lodgyes, and dyuerse they hurted, and slewe many; & whan they had don, they retorned in to the toun, ffor oure men myght not poursiewe them but by the brygge. Therfore hit happed that the bisshoppe of Puy, therle of Tholouse, and the other barons that were there, were more hurte in theyr mounture than alle the other of thoost.

How our peple stopped a yate of the toun without forth, & of a castel of tree that they made, capitulo lxxxxj

THIS peple had grete despyte & grete shame of the domages and harmes that were thus don to them, & toke counseyl that they wold bete doun the brygge, and theder they cam al armed, vnder theyr targes and sheldes grete hammers of yron & grete plente of pyquoys, and began to smyte for to breke the brydge, but the walles were so stronge and harde that they myght not hurte it. And on that other syde they of the toun were on the walles & tourettes, whiche threwe grete stones & thycke on them that so pecked to breke the brygge, that they were fayn to leue their enterprise & retorne fro thens. After this they thought of another thynge, and made a newe castel of tree, & sette it ayenst the brygge for to kepe it that they shold not passe ouer it on them, it was moche werke and payne to make it. Whan it was sette & dressyd therle garnysshed it with his men. They of the toun adressyd theyr gonnes and engynes at this castel, & smote it with grete stones, and they in the toures shotte ther at grete plente of arowes, so many in such wyse that none durst abyde in this castel ne about it. On a day it happed that our men withdrewe them fro the brydge & fro ther about, and they within opened the yate and yssued out by the rowtes. They that were in the castel of tree fledde, and the other sette fyer on it, and brent

it to asshes. Our men sawe wel thenne that they warred not wel thus, and ordeyned thre gonnes for to shote stones at the brygge. Whyles they shotte none of the Turkes yssued oute there, but as sone as they cessed they cam oute and made theyr assaylles as they dyde to fore. It displesyd moche to oure barons that they myght not sette no remedye ayenst the comynge oute of thyse Turkes. Atte laste they acorded that they wold take grete stones of the roche, such as were conuenyent for a gate, & stoppe the passage. They toke an honderd men and more, and stopped the gate ouer the brydge: ther were so many that it was doon in suche wyse that it coude not be lightly broken agayne. They had grete trauaylle and payne to make it, but they that were lodged there kepte alle armed them that brought the stones. Thus was the gate stopped in suche wyse that thoost abode alle in peas there, for the Turkes myght nomore make theyr assaylles there.

How our peple were in grete meschyef for as moche as they of the toune yssued and entred in and oute with grete rowtes, capitulo lxxxxij

ON a day it happed that ther went out of thoost as wel on foote as on horsbak a thre honderd men, & passed ouer the brydge of tree, and sprad the contreye as men that went on foragyng. It is the custome of an hoost for to goo out so oftymes & retorne without dammage or hurte, therfor they had supposed to haue ben sure. They of the toun apperceyued it &

yssued out with grete plente of peple, & wente ouer the brydge of stone & ranne on them that they sawe goo so folyly, and somme they slewe, & other fledde to the brydge of shippis where they supposed to haue passed. But thenemyes were there to fore, and deffended them the waye in suche wyse that many of them were drowned in the water that supposed to haue passed ouer. Other of oure men recountred the Turkes that had slayn and discomfyted our men and bare away with them their proyes & dispoylles, & ranne on them. The Turkes fledde, and our men poursiewed them, sleyng and betyng them vnto within the brydge of stone.

THEY of the toun that sawe theyr men so poursiewed sprang out with grete prees and passed the brydge, and ran on our men, which wold haue deffended them, but they myght not suffre so grete nombre of peple and fledde. They folowed them doyng to them grete dommage, til they cam to the brydge of shippis, there they assaylled them so harde that many men armed fyll in the water, whiche were there drowned & loste. Oure men lost there many men on foote & on horsbak. In this manere were they of thooste in grete mesease ffor they were better besieged than they of the toun. There were many of theyr enemyes in the woodes and montaygnes, whiche ofte ranne vpon our peple whan they sawe them goo without ordenaunce, and they of the toun yssued out whan it plesed them, in suche wyse that our men durst not goo fer fro thooste for to fourage ne for none other thyng. And

also in theyr lodgys were they not assured, ffor the tydynge was that the Turkes assembled moche grete plente of peple for to smyte in thooste on that one side, & they of the toun on that other side shold yssue on them.

Of the famyne and mortalyte of thoost after that they had be at the sayd siege the space of two monethes, capitulo lxxxxiij

FOR to recounte alle the auentures that were in so grete a siege shold be ouer greuous & a moche long thyng, therfor I shal saye to you this that longeth to the comyn. Thooste had holden siege vnto the thyrde moneth, vytayll began to faylle, and was grete suffrete and scarsenes in thoost. They had in the begynnyng largely & grete habundaunce both for men and horses; but they made grete waast & more than neded, and so by their oultrage and folye they lacked in short tyme, which myght haue long susteyned them yf they had kepte it wel and gouerned by mesure. They suffred grete penurye in thoost of vitayl for men & beestes, in such wise that the pour peple were in grete peryl. Euery day assembled ij or iij C men of armes to gydre for to serche the contrey and fetche vytaylles. They swore to gydre that alle the gayne that they myght fynde and conquere, they shold departe egally emonge them. They wente forth fer fro thoost, and fonde the townes moche wel garnysshed, by cause they were fer fro thoost

they thought that noman shold robbe ne take nothyng fro them, and thus brought vytayll to thoste.

BUT whan the Turkes of the toun, and also other in the countrey, had apperceyued this, they made embusshementes and ranne vpon our men whan they retorned, or other whyle whan they went forth, & slewe them somme tyme alle, that none retorned for to brynge tydynges to thoost, therfor and durst they goo nomore a/fouragyng. The derthe was moche grete in thoost and euery day grewe the famyn in suche wyse that man ete wel at a mele in brede four d. A cowe was worth four marc weyght of syluer, which a man myght haue at begynnyng for echt or ten shyllyngis. A lambe or a kyd was at sex shyllyngis, whiche to fore was worth but thre or four pens. The mete for an horse for a nyght cost xvj pens. Ther deyde many for honger in suche wyse that at the begynnynge of the siege the horses were nombred at lxx M, and at that tyme were scarse ij M, & they were so poure, feble and lene, that vnnethe they myght helpe ony man. The tentes & pauyllons roted, ffor it rayned continuelly a rayne so thycke & grete that no cloth myght susteyne it, wherfore moche peple in the hooste deyde for colde and mesease. Theyr clothes roted on theyr backs by cause they myght fynde no place to drye them. There was one so grete mortalite in thoost, that vnnethe myght be fonden men for to burye them that deyde. Many that sawe this grete daunger and peryll in thooste wente and departed pryuely to Rages where Bawdwyn was,

& in to Scilice where other cytees were also. Thus were many slayn, and grete plente deed of famyne and of other maladyes, & the hoost was so mynuysshid that ther were not half so moche peple as they were at begynnyng.

How our peple ordeyned grete rowtes for to goo for vytayll, & to reteyne the peple which fled for hungre, capitulo lxxxxiiij

OFTYMES assembled the barons for to fynde counseyl how they myght reteyne the peple that thus departed, and also in what maner & how they might aduise & ordeyn for vytayll for thoost. And they concluded that one partye of the barons shold haue grete plente of men with them, and go right depe in to the londe of the paynems for to bryng e vytaylles, and alle that they myght fynde and gete on theyr enemyes. To this were chosen Buymont & the erle of flaundres. Thoost was delyuerd to therle of Thoulouse and to Huon le Mayne to gouerne, ffor the duc of Normandye was not there, & duc Godeffroy laye seke moche greuously. They departed for to goo on fourage; many folowed for to gete some gayne.

WHAN the Turkes of the toun sawe thooste thus voyde and waxe lasse, and knewe for certayn that therle of flaundres, Buymont, & the duc of Normandye went not there, and that the duc Godeffroy laye in his bedde

seke, they preysed and doubted moch the lasse the remenaunt, and toke counseyl that they wold make an assayllyng by the brydge. But they that kept thoost had knowleche herof, and were aduertysed and were al armed on horsbak, & cam ayenst them & slewe many of the Turkes that were come to fore and were many grete men of the toun. ¶ Whan the other barons sawe this, what for sorow & for fere, were discomfyted and fled agayn in to the toun.

BUT a grete mesauenture happed to oure peple; ffor, as the Turkes fledde dyscomfyted, one of them was beten doun of his hors, and his hors fledd toward the lodgys, and many of our men ranne after to wynne hym. The mene peple & other that sawe the horse, supposed that our men had been disconfyted and that they had fled to fore theyr enemyes, and they began to flee, and other that sawe them flee fledde also, in suche wyse that alle torned to discomfyture ouer fowle. ¶ Whan the Turkes behelde this, and sawe that our men disconfyted them self, anone they retorned and passed the brygge, and began to chace them that so fledde, and bete and slewe them fro the brydge of stone vnto the brydge of the shippis. There were slayn of our men on horsbak a xx and a foot yet moo. The Turkes retorned in to theyr cyte demenyng grete ioye and feste for this iourneye.

How Buymont and therle of flaundres mayntened hem beyng in fourage. Of theyr recountrees and of the gayne that they made, capitulo lxxxxv

BVYMONT and therle of flaundres, that were sente by comyn counseyl in fouragyng, entred fer in to the lande of theyr enemyes, & founde a moche ryche toun, good & ful of thyng that they had nede of in thoost; they toke all, ffor they fonde neyther man ne woman that empesshed ne letted them. Thyse two barons had sente theyr espyes in dyuers partyes of the londe for tenquyre and serche where they myght gete more vytayl for to lede the hooste. Now it happed that one of the spyes cam to Buymont & sayde that a grete company of Turkes were embusshed in a place nyghe by them, for to renne on them whan they wente on fouragyng. Thenne they ordeyned that therle of flaundres shold goo forth with his men, and Buymont shold come fer after, and so was doon. Therle of flaundres fonde thysemen, & assembled to gydre fiersly; the batayll was longe and cruel, ffor the Turkes had mo men than therle of flaundres. At the laste our men were discomfyted, for the flemynges myght not endure, but fledde er Buymont cam, and so were lefte of our men there wel an hunderd or more in the place. And thenne our men retorned in to thoost with grete good and gayn that they had gadred to gydre.

THYLES they were there cam to them other espyes of an other contre, that aduertysed them of other Turkes that wayted to hurte them whan they sawe theyr aduantage. They were thenne moo men and better armed than they had ben to fore, they were in counseyl, and therle of flaundres wold that noman shold enterprise the batayl but he, but he toke mo men with hym than he dyde tofore. Buymont cam after with as many as he myght haue. Therle of flaundres hasted hym & surprised the Turkes in a valeye strayt, in suche wyse that they myght not renne hether ne theder for to shote, but were constreyned to deffende them strongly with theyr swerdes & maces, whiche was not sure for them, by cause whan oure meyne discharged on them they myght not susteyne it, but fledde anon. Oure men folowed them in hewyng & sleyng them, and ouerthrewe many of them; they wanne horses, mules, armoures & robes grete plente, and after retorned in to the hoost with grete victorye and grete gayne. Grete ioye was made thenne in thoost whan they were comen. Alle they were refresshyd & alleged of their meseases that they had longe suffred. They had vytaylles resonable a certeyn tyme, but it endured not longe that whiche they had brought with them.

How a grete rowte of cristen men were in this tyme slayn by the Turkes bytwene fynemyne & Terme, capitulo lxxxxvj

IN this tyme cam tydynges fro Romane that doubled theyr sorow and anguysshis & theyr mesease doubled. It was sayd, and trouth it was, that an hye noble man & puyssaunt of Denmarke, named Guennes, of moch fayr beaulte & of good maners, herd say that the barons of fraunce and the valyaunt men of that londe were goon in pylgremage ouer the see for to make warre to the Sarasyns. This noble man to fore named, whiche had a valyaunt herte and hye, had grete wylle for to goo after them. He toke of his fader certeyn good, and ledde with hym wel v C knyghtes and other men yong and wel armed. He hasted moche for to ouertake thoost of the frensshemen, but he myght not ouertake them, ffor he cam ouer late, & had none in his companye sauf men of his countrey. He cam by Constantinoble, where themperour dyde to hym honour, & after he wente to Nycene with alle his companye & lodged hym bytwene two cytees; that one was named fynemyne, & that other Terme. There they dyde not as they ought to doo, by cause they were in the londe of theyr enemyes, but they assured them ouermoche, in suche wyse that on a nyght a grete partye of the Turkes that had espyed them smote in sodanly on them & began to slee them in theyr beddes. Neuer-

theles somme ther were that apperceyued them and ran to theyr armes, & cam ayenst the Turkes & sold theyr lyf dere. But in thende they were alle slayn, & none escaped of alle thoost except a thre or foure atte moste.

How the vntrew Greek Latyns departed fraudelously fro the hoost, and other moo by thensample of hym, capitulo lxxxxvij

LATYNS, this disloyal Greek of whom we haue spoken to fore, whom themperour had delyuerd to oure peple, for to lede & conduyte them, had foynously taken heede of the gouernaunce of thoost vnto this day, and of the rewle of the barons, and alway peyned hym for to deceyue them alle the maners that he myght. Now apperceeued he wel, that thaffayres of thooste were not in good poynt, ne in good disposicion, and doubted moche, for he was ful of cowardyse, & thought the pylgryms shold somme day be surprised of the Turkes of the toun, and shold alle be slayn. Therfor he spak secretely to one and other, and counseylled them to leue the siege, and that al thooste shold departe in to the cytees that our men helde vnto the newe tyme; ffor it was certayn, he sayde, that themperour had sente for the grettest hooste that he myght assemble, for to come and socoure them as sone as he myght fynde grasse on the erthe for the horses. And he hym self, by cause he loued the werke of oure lord with the noble men that he had, wold enterprise vpon hym for the comyn prouffyt a grete trauayll,

and he hym selfe wold goo dylygently to themperour for to haste hym with his hoost & alle the vytaylle that he myght fynde, & to make hym come.

DANY of the barons knewe vpon this poynt his falsenes, and apperceyued that he sought manere by this waye for to flee, and byleuyd hym not, but acorded that he shold goo his waye. He made semblaunt for to retourne and come sone ageyn, & left his pauyllons and som of his men to whom pereaduenture he had sayd that they shold folowe and come after, or ellys that he ne raught what myght come of them. Thus departed he whom the deuyl had brought, and lad hym away agayn; ffor by the wordes that he had sowen, and by thensample of his departyng, began many men to departe fro thoost, and toke no regarde to theyr auowe ne to the oth that they had promysed, but wente secretly one after another. The famyne was moche grete in thooste; the barons coude fynde no remedye ne counseyl therfore. Trouth it was they sente ofte two and two of the grettest lordes with grete companye of men for to pourchasse vytaylles. They wente moch surely in the landes of theyr enemyes right deep and ferre, and sleyng many of them that wold haue deffended theyr passage, but vytaylles brought they none; ffor the Turkes of the contre, that had apperceyued that oure peple wente for to seche vytalles, had do ledde away alle theyr beestes & theyr vytaylles vnto the montaynes and desert places where none myght come, and somme had they hydde in the wodes and caues vnder the erthe, whiche our men coude not fynde.

How the prelates of the hoost counseylled to doo penaunce for tappese god, & of thordenaunces that were made teschewe synne, capitulo lxxxxviij

HAMYNE, mortalyte, and many other perillis cessed not to renne on the peple of oure lorde. The noble and wyse men of thooste that were trewe, good, and relygyous, as the bisshop of Puy, that was legate for our holy fader the pope, and other, spak to gydre thenne, and sayd it was moche to drede and doubte that our lord were angry with his pylgryms for their synnes. Therfor they aduysed that they wold speke with the barons for to make peas and acorde vnto our lord. And was ordeyned by the consentement of alle them of thoost, that they shold faste in prayers and in penaunce for to crye mercy vnto our lord by the space of iij dayes, to thende that he wold pardone theyr trespaces and beholde them in pyte. This was don with grete wepyng and wayllynges of herte. After this they commanded that alle the comyn wymmen of euil lyf shold be voyded and cast out of thoost, & was cryed thurgh out alle the hooste, that who that after that were taken in adultery or in fornycacion shold haue his heed smeton of. Incontinent the droncardys of the tauernes, the players of dyse, and the grete othes, were deffended vpon the same payne, fals mesures & thefte, alle suche thynges were commaunded to be lefte and eschewed. There were chosen wise men

and trewe, that shold take heed for to punnysshe the malefactours. After thyse ordenaunces & statutes were somme founden culpable in the same, where were so punnysshed therfore that the other were chastysed therby. Whan the peple were amended vnto our lord, the mercy of our lord cam without taryeng on them, ffor the Duc Godeffroy, whiche was all the surete of thoost, and as theyr estandart, had ben longe seke by thoccasion of his hurte, that he had taken in the londe of Pysside by a bere, as it hath be sayd to fore, nygh by lytil Anthyoche, & was now sodenly come to good helthe, wherof alle they of thooste had moche grete ioye, and byleuyd fermely that theyr penaunce & prayers had lengthed his lyf and respyted it.

How Buymont fonde a subtil remydye for to delyuer and purge the hooste of the espyes of the Turkes, capitulo lxxxxix

GRETE renommee was spradd thurgh out al thoryent, and toward the contrees of the south, that ouer grete nombre of peple of the contrees where the sonne goth doun were comen, and had besieged the noble cyte of Anthyoche. Hit was a grete thyng in trouth, but the tydynges were moche more gretter without comparyson. Euerych of the puyssaunt lordes of that countrees & londes had sente theyr espyes in to the hoost, and ther were so many that they cessed not to come and goo, & continuelly, and vnnethe myght ony thyng be don or sayd in thooste ne in the lodgys, but that it was anon knowen in the

paynemye. It was a light & easy thyng for them to be with our peple in thost. Ther were of the Turkes that coud speke Greek, & the langage of Ermenye, and toke thabyte of the Surreyens, of Grekes, & of them of Hermeny. Ther were many of suche maner of peple.

THE barons toke counseyl emong them how they myght voyde & purge thoost of this pestelence of espyes, ffor they helde them in grete paryll and grete daunger, that theyr couyne and purpoos shold be knowen in the londes of theyr enemyes, and it was no light thynge to knowe them that were suche espyes. Emonge alle other thynges they coude fynde none other remedye, but to holde theyr counseyl secrete, and fro than forthon say lasse to the peple than they were wont to doo. Buymont, whyche was of moche grete wytte and hye herte, spak to the barons, and sayd in this manere: fayr lordes, I praye you that ye wil late me cheuysshe with this matere, ffor I haue remembryd how we shal be delyuerd of this peryl, wherfor, I praye you, give to me the charge therof. The barons helde Buymont for a moche wyseman, and prudent, & gladly sette the charge therof on hym, and departed fro the counseyll.

BUYMONT forgate not this that he had promysed. Whan tyme of soupper cam he disposed & ordeyned hym for to souppe. He made the knyghtes of his contre to take out somme Turkes that he had in prison,

and made theyr throtes to be cutte, and after smote them in pyeces and arrayed them for to be rosted. Thenne began they to demaunde what he wold doo. Thenne Buymont sayd to his men, & bad his men also to saye to other, that alle the barons had thus ordeyned & sworn, that alle the espyes that myght be taken in thost shold be rosted and seruyd at the tables of the barons, and the barons shold ete them by their oth.

THYSE tidynges were anon spred thurghout thoost, that suche iustyce was don in the lodgys of Buymont. Alle men ran theder for to see this merueylle. The Turkes them self that were comen in to thoost for to espye, were moche affrayed, and euerych of them thought longe or he was departed fro the lodgys, by cause they doubted that they shold be seruid in lyke wyse. Aftir whan they were retorned home to their lordes that had sent them, they sayd to them, and tolde al aboute the countrey that suche men as were come for tassiege Anthyoche suffred moche mesease, & were harder ayenst trauyall and laboure than stone or yron. Of cruelte they passed alle beres and lyons, ffor the wylde beestes ete men alle rawe, but thyse men roste them afore, & after deuoure them. This tydynge was in suche wyse knowen & publysshyd in alle paynemye, that after the soudan and the grete admyrals myght neuer fynde man wolde come and espye the hoost. They had were in the cyte assyeged were so effrayed and had so grete hydour of this that fro that tyme afterward the counseyl of

the barons was better kept and more secretely than it was to fore.

How the calephe of Egypt sente his messagers with grete yeftes vnto our hoost, capitulo c

AMONG other mescreaunts grete lordes & prynces, the caliphe of Egipte was the moost myghty of men & moost ryche of goodes; he sente his messagers vnto the barons that were in thoost. And I shal saye how, & by what occasion, grete hate and moche fiers hath ben bytwene the Turkes of thoryent and the Turkes of Egypte, and hath be of auncyent and long tyme, by cause they discorde in theyr creaunce and mysbyleue, and eche sayd to other and yet doo that they be fals Sarasyns, as I haue sayd to fore in the begynnyng of this book, and therfore they ben ofte in warre. Somtyme one partye is aboue, and another tyme that other. In the tyme that our peple were tofore Anthyoche, this caliphe of whom I speke now, helde all the londe of Egypte vnto the cyte of Sureye, whiche conteyneth wel xxx iourneyes long. The soudan of Perse, a lytyl tofore that oure peple cam, had conquerd the toun of Anthyoche, whiche is by the royame of Egypte, & alle the londe entierly vnto the braas of seynt George, as I haue sayd to fore. Now had the calyphe of Egipte in moche suspection the sowdan of Perse, and moche plesyd hym his destruction and dommage, & had moche ioye that Solyman had lost Nycene, whiche

Solyman was neuew to the sayd soudan, & was so enfebled of his men, and also he was plesyd that our cristen peple had besieged the cyte of Anthyoche. Therfor he sente good messagers to speke to them, whiche brought right grete yeftes, and moche ryche presentes yf they wold receyue them, and they sayde that the caliphe was redy for to gyue to them socoure and ayde right largely of men, of good and of vytayll, and prayd them moche derely that they wold mayntene and contenue theyr siege. The barons of our hoost receyued the noble men that were comen and sent from hym honorably, and made them to soiourne with them, and they that were wyse knewe anon the wytte and vygour of our barons, and begonne to haue moche grete doubte and suspection that our peple were so valyaunt, and that yet they sholde do grete dommage in theyr londe, so that they deuysed in this thynge as ye shal nowe here in redyng hoolly this book.

How Ancean, the lord of Anthyoche, & his barons sente vnto the Turkes, theyr neyghbours, for to demaunde socours, capitulo cj

THE lord of Anthyoche and the other grete and noble men of the toun, seyng that our men suffred so moche famyne & mesease, as we haue sayd to fore, & fore alle thyse thynges wold in no wyse leue theyr siege, but shewed by theyr countenaunces that this trauayl greued them not, wherfore they were moche abasshyd. And thenne Ancean, by the counseyl of

his men and them that were moost pryue with hym, sente messagers and lettres to his moost ryche neyghbours, and prayd hym right derely for the honour of theyr lawe, for the sauyng of them self, and for his loue, that they wold come and socoure them without taryeng. And he sente them word in what maner they shold approche secretely to Anthyoche, and after they shold couere them in a busshement nygh by, and there abyde the pylgryms as they had ben acustomed, and at suche tyme as they shold come to the brydge, ffor there shold they sprynge out of the toun, and shold assaylle them. And whyle they were besy in fyghtyng, they that were embusshed shold sodenly breke and come by hynde on them and fyght, and so shold they be enclosed bytwene them within and them without, in suche wyse that none shold escape.

THEY that herd thise lettres & thyse messagers doubted them moche of our peple, wherfor they acorded gladly to this counseyl. They assembled them of Hallape, them of Cezayre, them of Haman, and of other cytees about, tyl they were a grete nombre of peple, and this dyde they the moost secretely they myght, as was to them commaunded, and began to departe and approuche Anthyoche. And cam to a castel named Harant, whiche is fro thens a xiiij myle, there they lodged; and thought on the morne, as sone as the scarmuche shold be bytwene the pylgryms and them of the toun they shold smyte in with theyr spores vppon our men. And oure cristen men were

in grete peryl; but one thyng ther was thenne, that tho & other tymes dyde them grete good, ffor ther were cristen men, Hermyns & Surryens in the cytees of whiche the Turkes were departed, whiche anon lete the barons of thoost haue knowleche how it was concluded bytwene the Turkes. They assembled anon for to take aduys herupon, and was acorded emonge them that alle they that had ony horses to ride on shold be arayed and on horsbak as sone as it were nyght, and that euery man shold drawe in to his bataylle lyke as they were assygned, & after shold yssue out of thoost without ony noyse. The peple on foote shold abyde styll alle, and be redy to deffende the lodgys, yf ony thyng sourded ayenst them.

How oure peple knewe the couyne of the Turkes of thenbussshe that they made, and of their victorye and gayne that they had, capitulo cij.

AS sone as it was nyght they yssued out lyke as they were commaunded; they passed the brydge of shippes, & they were not passyng vij C men on horsbak. They that wente cam to a laye, whiche was bytwene the laye of whiche I haue spoken to fore, and the ryuer named Helle, whiche ben that one fro that other nygh a myle. There they rested them this nyght; theyr enemyes that knewe nothyng of theyr comyng, were this nyght passed the brydge, whiche is upon the ryuer of Helle. In the mornyng, as sone

as our men apperceyued the day, they armed them & made vj bataylles of them: the Turkes had sente by fore their corrours, which cam and sayde that the grete peple cam ayenst them. They sente to fore ij of theyr bataylles, and aftir cam the grete peple. Whan they approuched they were in grete desraye; the archers approuched first, whiche shotte thycke, but oure men smote in with the speres moche asprely in suche wyse that they made them to flee, & chaced them to theyr grete bataylles. There were they in suche a destrayt betwene the ryuer, and the laye that they myght not shote ne flee after theyr customme. There was the medlyng grete and fiers, and the barons and men of armes dyde moche wel. But the Turkes that had lost the maner of fyghtyng myght not deffende them, ne endure the strokes of oure peple, but fledde theyr way al that they myght.

THENNE whan our barons sawe this they began to doo wel, & commaunded that no man shold faygne, but folowe the chaas asprely. The Turkes fledde vnto Hernant; oure men folowed alwey, sleyng and hewyng of heedes and armes, that al the waye that they passed by was sowen with dede men. This chaas endured wel x myle. ¶ The Turkes that were within the castel of Hernant sawe that theyr men cam alle discomfyted, they sette fyere on the castel, and they them self fledde. But the Hermyns and the other cristen men, of whom were many in the castel, recouuerd the fortresse and yelded it to oure men whan they cam. ¶ This day were slayn of the Turkes moo

than ij thousand. They toke v C heedes of them that were best arrayed, and brought with them in signe of vyctorye. They wan there wel a M horses for armes, grete and myghty, wherof they had grete nede. Thus retorned they to theyr lodgys, charged ful of proyes of armures & of dispoylles, makyng grete joye, and thankyng oure lord that had comforted them in theyr meseases.

How the Turkes of Anthyoche sprange out & assayled the lodgys of oure peple, capitulo ciij

THE cytezeyns & habytantes of Anthyoche had herd tydynges how the Turkes, that had ben so discomfyted, were departed and meuyd fro theyr contrees for to come socoure them, therfor they had theyr eres opene to here tydynges of theyr comyng, & were alle armed and redy for to make thassaylle by the brydge alle incontinent whan they shold see them. But whan they sawe that the nyght passed, & that the day cam without hauyng ony knowleche of theyr approuchement, theyr espyes made them certayn that our men were goon on horsbak ayenst them. Therfore they toke herte, & yssued vnto the lodgys, ffor our men were not yet comen agayn in to thoost. They assaylled them moche asprely and harde, in so moche that somme of them that were within the toun saw them; than signed they to their men that they sholde retorne, for they sawe come our men. They entred in to the toun and wente vppon the

toures and vppon the walls for to knowe if they were theyr peple that shold come ❧ And as oure peple approuched the Turkes, they apperceyued that the other that they abode were discomfyted, by cause oure men came ioyously wyth alle theyre despoylles. Thenne aroos the sorow grete thurgh alle the toun. Our men approuched the toun, and dyde do throwe ij C heedes of the Turkes, that they had brought, with engyns in to the cyte for to make them certayn of theyr victorye. And yet, to thende that they shold not forgete theyr sorowe that was entred in to theyr hertes, the other iij C that were lefte they pyght them on stakes at the foote of the walle, and sette there men for to kepe them, by cause they shold be alwey in theyr syght whan they cam to the deffence ❧ The nombre of them that were disconfyted were xxviij M. Thus were somme grete Turkes taken and brought prisonners. This was don in feuerer the vj day, the yere of thyncarnacion of our lord M lxxxxvij.

Of a castel that our men made, of somme pylgryms that arryued at the porte & how they were discomfyted by a busshement of Turkes, capitulo ciiij ❧

ALLE the barons of thoost toke counseyl, and acorded that vpon a territoire, whiche was at the tentes of Buymont, sholde be made a fortresse, which shold be wel garnysshyd with good men of armes, to thende that yf the Turkes made theyr assayllies, as they were acustomed they of this fortresse shold

renne on hem, and this tower was a barbycane of thooste. Like as they had deuysed and ordeyned, so was it made without taryeng, and valyaunt men & hardy were sette in this fortresse largely. Thenne was alle thost assured as they had ben within the walles of a good cyte. The siege had endured thenne v monethes. A shyppe of Genewes cam theder, whiche had brought pylgryms and vytaylles; they aryued at the porte, and sette them in the ryuer of Helle as it falleth in to the see. They had sente ofte messagers in to the hoost, that they sholde fetche them by som of the grete barons, with so good company that they myght be saufly conduyted in to the hoost. They of the toun had thenne apperceyued that messagers wente and cam fro the shippe in to thoost, and sente out men, that slewe somme of them, and therfor durste none goo more without grete companye.

OUR barons had aduysed to make a grete fortresse at thend of the brydge, in a mahommerye that the Turkes had, & wold sette men of armes there for to kepe and deffende thyssue of the brydge yf the Turkes wolde come. But by cause that there were peple yssued out of thoost for to goo to the ship, were chosen somme of the barons whiche shold goo and fetche them, ffor they were peple that were goon for to here tydynges of theyr contrees, & wold haue comen agayn, but they durst not. Therto was chosen Buymont, the erle of Tholouse, Euerard du Puyssat, & therle Garnyer of Grece, whiche also shold conduyte the

messagers of the calyphe vnto the port of the see, and at retornyng shold brynge agayn & conduyte them of thooste. They of Anthyoche herd saye that the sayd barons were departed fro thoost, and descended toward the see, & sent out four M knyghtes of the moost noble that they had, for to lye in a wayte at theyr retornyng. It happed that the fourth day that our men sette them on the way for to retorne, and brought armures and many horses laden with vytaylles and other thynges, and toke none heede of them that laye in a wayte. The Turkes brake sodenly on them and surprised our men at a paas. The erle of Tholouse had the vaward, & Buymont cam after. The crye began moche grete.

THAN the Turkes sawe thyse noble men, they held them al stylle, and began tenseigne the peple on foote, that they shold holde them to gydre. They of the grete affraye that they herde, ffor drede that they had, hydde them in the busshes, and fledde in to the montaynes and woodes, and toke none heed to that they brought. Whan our barons sawe this, they knewe wel that theyr strengthe was not lyke theyrs, and began to come to the lodgys dylygently with as many men as they myght conduyte. The other, that wold not folowe, ne myght not, were alle there slayn. There were slayn wel of men and wymmen to the nombre of iij C. This duryng, tydynges cam to the hoost, that alle they that were comyng were al slayn and put to deth by the Turkes, that had espyed them. Of the barons them self, that conduyted them, was

not knowen whether they were a-lyue or deed. ¶ The duc Godeffroy, that was not ydle, had grete anguysshe in his herte for the peple of our lord that was thus lost, and lete do crye that alle men shold arme them in thoost on peyne of deth, & that none shold abyde be hynde in so grete a werke. Alle assembled, and passed the brygge of the shippis, & they made v bataylles. Robert, duc of Normandye, lad that one; the ij lad therle of flaundres; the thyrd, huon le Mayne; the forth, Eustace, brother to the duc Godefroy; and the duc hym self had the fyfthe. ¶ Whan they were all ordeyned, the duc called them, and, alle they heryng, sayde in this manere.

HYR lordes, yf it be trouthe thus as the tydynges renne, that for oure synnes thise cruel houndes and fals haue slayn so valyaunt men and of so grete counseyl, whom ye sente to the see side, and with them be perysshed also our felows whom they shold haue conduyted, I see not but of two wayes that one. Or that we deye with them as good cristen men in this world, and certeyn to receyue the reward of Ihesu Criste, whom we shal serue vnto the deth. Or yf oure lord wyll that oure seruyce be to hym acceptable, that we take vengeaunce on thyse mastyfs, that haue thus enpaired cristiente, & endommaged and destroyed thyse valyaunt men. As for my self, I say to you certaynly I had leuer to deye presently, than to lyue without to be aduenged on them. Now vnderstonde ye what I shal saye to you; me semeth

that thyse Turkes, yf they haue the victorye vpon oure men, as it is sayd, they shal be now mounted in grete pride, and by grete bobaunce for to angre vs wyl come to the cyte, and brynge theyr proyes and fardellys to fore vs. And ye shal wel see that they shal not kepe them wel in ordenaunce, but shal goo folyly; and this shal be grete auantage to vs. Therfore, this is my counseyll, yf it seem good, that we hold vs al redy for to doo the seruyce of oure lord, ffor which we departed oute of oure countrees; late vs haue in hym stedfast hope, ffor he guerdonneth right wel his souldyours. Whan our enemyes shal come to vs, late vs receyue them vygorously with glayues, speres and swerdes. Late euerych of you remembre wel in his herte of the wronge and shame that they haue don oure lord, and to oure self.

THIS worde that the duc sayde, was wel vnderstande of alle, and plesyd them merueyllously well. They began to warne eche other, and somone to doo well, as there they knewe to gydre, and there helde them al redy. And thenne Buymont aryued, & cam emong them, and a lytil whyle after cam therle of Tholouse, and they tolde to them of theyr mesauenture. They had moche grete ioye of their comyng, & that they were escaped; they moche comforted eche other, and after sayd to them the counseyl of duc Godeffroy. They acorded therto, and sayd that it ought so to be doo; and so abode there alle they to gydre. Ancean, captayn of the cyte, by thyse semblaunces that he sawe, knewe that his peple had discomfyted the

oures. Moche doubted he of theyr comyng agayn, by cause that our men were yssued ayenst them; therfore he dyde do crye in the toun, that alle men shold arme them & come to the yate of the brydge, for to be redy in araye for to socoure their peple, yf nede were. Our men had sente their espyes and theyr courreurs in dyuerse partyes, for tenquyre & knowe whan the Turkes shold come, and fro what parte.

Of a bataylle, where our men auenged them of the Turkes, and of a stroke that duc Godeffroy gaf in this bataylle, capitulo Cv

IT was not longe after, but whyles as they taryed there & had theyr hertes desyryng to doo prowesse, yf they had tyme and place, that theyr messagers arryued alle rennyng, whiche tolde to them that the Turkes were nygh. They began to recomande them self to oure lord, and wente forward in theyr bataylles like as they were ordeyned. Whan they sawe tyme and place, they smote theyr hors with theyr spores, and cam to so fiersly that the Turkes were al abasshed. Thenne they began to smyte asprely on the right syde and lyft, & flewe in to the presse in suche wyse that euery man wold be the best & moost valyaunt, in so moche that they gaf to theyr enemyes no leyser to aduyse them what they shold do. They myght not endure the grete strength of our men, but wold haue drawen toward the brydge, but the duc Godeffroy that moche knewe of suche thynges, was pourueyed therof to fore, and had taken a lytil territoire,

whiche was ayenst the brydge, & there he helde hym in his bataylle. Alle the Turkes that they chaced toward hym he slewe them, or he made retorne ayenst them fro whens they cam, where they slewe them alle and hewe them.

THE erle of flaundres dyde right wel this day, as a good, valyaunt & hardy man in armes. The duc of Normandye brak the presse, that no Turke durst approche hym. The erle of Tholouse hym self wold auenge this that they had made hym to spore his hors the daye to fore. Huon le Mayne forgate not to shewe of what lygnage he was, & of what contre, but semed that he dyde to his enemyes that alle the werke and charge had ben his. Thenne Eustace, brother of duc Godeffroy, Bawdwyn erle of Henawd, Hughe therle of Seynt Poul, and alle the other barons, knyghtes and noble men in theyr countrees, dyde merueylles of armes. Ther was neuer man lyuyng that sawe ony werk better enterprised and more valyauntly achyeuyd, and that communely of alle.

ENCEAN sawe this bataylle so grete, & did his peple to yssue out, & for to gyue them herte and courage, & to put awaye thesperaunce of theyr flyght, commaunded to shette the yates after them. They cam pryckyng ayenst oure men, & wold haue made theyrs retorne discomfyted, but the affraye & the drede was so grete in them that they neuer made semblaunt therto. They them self, that frely cam on, whan they sawe the prowesse

of our men, and felt the grete strokes that they gaf, torned theyr backes with the other, ne neuer made grete resistence. There was the fyghtyng grete, and merueyllous betyng doun of the Turkes, that men myght not but with grete payne passe. Ther was so grete noyse, so grete crye, and so terryble neyhyng of horses oueral, that a man shold not haue herd thondre. They that had made the yates to be shette after them, did many this day to lese theyr lyues. The wyues of the Turkes, the maydens and feble peple of the toun, were vpon the walles and tourettes, where they sawe theyr peple torne to meschyef and to destruction: ye may wel thynke that they had grete sorowe, wepynge, & moche crye and noyse. Wel cursed they that tyme, that they so longe had lyued that they shold see suche meschyef happen to them. Ancean sawe that he loste alle his men, and had none hope for to recoure them, and commaunded that that yate shold be opened for to receyue into the toun them that were lefte. Whan the Turkes sawe the yate opene, they had so grete wylle to entre in to the toun, that vpon the brydge they pressyd so euyl for haste, that they fylle in to the water of them grete plente.

THE duc Godeffroye, that al that day had so wel don, and whan it cam for to departe to fore the bridge, he gaf a strook moche valyaunt, and suche one that it shal perpetually and euermore be spoken of in wele & in honour, ffor I trowe ther happed neuer none suche to fore, ne neuer shal happen here after. There were this

daye many heedes smeton of, armes, & sholders, at one stroke. He wel apperceyued one of his enemyes, whiche helde hym nygh to Godeffroy, and auaunced hym ofte, and peyned to greue hym. The valyaunte duc smote hym with hys swerde by suche myght and vertue that he smote hym in two pyeces in the myddle, in suche wyse that the ouerste parte of hym fyl to the ground, & that other parte abode styll syttyng on the hors, whiche entred in to the cyte with the other. And knowe ye certaynly that this sayd Turke was armed with a good hauberk & moche stronge. Alle they that sawe this merueylle were gretely abasshed; & the Turkes them self had grete fere & drede. O mercyful God, what myght and strengthe gyuest thou to thy seruauntes, that haue their fayth and truste in the! Suche a stroke hath not be herd of to fore this tyme.

THAT same daye they of Anthyoche loste moo than two thousand men, and yf the nyght had not comen so sone on, they shold haue ben so enfebled of men, that with payne shold they haue conne holden and kept the toune ayenst oure men. It semed well that at the brydge were many Turkes slayn, ffor it was thycke there of deede bodyes. The ryuer that descended to the see, was alle blody vnto the see. Somme cristen men of the londe yssued oute of the toun, and cam to our peple, that told them that xij grete admyrals had the Turkes loste in the bataylle, for whom they were ouermoche sorouful; for they were so endommaged, that neuer in theyr lyf shold they be therof restored.

How the cristen men thanked oure lord of this vyctorye, & made a castel in theyr mahommerye, where they fonde grete gayne, capitulo cvj

THE next day, whan the daye was wel cleer, the barons assembled alle, for humbly to thancke our lord of the victorye that he had gyuen to them; and after spak of the comyn besynes. Comynly was deuysed and acorded of alle that there shold be made a tour, as they had enterprysed, at thende of the brydge, for to take away the ysshue fro them of the toun, and for to kepe and warante oure peple whan they ranne to fore it. There had the Turkes buryed by nyght the dede men that had ben slayn in the bataylle to fore. Whan the peple afoote knewe this, they ranne and there vnburyed them, & toke them out of theyr sepultures and graues, and toke and bare away gold, syluere, and theyr robes, the whiche they had buryed with them in their sepultures, after theyr custommе. They of the toun had moche sorowe, by cause they sawe to fore theyr eyen the corses taken vp of theyr frendes, whiche they had buryed with grete costes & despenses, and it displesyd them moche that the nombre of theyr deed men shold be knowen, whom they had supposed to haue kepte secrete. for without them that fylle in the flood or ryuer, & withoute them that were buryed in the toune, and them that were hurt vnto the deth and buryed in the toun, were taken vp oute of theyr graues in the mahomerye a thousand & fyue honderd.

THEY smote of thre honderd heedes, and sente them to themperour, for to late hym haue certayn tydynges of the bataylle that they had ayenst the Turkes. The messagers of the calyphe of Egypte were not yet departed fro thens, & whan they sawe this, they were ioyous of the deth of theyr enemyes, but they were alway after afeerd, and dred oure peple. There were many of oure owne men that had fledde in to the woodes & montaygnes, whiche after retourned in to thooste; there cam many in to thooste that men supposed had ben deed. The barons commanded that the fortresse shold be made, and adressyd moch hye & stronge, hastely. It was made of such stones as they drewe out of the tombes and sepultures of the Turkes; and after, the barons began to aduyse to whom the kepyng of this tour shold be delyuerd, which was fayr and strong; and to fore was made a dyche, moche depe. Ther were barons ynowe whiche excused them by many reasons why they myght not kepe it; but the valyant erle of Tholouse prouffred hym self, & prayde that it myght be delyuerd to hym ffor to gouerne, ffor by the grace of god he shold kepe it wel.

ALLE the barons coude hym moche good thancke, and by this recouerd he the grace and loue of the comyn peple, whiche he had alle loste; ffor fro the somer to fore, by thoccasion of a sekenes & maladye that he had, he had don none auauncement of ony werkes and nedes of the

hoost. Euerych of the other barons had don his power, but he dyde right nought, therfore thempyre coude hym thank, ffor it was supposed that he was the rychest. But for ten treprise of this thyng, they sayd wel alle that he was not a-ferd, ne euyll. And on that other syde, yet he dyde more, ffor he leyd out v C marck weyght of syluer in the hand of the bisshop of Puy & other good men, for to helpe to restore the dommages of the horses that the poure men had taken in the batayll. There were many after that were the more hardy for to goo ayenst their enemyes, for hope to haue & recouere theyr horses. for thyse thynges were therle of Tholouse moche louyd & preysed, in so moche that they callyd hym fader and wardeyn of thoost.

Of a fortresse that Tancre made ouer the ryuer and deffended it valyauntly, capitulo C vij

IN thys newe fortresse of the brydge therle of Tholouse sette thyrin v C men of armes, hardy and valyaunt knyghtes & other, & by cause of this fortresse the yssuyng and goyng out of them of the toun was deffended. Oure men thenne wente surely in the countre. The Turkes myght not yssue but by the west yate, whiche is bytwene the foot of the hylle and the ryuer of Helle. And this yssue myght not moche greue ne hurte oure men, ffor alle the lodgys were ouer the ryuer; but alway by that way cam victayllles & fresshe metes to them of the toun, & thus

they were not ynowgh constreyned by so moche as they had this ysſue. The barons assembled and counseylled how they myght take this waye fro them. They acorded wel that this myght not be, but yf ther were a fortresse made ouer the ryuer whiche muste be delyuerd to one of the barons for to kepe. They acorded well alle that the fortresse shold be made, but none proferd ne sayde that he wold kepe it. Many of them sayde that Tancre was ryght propyce to this thynge, but he excused hym, and sayd that he was ouer poure for tendure and bere so grete dispence. Therle of Tholouse sterte forth to fore and gaf to hym an C marck of syluer for to make it with, and it was ordeyned that he shold haue euery moneth xl marke of the comune.

TANCRE, whiche was moche valyaunt & wyse, dyde do make this tour in a lytil tertre nygh ynowgh to the gate, and after receyued it in to his warde and kepyng. And god gaf to hym so moche worship that he loste nothynge, but kepte it al hool vnto the ende of the siege. In the syde bynethe by the ryuer was a moche fayr playne in whiche habounded many fayr pastures, and grete plente of trees a iij or four myle fro the cyte. They of the toun by cause they had not pastures ynowgh, they had sente grete plente of theyr horses and mounture in to that place. Whan they of thoost apperceyued it, they assembled knyghtes ynowe and other valyaunt men of armes, and wente theder, but not by the right way, but by pathes and hyd wayes, so longe that they assayled them that

kept them and slewe them. They brought in to the hoost ij M horses for men of armes, grete, gente, and fayr, besyde the mules & other beestes, wherof they had largely. Of this gayne had they grete ioye, ffor they had of nothyng so grete nede in thoost as of horses, ffor they had ben mynnysshed moche & lassed in the bataylle, & many deyed that tyme for hungre and mesease.

How thenne the Turkes of the toun began to haue mesease and sorowe, and our peple ease, capitulo Cviij

WHAN the cyte was thus on alle sydes assyeged that the Turkes myght not yssue oute, they began within to haue mesease, ffor theyr horsses had not vytaylle ynowgh, wherof it happed that they myght not helpe them in theyr nede, ffresshe mete ffaylled them, whiche greuyd them moche. Oure men had bandon to goo vnto the porte of the see, by whiche they had not so moche to suffre as they had endured all the wynter, ffor the pryme temps & swete tyme was come in suche wyse that shippes myght goo & come by the see, whiche brought vytaylles ynowgh. There were many of oure peple that had soiourned all the wynter in the townes, whiche thenne cam agayne in to thooste alle fressh and wel armed. Bawdwyn the brother of duc Godeffroy, of whom ye haue wel herd speke to fore, whiche had so moche rychesse, had herd tydynges that the barons had

suffred many meseases in thoost, & sente to them alle grete yeftes and presentes, not only to the grete prynces, but also to the moyen peple, & to the leste gaf he also ynowgh of his owen, wherfor he had the loue and grace of alle this companye. He gaf to his brother the duc alle thyssues of his londe that he had on this syde the ryuer of Eufrates, with which he gaf to hym the cyte of Torbesel and the contre ther about, wherin was moche whete, wyne and oyle. And yet aboue al this he gaf to hym M besauntes.

AND there was a noble man of Hermonye whyche was named Nycose, which was wel acqueynted with Bawdwyn, and for his loue sente vnto duc Godeffroy a pauyllon, the moost fayr and moost ryche that myght o/wher be seen; it was of ouer straunge facion and meruellously grete ❧ But whan his messagers bare it in to the hooste, one Pancrace, a moche ryche man of Hermonye, of whom I haue spoken to fore, dyde do espye them by the waye, and dyd to take it from them. And after sente the pauyllon to Buymont, and was presented to hym in his name ❧ Whan the seruauntes of Nycose cam to duc Godeffroy, and had told hym alle this that Pancrace had don to hym, he had therof grete desdayne. Syth he toke with hym the erle of flaundres, to whom he had more loue and acqueyntaunce than to ony other of the barons, and wente to Buymont and demaunded his pauyllon that was gyuen to hym. Buymont answerd that therof he knewe not; that it was longyng to hym, ffor a noble man of the countre had gyuen it to hym. But

whan he knewe that the duc wold not suffre it, by hys curtosye, and atte prayer and requeste of the other barons, he rendred and delyuerd to him his sayd pauyllon, to thende that no noyse shold sourde ne arryse betwene them and myght lette the werke of oure lord. Thus were they good frendes. Many men merueylled them how that so valyaunt a man as the duc Godeffroy was, in whom was no thing founden to be reprehended, was so meuyd ayenst so hye and noble a man for so lytil a thyng as was a pauyllon. Ne I can see none other reason, but that a noble herte maye not suffre shame, and it was late hym vnderstande that it shold be to hym a grete shame, and also it shold be ayenst his honour yf he suffred it to be taken away fro hym: ffor couetyse he dyde it not.

How the erle Estyeuen of Chartres and of Bloys fledde fro the hooste shamefully, capitulo Cix.

THE renommee sourded moche grete, and grewe euery day how the soudan of Perse, whiche was so ryche and puyssaunt, by the requeste of them of Anthyoche had doo sumone his peple of alle his power for to come socoure this cyte: he had assembled merueyllous grete peple. For the tydynge cam not only to them of thoost, but it was sayd of many men that yssued out of the cite for to come in to thoost, as Hermyens & Surryens, whiche were cristen. Wherof it happed that Steuen, therle of Chartres and of

Bloys, whiche was so noble, puyssaunt, and wyse, that for his wysdom the other barons of thooste named hym the fader of counseyl, made hym self seke as was sayd. ¶ He toke leue of his frendes, by cause he sayde he wold goo in to Allexandrye the lasse, whiche was nyghe to the porte, and wolde abyde there til he were deed or ellys hool. Thus he departed and lad away with hym grete good, and with hym departed iiij M men, whiche were of his companye and of his countreye.

He wente strayte in to Allexandrye the lasse, and there helde hym to thende that yf our peple had vyctorye of the bataylle whiche they awayted dayly, he wold retorne in to thoost as guarysshyd and hool of his maladye; & yf it had meshapped them, anon he wold haue entred in to shippis whiche were all redy for to retourne in to his country. ¶ Of this thynge all the barons of thooste were so abasshed & angry that they wepte hoote teeris, for pyte that they had of so hye and noble man that toke none hede to his gentilnesse, to his wytte, ne to the worshyppe that men dyde to hym, but departed so euyl in poynt that many men had no shame to withdrawe them after hym. ¶ Thus departed many. The barons had counseyl to gydre, and dyde do crye thurgh the hooste, that noman shold be so hardy to departe withoute leue, ffor yf ony went they shold be holden for murdyrere, and iustyce shold be doon to suche men. By this ordenaunce for teschewe the payne and for to kepe theyr honour they held them in peas in thoost, & obeyed

alle in pees in the hooste, and obeyed debonayrly to the barons of thooste, as monkes or cloystrers to theyr abbot, withoute departyng ony of theyr company.

How a cristen man, Emyrferius, whiche was in Anthyoche, acqueynted hym with Buymont, capitulo Cx.

ANTHYOCH, this holy cyte that I haue spoken of to fore, was conuerted by the prechyng of seynt Peter the appostle, alleway it helde wel this fayth, and yet holdeth certaynlye, god be thanked. Whan the disloyalte and falsenes of Mahomet ran thurgh thoryent this cyte wold neuer receyue his lawe, & whan the myghty men of the countre wold constrayne them by force to this euyl lawe, they deffended them well ayenst alle suche. Wherof it happed that whan the deuyl had sette this false byleue thurgh alle the londe of Perse vnto the braas of seynt George, and fro Inde vnto Spayne, this cyte abode alway in the fayth of the trouthe of Ihesu Criste. Trouthe it is that fourten yere to fore that our peple cam theder, the grete soudan of Perse had conquerd alle the londes vnto Anthyoche, and by cause they were not myghty to holde it ony lenger, they yelded it vnder the puyssaunce of this grete man. Thenne after cam oure men for tassiege it.

ALMOST alle they of the toune helde the fayth of oure lord, but withoute faylle they had no power ne no seygnorye in the cyte, ffor they medled of nothynge sauf theyr craftes and theyr merchaundyses to wyn theyr breed. The Turkes had the bayllies, and wente to armes whan it was nede. Ther was none so hardy of the cristen men that durst arme hym, & specially syth our peple cam to fore the toun, the cristen men that were therin were holden suspect that they durst not yssue ne goo oute of theyr howses. There were many of suche cristen men that were of grete lygnage, to whom was don moche shame. There was a lygnage of noble men that were Heremyens; they were named in theyr langage, Beni ferra, that is to saye the sones of haubergyers. And fro certeyn of the same langage were descended theyr lygnages, and yet ben ther somme that make hauberks; they had a toure whiche was named the tour of the two sustres.

IN this toure were ij bretheren that were lordes of this lygnage. The oldest had to name Emerferyus, a moche sage & prudent man; acqueynted he was and pryue with the lord of the toun, in suche wyse that he had made hym his notarye within the palays. This man herde men speke moche good of Buymont fro the begynnynge of the siege, & wel vnderstode by the comyn renomee that he was a wyse man and trewe, of grete herte and enterpryse. Therfore he sente to hym his

messager, & acqueynted with hym moche pruyely, and lete hym knowe alle the beyng and state of the cyte, and the purpoos of the Turkes; but they were bothe two wysemen, therfor coude they wel couere theyr counntenannces. There were but few peple about Buymont that knewe hym.

Of somme deuyses that the sayd Emyrferius sente to Buymont, & in what maner he acorded to delyuer to hym the toun, capitulo Cxj

SEUEN monethes had tho endured the siege to fore the toun. Buymont, the wyse & subtil, had many tymes essayed his frende of the toun how the cyte myght be yolden to the cristen men ❧ So ofte he sente to hym by his sone that sayd thus to hym in this manere ❧ fayre swete syre, I trowe certaynly that our lord Ihesu Criste wold that I had this acqueyntaunce with you and this loue; ffor euer syth I haue be acqueynted with you, myn herte neuer rested to drawe and acorde euery day more and more in your bonnte, & your maner plesyd me moche. I haue veray ferme and fast hope that I and the myne shal be yet in tyme comynge moche holpen and honoured by you of this thynge that ye haue discouerid to me, of which I haue ben merueyllously pensyf, syth I haue herde of it. I haue moch counterpeysed the wayes of that one side & of that other, ffor I thynke wel certeynly that yf I may delyuer my countrey fro the peple that ben enemyes of oure lord, and rendre

and delyuere it to the seygnorye of my fayth, I shal haue grete guerdon of oure lord & grete honour in the world. But yf it so happed thus, that thys werke were descouered that I haue enterprised, to fore er it cam to an ende or conclusion, I shold be delyuerd to alle the tormentes of the world, and alle my lygnage effaced and destroyed, that it neuer shold be spoken of after. And neuertheles many thynges be put in aduenture, therfore I wylle discouere to you alle my herte, as to hym that I hold for a trewe frende. Yf the barons that be in your companye wylle graunte, as trewe men as they be, that this cyte shal be youres for euermore & your heyres yf it may be conquerd, I shal put me in aduenture so that I shal delyuer to you this tour that I holde, whiche is moche strong & wel garnysshed. And this I shal doo for goddes loue & youres. But yf they entende that euery men shal haue his part, as of thyng goten by warre, therupon wyll I not laboure ne doo payne, ffor I wote neuer to what ende it shold come. Therfor I pray you, fayr swete syre & trew frende, that ye put you in deuoyr and payne that this toun be youres, not for couetyse, but for the prouffyt of the cyte cristen, and I promyse to you that the day that I shal knowe that it shal be thus graunted to you, I shal delyuer to you the entree of the toun. Alwaye one thynge I saye to you for certayn, that yf it be not mayde within short tyme that ye shal neuer day of the world recouere it, ffor euery day come to the lord of this toun lettres and messagers certefyeng that they that come to socoure the toun ben about the ryuer of Eufrates, whiche is not ferre, and they ben

wel a ij C M men of armes. Yf they come an you on that one syde, and they of the cyte on that other, ye may not suffre ne withstande them, but ye shal be alle deed or taken. And therfore take ye here vpon hasty counseyl.

How Buymont discouerd this thynge to duc Godeffroy, to Huon the Mayne, to the duc of Normandye, and to therle of flaundres, capitulo Cxij

ERO the day that Buymont had herde thys, he began to enquyre moch subtylly and examyne the hertes of the barouns, and demaunded them otherwhyle what they wold doo with this cyte yf it were taken. Of the answere somme of them thought that it was fer of. Therfore taryed Buymont to discouere his herte & his thought till he sawe better his poynt and tyme, neuertheless he drewe a part duc Godefroy, Huon de Mayne, the duc of Normandye, and therle of flaundres. To them he sayde that he trusted so moche in oure lord, that yf the cyte myght be graunted to hym it myght be wel in short tyme conquerd. They acorded it and moche preysed in theyr courage the wytte of this man that had in wylle to accomplysshe so grete a thynge. By thaccord of them this thyng was discouerd to therle of Tholouse, he ansuerd that he wold neuer, yf the cyte were taken, gyue his parte to another man. The barons prayd hym moche, but he wold not consente therto for nothynge. Therfor the thynge was in suche

daunger, that almost the thynge was alle loste, ffor Buymont put not the payne, ne his frende of the toun wold not but yf the toun shold be alle his. Neuertheles for alle this, Buymont sente to hym ofte grete yeftes for to kepe hym in acqueyntaunce and in the loue that was begonne bytwene them.

Of the grete socours that the soudan of Perse had sente to them of Anthyoche, and how Corbagat assyeged Rages, capitulo Cxiij

IN the whyle that thyse thynges ran thus in Anthyoche, the messagers that fro Ancean were gon to the soudan of Perse for to demmaunde ayde, were retorned as they that had wel don theyr thynges. for that grete prynce, atte requeste of them of Anthyoche, and atte prayer of his men, had enterprysed to efface and destroye alle our pylgryms that theder were comen. And therfore he sente theder grete plente of Turkes and of Cordyns in to this countre, and had delyuerd all the seygnorye & gouernaunce of the hooste to one his acqueynted, ffor he trusted moche in his wytte, in his loyalte, and in his prowesse. This man was named Corbagat; he commaunded alle men to obeye to hym; he sente lettres pendantes oueral his londes, & commaunded that they shold be delyuerd ouer all, that where he shold lede them that they shold goo, & alle that he commaunded them they shold doo without contradiction.

He departed fro his countrey with alle his peple and his power, he passed so ferre that he cam in to the countre of Rages. Ther was told to hym that one of the barons of fraunce held the cyte of Rages whiche he had conquerd, & alle the londe aboute it. He had therof grete despyte, and sayd to fore and er he passed the ryuer of Eufrates, he shold take the toun and destroye alle the frensshemen that he shold fynde within. Bawdwyn was not of lityl courage, and had wel herd tydynges of this peple. He had wel garnysshed his cyte with armes, vytaylles, and noble men, and doubted but lytil his comynge, ne the menaces, ne the grete wordes of thyse peple that were reported to hym Corbagat commaunded that the cyte of Rages shold be assieged, & after dyde do crye to assault; grete peyne dyde they, wenyng to haue taken the cyte and alle them that were therin. But they that kept the toun deffended them moche wel, in suche wyse that they endommaged moche them that were without, & they within loste no thynge. They helde them about the toun thre wekes; he had no worshyp ne prouffyt there.

At laste the grete and noble men of thooste cam to hym, and sayde and counseylled hym to departe fro the siege, ffor he ought fyrst do that thyng for whiche he cam, that is to saye, for to take & slee alle them that were to fore Anthyoche. And after in his retornyng in a morowtyde he shold haue the toun of Rages,

and Bawdwyn, yf he were not deed, they shold take and bynde hym, and presente hym to theyr lord as a sheep or a moton. He acorded to theyr counseyl and departed fro thens, but allewaye the taryeng that the Turkes had made sauyd oure pylgryms, ffor the mater was not so acorded bytwene Buymont & his frende, that yf they had comen strayt to Anthyoche, oure men had ben in ouer grete meschyef bytwene them that he brought, and the other Turkes that were in the toun.

How our men, beyng aduertysed of the grete hoost of Corbagat, sente somme of theyr knyghtes for to esteme them, & what they reported of that they had seen, capitulo Cxiiij

THE tydynges began strongly to growe of this people that cam, and it was no merueyll yf they were effrayed in the hooste of the pylgryms. The barons assembled in counseyl, & ordeyned by comyn acord, that somme of theyr wysemen that understode them in suche thynges as to esteme peple in the felde shold goo and knowe their couyne. To this were chosen Dreues de Nelle, Clarembault de Venduel, Euerard de Cherysy, & Renaud therle of Toul. They ledde with them other knyghtes, knowen and preuyd in armes. They departed fro thoost so ferre, that they approuched the Turkes, whom they sawe, and folowed them fro fer. Neuertheles they wel apperceyued, that lyke as water renneth in the see, cam

fro alle partes grete rowtes and merueyllous plente of peple in this hooste of Corbagat. Thise noble men wente so ferr that they sawe & knewe alle theyr beyng and strengthe, and syth drewe them to the barons, and sayd to them the trouthe. The barons prayde and deffended them al so dere as they had the werk of oure lord, that they wold not descouere this thyng to the foote men of thoost in no wyse, but kepe it secrete fro them, ffor it shold be grete peryll yf they knewe the trouth that they shold flee away by nyght, and be alle in despayr.

Of the counseyl that our peple toke for to ordeyne theyr nedes whan they knewe the comyng of this right grete hoost, capitulo Cxv

THE barouns toke counseyl, on whom the faites and burthon of this werke laye, how they myght conteyne them in this greuous poynt in whiche they were. Som ther were that gaf counseyl that they shold departe fro the siege, & that somme of them on hors-bak, and they on foote sholde abyde for to kepe that they of the toun shold not mowe ioyne to the other, & somme other the best horsed shold lede of them on foote a grete partye ayenst Corbagat, & fyght ayenst hym. The thyng was in grete doubte, and wyste not how to acorde. Buymont, whan he sawe them so surprised, called the duc Godeffroy, therle of Flaundres, Huon de Mayne, the duc of Normandye, and therle of Tholouse, and syth sayd to them thise wordes.

THYR lordes, I see you in moche grete doubte, and it is no merueyl, ffor the comynge of this puyssaunt man that cometh on vs and bryngeth with hym so grete plente of our enemyes. Ne ye be not yet acorded in what maner ye shal attende, ne what shalle be your countenaunce whan he shal come, ne I can not saye to you as me memeth thyng that by this way may moche auaylle. for yf we yssue all ayenst the Turkes, lyke as some men counseylle, somme in one partye & that other to abyde, as other counseyl, we haue loste our payne and our dispencis in the siege of this toun, ffor as sone as we shal departe fro hens, or alle or half, they that comen shal sende in to the toun grete plente of vytaylles, and fresshe men put in to it. Yf noman abyde at the siege this shal be good for them to do, & yf ther abyde a parte they shal not leue for them. for whan we be alle to gydre, vnnethe maye we constrayne them of the toun; thenne the fewe that shal abyde, how may they haue the force & myght ayenst them within. Therfor me thyncketh that we muste seche other remedye & counseyl, that we may fynde maner how this cyte maye be yolden to vs, & that we maye be within to fore er thyse Turkes come: this shal be a more sure thyng. Yf ye demaunde how this maye be, I shal shewe you the way and manere how it shal wel be as me semeth. I haue a frende in this cyte, a trewe man & wyse, after that I can apperceyue. We haue couenaunted, he and I to gydre, wherfor he ought to delyuer to me a tour moche strong & wel garnysshed of alle that nedeth, whiche he holdeth,

whan I shal demaunde hym. I muste gyue to hym, thus doyng, a grete partye of my good and hauoyr, and franchyses and other alyaunces muste kepe to hym and hys. But this maye not be, but that eche of you gyue ouer his part to me, and quyte hym of ony part of the cyte, that it shal abyde to me and to myn heyres for euermore, ffor other wyse he entendeth not that shall delyuer hit. Yf it plese you, in this maner ye may haue the toun; & if ye wil graunte this, I will somone and warne him to doo in suche wyse, that thyse couenauntes be wel accomplyssh-ed by godes grace. And yf it plese you not, and ye maye fynde ony other maner, I am redy tacquyte alle my parte to one of you or to another of oure companye, yf he wyl delyuer to vs the cyte. And god knoweth it shal plese wel, & I shal be right ioyous in good fayth.

How after that Buymont had declared his fayte to alle the hooste, they acorded that the toun shold be his, sauf the erle of Tholouse, capitulo Cxvj

WHAN the barons herd this they had grete ioye in their hertes, and anon acorded to this that Buymont requyred. Euery man graunted his part that he shold be quyte therof, except only therle of Tholouse, whiche, in a reuerrye wheryn he was, sayde that he wold not acquyte his part, ne gyue it ouer to noman lyuyng. The other barons promysed certeynly to holde it, & gaf to hym theyr fayth that they shold not discouere it to noman.

They prayd hym that he wold wysely brynge this mater aboute, & dylygently laboure taccomplisshe it, ffor grete peryll myght come in the taryeng of it. The counseyl departed thus ❧ This Buymont, which was wyse and trewe, spak to the messager that knewe theyr couyne, & sente hym to his frende. And bad hym saye that the barons had graunted to hym that the toun shold be holly his with moche glad chere, therfor he somoned hym by his fayth that he shold accomplysshe this next nyght hooly that he had promysed hym.

ONE thyng happed this same day that was moch helpyng to this werke, and to thaccomplisshyng therof, ffor this frende of Buymont named Emyrferyus entremedled moche of thaffayres and thynges of Ancean & of the toun. This same day, whan he was besy in this werke, he sente his sone, that was tho grete, to his hows for to fetche somwhat. Whan he cam to the tour hastely, he founde that one of the grete admyrals of the toun pleyed & deled with his moder. Whan he sawe this, he had so grete sorowe in his herte that he ran agayn to his fader, and told to hym lyke as he had founden it ❧ The fader was a moche wyseman, & was moche sore angry, and sayd thyse wordes to his sone: fayr sone, it semeth not ynowgh to thyse fals houndes that they take fro vs alle that we haue, & kepe vs fowle in their seruage, but with this, they doo vs alle the shame that they maye. By the ayde of Ihesu Criste, in whom I byleue, I shal labour & doo payne to fynde the maner by whiche their power

and myght shal be lassed, mynnysshed, & shorted, & they shal haue guerdon for the euyl that they haue don to vs.

DE made thenne no semblaunt of angre that he had, but sente his sone to Buymont anon by the maner that he was acustomed to goo, & badde hym that he shold be redy, ffor as to hym he wold hold hym this nyght alle his couenauntes. He badde hym also that alle the barons of thooste shold ysshue oute about none, euery man armed in his bataylle, & make semblaunt for to goo ayenst Corbagat, & after in the begynnyng of the nyght to retorne agayn pryuely without noyse, and kepe them so armed & redy to doo that shal be sayd to them aboute mydnyght ❧ Buymont was moche ioyous whan he herd this message, and aftir ledde hym to fore the barons, to whom this thyng was discouerd, & made hym saye in theyr presence the wordes as he had brought. The barons whan they herd hym were moche ioyous, & sayd wel that this counseyl was good and faythful, and of grete courage acorded therto.

How they of Anthyoche had fere of treson, & how they assembled in counseyl, & of that whiche Emyrferius deposed there at, capitulo Cxvij

ONE thyng happed in this toun that is acustomed ofte to come in grete werkes. They that had the kepyng & charge of the toun began to haue suspectionwithin theyr hertes, & deuyned that the cyte shold be by-trayed. They knewe no reson ne how, ne they apperceyued no grete semblaunce, but alway that one spak to that other of the grete men, and them semed that it shold falle. So moche aroos this murmur and wordes, that they assembled to fore Ancean, lord of the toun, and told to hym that his men had suche fere, and it was not without reson, ffor the cristen men were in the toun, and were in doubte that by them dommage myght come to the cyte. They ledde so Ancean with wordes that they made hym to be aferd also. Anon he sente for hym that was named Emyrferyus, and told to hym how this worde ranne about, & by cause he helde hym for a wyseman, he demaunded what counseyl he wold gyue here on. He, that was sharp of entendement & apperceyuyng, knew anon that his lord demaunded thyse wordes for to knowe yf he shold answere ony thynge by whiche he shold be suspecte, & knewe wel that this assemblee was there made by cause they had suspection. He thought wel to brynge them out of this wenyng by his answere, and sayd:

FAYR lordes, ye be hye, noble, & wyse-men, alle they of the toun ought to conne ye good thancke, and the lord specially, of this that ye ymagyne & doubte of trayson, ffor in so grete a thyng as ye haue to kepe, ought to be doubted alle that may be-falle; ffor we be in peryll of our lyues, of oure franchyses, of wyues, of chylderen & herytages. Thise ben thynges that ought to be well vnderstanden and kepte. But me semeth that by two wayes maye be gyuen counseyl in this thyng, in suche wyse that yf ony were vntrew and suche a traytre that wold destroye his countrey he shold haue no power. This thynge myght not be don ne spoken of but by them that haue the toures in kepyng. Therfor me thynketh yf ye haue suspection herof, ye may wel remedye it by ofte remeuyng them fro theyr places, ffor this thynge may not be deuysed but by moche grete leyser. And whan ye chaunge them thus ofte, in suche wyse that they that be here this nyght shal be sette the next nyght fer thens, where they shal haue no knowleche, her by ye shal take fro them alle the ease for to commune or speke of ony trayson.

WHAN they herd this counseyl that this cristen man Emyrferyus gaf to them, they acorded alle wel therto, & by this fylle from them alle the suspection from theyr hertes that they had ayenst them. And thus as he had deuysed shold haue don yf it had not ben so late, for it was nyght, and so grete remeuyng myght not be

made but by space of tyme. The lord commaunded them to kepe alle the cyte hooly. Thus departed they fro the counseyl Emyrferyus that sawe wel that the thynge that he had enterprised, yf he and Buymont hasted not, that it shold neuer take good ende, therfor he thought moche to brynge his purpoos to effect without that ony man shold perceyue it.

Of the meschyef that the Turkes made euery daye to the cristen men that were in Anthyoche enhabytyng with them, capitulo Cxviij

ERO the begynnyng that the cyte was assyeged, the Turkes of the toun had in great suspection the Grekes, Surryens & Heremyns, & generally alle the other cristen men that duellyd in Anthyoche. Wherof it happed that the poure cristen men that had not in theyr howses garnyson sufficiaunt for longe tyme, they made them to voyde the toun and alle theyr meyne, ffor they wold not that the cyte were charged ne encombred with them. They reteyned the ryche men within by cause they had vytayll ynowgh; they kepte them strayte, & by fals occasions robbed them euery daye, & toke fro them alle theyr thynges. They chaced them to the labours and werkes of the toun; yf they had walles for to make or amende, they bare the stones, the morter, & sande; yf they wolde adresse engyns for to caste stones or other instrumentes of warre they muste drawe the cordes; and neuer as longe as they fonde cristen men they sought none other for to doo suche werkes. And whan they had

trauaylled longe, in stede of rewardes they ledde them & bete them thurgh the stretes, in suche wyse that they had leuer to haue ben caste out of the toun atte begynnynge with the other than to be reteyned with in ❧ This suffised not to thyse fals houndes, that thus greued them of the toun that were cristen; thus were they acorded viij dayes to fore, to speke to Emyrferyus, frende of Buymont, that they wolde slee alle the cristen men, and had don it yf one of the admyrals of the toun had not letted and empessh-ed it, which was alway pryue and frende of the cris-ten men ❧ He made to delaye it vij dayes by this reason, ffor he sayd to them: fayr sirs, I hope that the cristen men that haue assieged vs shal departe fro the siege with in viij dayes for doubte of Corb-agat which cometh, and yf they departe, why shall we slee the cristen men that ben in this toun? And yf they departe not, thenne maye ye doo as ye haue deuysed ❧ Thyse viij dayes were now passed, in suche wyse that it was commaunded moche pryue-ly to them that had the charge, that they shold slee them the same nyght.

THENN the same day at none it was cryed thurgh the hooste of the pyl-gryms, that alle they that had horses were armed, and to drawe euery man to his bataylle, where he was consti-tuted and ordeyned for to doo that theyr captayns shold commaunde them. The men on foote knewe nothyng what they shold doo, ne the horsemen neyther, sauf they that Buymont had aduertysed. Thus departed they fro thooste alle in

ordenaunce; it seemed wel that they wold goo ferre; they wente forth tyl it was nyght. Whan it was derke it was commaunded that they sholde retorne agayne secretely without ony noyse, and that they shold holde them armed in theyr lodgys. This valyaunt man, Emyrferius, of whom I haue spoken to fore, had a brother with hym, but he was not of suche courage as he was. The good man had sayd no thynge to hym of that he purposed to doo, ffor he doubted moche he wold not be agreable therto. They were to gydere in the tour at the hour of none; whan the bataylles yssued of thooste, they behelde it by the batayllementes.

EMYRFERYUS wold preue & knowe the courage of his broder, whiche was yonger than he, and sayd to hym: fayr swete broder, I haue moche grete pyte of thyse hye men that thou seest there, ffor they be of oure creaunce, moche faythful & good cristen men. Now ryde they al so surely as yf they ought nothyng to doubte, & their deth is ful nygh them, ffor it may not be that they may resiste ayenst them that come, & ayenst them of the toun, and yf they knewe it I trowe they wold take other counseyl. His broder answerd: This is a moch folyssh pyte that thou hast, and I see the in a grete musardye. Certainly it shold plese me wel that the Turkes had nowe smeton of alle their heedes, and slayn them alle that thou seest there depart, and alle the other in lyke wyse, ffor neuer syth they entred in to this londe we had neuer good day ne one good nyght, but haue made vs suf-

fre many euilles by thoccasion of their comyng, & therfor I may not loue them. But I wold that they shold haue an euyl endyng, and that right soone ¶ Whan Emyrferyus had herd thyse wordes he doubted to fore what to saye to his broder of his purpoos, but fro this forth he doubted nomore, & began to hate hym moche in his courage. He thought wel that by hym myght be destroubled the grete avauncement of cristendome; therfore he was in grete anguysshe how he myght delyuer hym self from hym.

Of the dilygence that Buymont made in this werke, and how Emyrferyus slewe his brother, & delyuerd the toun to the cristen men, capitulo Cxix

BUYMONT slepte not this nyght, ffor he shold haue ben moche displesyd, yf by his neclygence this werke shold be taryed. He wente ofte to the barons that knew of this thynge, for to be counseylled. He helde in his honde a laddre of cordes, moche subtylly made; aboue, it shold be fasted to the creneaux of the walle with good and stronge crochettes of yron, and for to fastne also in the erthe ¶ Whan it cam aboute mydnyght, he toke his messager that knewe his secrete pryuely, & sente hym to his frende to knowe yf it were yet tyme that he shold approuche to the wallys, ffor hym thought that alle the cyte was in moche peas and reste ¶ Whan this messager cam he had hym abyde there stylle, and saye no worde

tyl that the mayster of the watche were departed & passyd by; ffor the custome was suche in the cyte, that a noble and wyseman shold serche and vysyte euery nyght the watche, and amende that as they founde amys. And he wente thus thre or four tymes in the nyght, with a grete companye of peple that bare light. It was not longe after, that he cam and sawe in the tour where Emyrferyus was, and sawe alle thynges wel ordeyned and in good disposicion; and it plesyd hym wel, and passed forth.

THIS man sawe thenne that it was tyme to performe his werke, and sayd to the messager: Goo thy way dylygently, and saye to thy lord that now is tyme to doo well, and that he come to fore this tour; & see that he haue good companye with hym & trewe. The messager departed forthwith. Emyrferyus entred in to the tour, and founde his broder slepyng moche faste. He had fere that he shold awake er the werke were accomplysshyd, and that he myght destrouble it; therfore he toke his swerd, and roof hym thurgh bothe sydes, & slewe hym. The messager cam to Buymont, and told hym his erande. He cam incontinent to fore the tour, and the other barons with hym that knewe of the werke. Eche of them had but a fewe with them, but they were good & trew. Emyrferius put out his heed and salewed them, & they resalewed hym; and after aualed a corde doun the wall. They toke it, and bounde it faste to thende of the laddre of cordes. Whan it was bounden and drawen vp, fastned & attached with the crochettes

of yron aboue, there was none that was so hardy that wold fyrst goo vp. Whan Buymont sawe this he toke thenne the laddre first, as a valyaunt man & ardant taccomplysshe the werke, and wente vp til he cam to the batillement. Emyrferyus knewe anon that it was Buymont, & toke hym by the arme, and kyssed his honde. Buymont wente vpon the walle, and kyssed hym swetly. He thanked hym of the seruyce that he had don.

EMYRFERYUS ladde hym in to the towre, & sayde to hym: Beholde, and see what I haue don for god and you. This man, that ye see here deed, is my brother germayn; I haue slayn hym by cause he wolde not acorde to this werke that ye & I haue enterprysed. Buymont had moche grete ioye, ffor fro thenne forthon knewe he well that his frende dyde alle in good fayth; thenne cam to the creneuls, and put oute his heede & called his peple, and sayd that they shold come vp dylygently by the laddre. They durste not go vp, but alway supposed it had be deceyuaunce. Buymont, that was moche valyaunt & iust, put doon his foote on the laddre, and descended doun to the erthe, and sayd to them: fayr lordes, ye tarye ouer longe, there is no doubte, ffor knowe ye certaynly that this good man hath shewde to me his brother, whom he hath slayn for loue of vs. Whan they herd this, they all toke the laddre, he that myght best heste, & mounted vp so many, that ther were men ynowgh on the walle. Therle of flaundres went vp, and Tancre, for tenseyn the other how they shold doo. Whan the

fyrst towr was wel garnysshed with men, they ranne to the other by, and slewe the watche men, and helde the toures.

Of the mayntene of the cristen men in this pryse, and of the affraye of the Turkes of the toun, capitulo Cxx.



T the foote of the laddre abode somme of the barons, for to conduyte thooste. Whan they sawe that they had vpon the walles men ynowe that myght garnysshe dyuerse toweres, theye ran hastely to the lodgys for to make the peple arme them, & to drawe nerer to thende that they myght al be redy for to entre in whan our men that were on the walles made to them a signe. Our men that were mounted vp on the walles were not ydle, but were noble & hardy in such wise that they had anon x towres taken alle in a renge, and had slayn alle them that they founde therin, and the cyte was not yet meuyd; ffor the grete men of the toun whan they herde the noyse, had supposed certaynly that they had slayn the cristen men, lyke as they had commaunded, and that this affraye had be for none other thynge, & they meued not oute of theyr beddes. In this partye, where oure men were goon vp, was a posterne. Our men that were on the walles descended and brake vp the locks, and opened the yate, in such wyse that many entred of oure peple. And after cam to the grete gate, that was called the gate of the brydge, and alle the

watche that kepte it they slewe, & after opened the gate. A squyer of Buymontys ran til he cam to an hye towre, whiche was vpon the tertre by the dongeon of the toun; there he fyxed the baner of Buymont his lord.

WHAN oure peple that were in the toun apperceyued that the daye was nygh, and the dawenyng appiered, thenne they made to sowne theyr trompettes and busynes, for to calle al the people of the hooste. The barons vnderstode the signe, & smote the hors with the spores, and entred by the yates whiche they founde opene with alle theyr bataylles. The foote men of thooste awoke, that knewe nothyng of this counseyll. They sawe the tentes empty and voyde, and apperceyued that the toun was taken; thenne began they hastely to renne to the gayne, in suche wyse that none abode other. The Turkes of the toun awoke, & herde the noyse, & sawe the men of armes thurgh the stretes. Thenne apperceyued they in what poynt they were; they began to flee out of theyr howses, & lede theyr wyues and childeren with them. Whan they fledde fro one rowte of our men they recountred another gretter, whiche slewe them alle.

THE Surryens, the Hermyens, and the other cristen men of the toun apperceyued that the thyng wente so; they had moche grete ioye, and toke the armes hastely, and wente forth with our men and tolde to them the places where mooste peple were, and where the tresours

were. They then slewe the Turkes moche gladly; they payned them moche to rendre to them the guerdon of betynges and tormentes that they had don to them. Thoost was thenne entred in to the toun; the barons had sette their baners on the toures; grete occision & slaughter had be in the toun; they spared noman, ne woman, ne childe; they brak vp dores and chestes; ye shold haue seen gold & syluer departed in the stretes. It semeth well a thyng conquered & wonne by warre. What shal I make long deuyses? Ther were slayn of them of the toun that day moo than x M, of whom the bodyes laye alle bare in the wayes and stretes.

How Ancean, lord of Anthyoche, fledde by a posterne out of the toun, and he was recountred & put to deth, capitulo Cxxj

HAN Ancean sawe that the cyte was thus bytrayed, and that his peple that myght escape fledde an hye in to the fortresse of the dongeon, he doubted moche to goo theder, ffor he thought wel that the cristen men wold enuyronne incontinent this tour yf he entred. Therfor he yssued out at a posterne out of the toun, & wente allone as he had be oute of his wytte, ne he knewe not whether he myght goo & flee for to kepe hym. Whan he wente thus by the feldes moche ferre fro the cyte, certeyne Hermyns mette hym & knewe hym, & moche merueylled what this myght be; & after thought that the cyte was taken. And they approched hym, lyke as they wold haue enclyned to hym as they were woonte, but thenne

they toke hym, and smote hym doun to the therthe, and after with a swerde smote of his heed, & bare it in to the toun, and presented it vnto the barons to fore the peple.

ONE maner peple was comen in to Anthyoche, which were not of the toun, that were come for to deffende theyr lawe, and other for to be souldyours, and other for prowesse of armes, and to gete honour & prys. Thyse knewe not wel the beyng of the toun, & were mounted vpon their horses alle armed, & begonne to renne ayenst the hylle toward the dongeon, & by aduenture they mette a route of our men, thus as they wente sechyng in the toun, whiche ran on them moche hardyly. Thyse maner of peple wold haue eschewed them, and smote theyr hors toward the valeye, and fylle doun of a bancke in suche wyse that they were alle to brused, men, hors, harnoys & abyllementes, ther were deed wel a iij C ❧ Som ther were that in the toun were born, whan they apperceyued in the mornyng that our men were within, they toke their hors and rode out by the yates that our men had opened. Ther were of oure men that wente aftir and sued them, & brought many of them agayn, whom they put in pryson; som other escaped, & ran vnto the montaynes.

ABOUT the hour of tierce, whan the toun was serched, our peple assembled, and anon apperceyued that in alle the toun was no vytayll; and it was not wondre, ffor the siege had thenne endured nygh ix monethes,

and moche peple had ben therin duryng the siege, but gold, syluer, preceous iewellis, & vessel of dyuerse facions, clothes of sylke, and ryche tappets, & of other thynges they founde so moch, that eche of our men was all charged, as moch as they myght bere. It cam wel to poynt to oure poure pylgryms for to fynde suche rychesse after the grete mesease that they had suffred. Ther were founden in the toun v C good hors of armes, but they were right lene & wery ❧ Thus was the cyte of Anthyoche taken, the yere of thyncarnacion of our lord a M lxxxxviij, the iij day of the moneth of Iuyn.

How, after that our men made grete slaughter of theyr enemyes, our men helde counseyl for to take the dongeon, thenne beyng seased of the Turkes, capitulo Cxxij

THE pylgryms that were theder comen fro many countrees by grete labour, were thenne ful of shedyng of the blood of their enemyes. The barons assembled in counseyl, and aduysed emonge them that this werk was not yet parfyght, but that ther was yet trauayll & peryll tyl that the dongeon were taken & goten, whiche was right stronge & wel garnysshed with walles of the toun. They sette good warde and kepers of alle the yates, and dyde do crye thurgh alle the toun to assault, and commaunded that all shold come to the tour that was on the montayne ❧ Whan they cam theder, they knewe wel cer-

taynly that this was not a thynge lightly to be goten, ffor the fortresse myghte not be goten but by famyne; therfor they trauaylled but lytil, but withdrewe them, & made the peple to retorne. This montayne, that is aboue the toun, is deuyded in tweyne, like as I sayd to fore, by a depe valleye, whiche is as stepe as it were plom doun. The syde whiche is toward thoryent is moch fayrer, vpon a playne wel brode, ful of vygnes and londe erable. That other partye, toward the weste, is moche hyer, as a man shold goo vp right, and right vpon the sommet, at toppe of the tertre, stondeth the dongeon, ferme of ouer stronge walles and thycke toures, they be hye & grete toward thoryent; & toward northeste, about the valeye, it is so deep that it semeth a right helle, & it is an hydous thynge to beholde. It coude neuer be ymagyned how it myght be myned. To ward the west the hill is lower; bytwene this hille & the dongeon is a valleye, & in this valleye fro the dongeon vnto the toun is a way, whiche is so strayt that with grete payne one man allone maye goo or come.

THE barons acorded that they wold close this litil terter & waye, to thende that they of the dongeon shold not mowe descende, ne doo euyll ne harme to oure men in the cyte. They made a wall moche stronge of lyme & sonde, in whiche they put men of armes ynowe, and wel in poynt. They sette on the walles stones, and engyns redy for to caste stones yf the Turkes descended and cam doun. The barons wente in to the toun for to take counseyl of other werkes. It was ordeyned and deuysed that alle men shold retorne and a-

byde there about this newe walle tyl that the dongeon were taken, sauf the duc Godeffroye, whiche by comyn counseyl of alle, shold abyde for to kepe the gate of the est; and the fortresse that our men had made withoute the gate, that was delyuerd to Buymont. They herde tydynges that this grete prynce Corbagat, of whom I haue spoken to fore, shold arryue shortly, ffor he was thenne entred in to the londe of Anthyoche. It was acorded that they sholde sende a wyse man vnto the see, and saye to them that were goon for to doo theyr thynges, that they shold retourne hastely, and brynge in to the cyte alle the vytaylles that they myght fynde. They them self that were in Anthyoche, ran alle the countrey about for to seche vytaylles, but they founde but litil. The labourers of the playne countrey were moche ioyous that the cyte was in the handes of the pylgryms, for they were of our fayth. All that they had hyd they brought; but it was not moche, for the longe siege had destroyed the countre without, and emptyd the toun within.

How whyles thooste garnysshed the toun, somme of thoost of Corbagat cam rennyng to fore it, capitulo Cxxiij

THE second day after the toun was taken, whyles oure peple entended to garnysshe the cyte, cam three honderd men of the hoost, al in poynt, of Corbagat, wel armed & horsed vpon lyght horses, for to see yf they myght fynde ony of oure men that rode

folyly by the countre. They embusshed them alle sauf xxx, the best horsed, whiche cam to fore the toun. They began to renne nycely, for to drawe oure men out of arraye. Whan oure men sawe them, they had grete desdayne, and wende that it had be a grete shame yf they founde not to whom to speke to, syth they were come so fer to fore. A noble man of whom I have spoken to fore, by whom the hooste had had many prouffytes by his wytte & prowesse, and was named Rogier de Barneuylle, and was of the companye of the duc of Normandye, he toke with hym xv knyghtes that he had of his meyne, and cam out of the toun ayenst the Turkes, as he that was noble, valyaunt and hardy, and acustomed to doo fayr faytes.

WHAN he sawe them, he smote his hors with his spores toward them, and they by cautele torned & fledde. Our men folowed hastely so ferre that they launced vpon theyr watche; they sprange oute of the embusshement, and ran vpon oure men, ffor they were many, & wel proued in armes. Rogier relyed his lytil felawship, and cam deffendyng hym toward the toun. Whan they were nyghe, a Turke garnysshed with a stronge bowe smote Rogier thurgh the body, in suche wyse that he fyl doun deed to fore his hors. Anon his felaws withdrewe them in to the toun. The Turkes descended vpon hym, & smote of his heed, seeyng they that were on the walles, they bare away the heed, and thus departed. They of the toun yssued oute with grete crye, and lamentacion, as they that had

a grete losse. They toke the body, and buryed it honorably and with grete sorowe in the porche of the chirche of seynt Peter. The barons compleyned moche aboue the other this noble man, as they that beste knewe hym.

How the thyrde day after the getynge and pryse of Anthyoche, Corbagat with his hoost arryued to fore it, capitulo Cxxiiij

ETE the thyrde day after that Anthyoche was taken, this grete prynce Corbagat cam to the cyte in the mornyng at the sonne rysyng, with so grete plente of peple that alle the countre that myght be seen fro the hyest place of the toun was couerd with them. The barons sawe moche more peple than they herde saye of, for theyr hoost encreced euery day. He passed the brydge, and lodged hym bytwene the laye and the ryuer of Helle, whiche is wel a myle fro that one to that other. He had so grete plente of knyghtes, and so grete nombre of tentes and pauyllons, that the grete playne wherof I haue spoken to fore, where Anthyoch stondeth, ne yet it myght not alle receyue them, but many of them lodged them in the terrytoryes by. Whan Corbagat had be thus thre dayes lodged, hym thought that he was ouer far fro the cyte, & by his counseyl wold be more ner the dongeon which the Turkes helde, for to ayde & comforte them, and thought for to put men in to the toun by the yate that was under the dongeon

Whan he was lodged on that partye, he comprysed fro the yate of the eest to the west yate all the syde of the toun toward the south.

By syde the parte of the eest was a fortresse, whiche oure men had made vpon a litil tertre as I haue sayd, and was delyuerd to Buymont, but whan the toun was taken and the yate, he delyuerd this fortresse to other for to kepe. Therby lodged som Turkes of thooste of Corbagat, they began tassaylle this tour. They that were within dyde grete payne to deffende them, but it was ouermoche charged with grete plente of peple that were there, & also with archers, of whom they had many. The duc, whiche was bye at the yate, sawe that his men had ouermoche to doo, and had good wyll for to helpe them, & wold haue dislodged them that were come ouer fer forth. He yssued out with al his batayll, and smote his hors with his spores toward the fortresse, and sawe that there were ouer grete plente of Turkes to fore hym, which smote in to his men, and began to demene them euyll, ffor ayenst one of them ther were x Turkes. The duc knewe that his strengthe was not like theyres, and began to withdrawe hym toward the toun, but to fore that they myght reentre in to the gate, the Turkes assayled them so euyll that ther were ij C of the batayll of the duc taken and deed.

How after that the duc was within the barres of the toun, & many of his men slayn, the Turkes entred in to the toun, capitulo Cxxv

THE duc cam in to the toun moche angry of this dommage. But whan the Turkes knewe that this had be Godeffroye of Boloyne that they had thus put abak, they aroos in moche grete pryde; therfore they wente thens vnto the montayne and entred in to the toun by the yate of the dongeon, and surprysed somme of our men that toke none hede; with bowes and with swerdes they slewe them. But whan they were apperceyued our men chassed them, but they put them in to the dongeon where they were sauf. Thus dyde they oftymes harme, ffor they knewe another way to descende than that whiche our men had garnysshed. The barons assembled for to take counseyl what they shold doo of the peryll wherin they were. By comyn acorde it was ordeyned that Buymont & the erle of Tholouse shold make there a dyche moche depe and brode ynowgh bytwene the toun and the pendaunt of the montayne.

THEY made it there as it was deuysed, & made there a fortresse whiche they garnysshed wel with men wel armed. The Turkes that were in the dongeon, and they also that were comen in by this gate, descended ofte by a way couerte vnto this fortresse. And assaylled it moche

fiersly, in suche wyse as they lete them haue no reste; that it happed on a day, that so grete plente of Turkes descended that the cry aroos in to the toun. That and yf the other barons & knyghtes whiche were a-brode in the toun had not come and ronne to them they had slayn or taken thyse noble men, that is to wete Buymont, Euerard du Puyssat, Raoul de la fontayne, Rembault Creton, and somme other lordes that were in theyr companye. Alle they were grete men and good knyghtes that were put in this newe fortresse for to defende it. But therle of flaundres, the duc of Normandye, and Huon the Mayne ranne moche hastely theder, and mette with the Turkes er they myght entre in to the dongeon. They slewe many, and many they receyued prysonners.

THE other Turkes that escaped cam to fore Corbagat, & counted to hym that thyse men of the toun were ouer feers and hardye, and it semeth whan they ben in werke that they doubte nothynge the deth, ne this, ne that. Corbagat, whiche was lodged in the montayne as I haue sayd, dyde not theron moche his prouffyt ne his honoure, ne he founde not there pasture for his hors, as he dyde bynethe in the valeye. Whan he sawe this he commaunded that he shold be dislodged, & descended in to the valeye with his men. He passed the riuer of Helle; there deuised he the places to his barons about the toun. On the morn it happed that I can not say how many Turkes approched the cyte, and descended fro theyr horses,

for to shote at our peple that were on the walles for to come more ner. Tancre yssued by the gate toward the eest, & stopped the way fro them in suche wyse that er they myght take theyr horses he slewe vj of them, & brought them in to the toun for to recomforte our peple for the deth of Rogyer de Barneuylle.

How our cristen men that a lytil to fore assieged the toun, were now assieged in the same, capitulo Cxxvj

IN this tyme durynge, the peple of the cristen men that had assyeged Anthyoche but a litil to fore, as ye haue herd, they were now them self assieged within; thus goon the chaunges and mutacions of the world. They had moche grete trauayll for to kepe and deffende the cyte; it was to them ouer perylous that the dongeon was so strong & so wel garnysshed as it was. They made to them ofte grete assaylles by daye & by nyght, ffor they of the hooste cam in by the yate vnder the dongeon as ofte as it plesyd them. Our men began to be moche abasshed; ther were many that toke no regarde to theyr oth that they had made to mayntene the companye ne to theyr honoure, but by nyght descended doun of the walles by ropes and cordes and fledde to the see, & many of them the Turkes toke whom they slewe & brought in prison. They that myght escape cam vnto the porte, sayeng to the merchauns & to other pylgryms that were there comen, that they shold

disancre theyr shippes & flee anon, ffor this prynce Corbagat, whom so moche peple folowed, had taken Anthyoche by force, and had slayn alle the barons and alle them that he founde within, and they were escaped by ouer grete peryll and fiers aduenture. Therfore, sayd they to the maronners that they shold departe and flee withoute taryenge, ffor yf the Turques cam serchynge the countre vnto the see & founde them there they shold be alle delyuered to deth. Thus they fledde alle for feere, and they them self that brought thise tydynges wente with them ❧ And to thende that ye shold not suppose that thyse were but mene peple, for the trouthe of this hystorye spareth noman, I shall name somme that thus departed shamefully. That is to wete, Guyllamme de Gratemenyl, a noble man born in Normandye, whiche held grete londe in Puylle, & had to his wyf the suster of Buymont; Hubery Charpenter, Guy Croseaulx, Lambert le Poure, & many other had they with them.

SOMME there were that dide werse, and for the messease of hungre and drede for to be slayn, yolde them to the Turkes, & they tolde the certaynte of the meschief that oure men suffred alle a longe to the Turkes ❧ Many abode in the toun that gladly wold haue goon, but Buymont by the counseyl of the bisshop of Puy, dyde so make watche atte alle the gates and vpon the walles, and toke kepe bothe by daye and nyght that none shold goo vp ne doun. And they swore alle that they shold not departe fro the companye, ne breke the commaundementes of Buymont. He

hym self wente euery nyght thurgh the toun wyth grete plente of men, and with grete lyght to thende that no peryll shold happe ne trayson. foure fortresses had he whiche he muste nedes kepe, & better than the other. That one was on the lasse tertre ayenst the dongeon, & that other was lower ayenst the assaylles that they made. The thyrde was without the eest gate, the whiche was made to kepe thooste er the toun was take. The fourthe was at thende of the brydge, by whiche the porte of the brydge was kept, and therle of Tholouse kepte it fyrst, but whan the cyte was taken he lefte it, and entred into the toun. Therle of flaundres toke it & garnysshyd it with fyue honderd men of armes, of knyghtes & other wel in poynt, ffor he thought yf the Turkes toke it our men myght not after yssue by the brydge, by which their strengthe be moche employed.

How Corbagat dyde do assaylle a fortresse which therle of flaundres kepte without the gate and of that ensiewed, capitulo Cxxvij

ON a daye it happed that Corbagat thoughte that they of the toun had ouermoche lyberte to yssue oute and to entre agayn. Therfor he commaunded to a bataylle of his peple, in whiche were ij thousand Turkes wel in poynt, that they shold so longe assaylle the fortresse of the brydge tyl they were taken; & it happed so that therle of flaundres was then wythin the same fortresse. Thassault be-

ganne at sonne rysynge, moche fiers & moche grete; there were so many archiers aboute it that none myghte shewe his head atte creneulx but that anon it was couerd with arowes. They that were within deffended them moche well, in suche wyse that they lost nothyng of the fortresse, and thassault endured tyl the sonne went doun. The Turkes departed alle wery. Therle of flaundres doubte that they shold come on the morn to thassault, ffor they myght not longe suffre them there; therfor, as sone as it was nyght, he put out alle his men preuyly, and sette fyere therin, and brent the fortresse without fayllyng. The Turkes had deuysed that in the mornyng erly they shold haue begonne agayn the assault & that two M men more shold haue comen than had ben the nyght byfore.

IT was not longe after that a rouete of Turkes departed fro thooste of Corbagat. I wote not how many poure pylgryms that wente pourchasshyng yf they myght fynde ony vytaylles in the countre, they toke them and brought them alle in the state that they were in to fore Corbagat. When he sawe them he moche despysed them, ffor they had no armures, & but feble bowes of tree, their swerdes rusty, their gownes and habellemens were old & roten. Thenne sayd Corbagat by desdayne: Thyse peple seme well men that shold take away fro the soudan of Perse his empyre and conquere the londe of thoryent. Thyse shold be wel content & payd yf they had breed, and a gobet of bacon. Their bowes ben not stronge ynowgh for

to slee a sparowgh. Now I shal saye to you what ye shal doo, ye shal lede them bounden in this poynt as they now be in vnto my lord the soudan that hath sent vs hether, and telle hym that he dar not be sore aferd of thyse men that be comen hether, ffor we haue enterprysed & begonne warre ayenst suche men as he may see. Late me allowe with this werke, ffor there shal not abyde many of them, but I shal efface and destroye them alle in suche wyse as there shal nomore be spoken of them, as they had neuer be born ❧ Thus ledde they thoo cristen men vnto the soudan. He wende wel to haue don his honour, in this that he sente them to the soudan, but it torned hym afterward to his shame. Hym thought a light thynge to vaynquysshe the cristen men whiche had not yet wel assayled them.

Of the grete famyne & messease that oure men suffred in the cyte of Anthyoche, beynge assyeged on alle sydes by the sayde Corbagat, capitulo Cxxviij.

IN alle partyes was the cyte thus assieged ❧ They of the toun ne myght not yssue out for to pourchasse vytaylle for them. They were euyl at ease of this meschyef. A famyn aroos in the toun moche grete and greuous for deffaulte of vytaylle, in suche wyse that they ete camels, asses, & tho horses; and yet toke they werse thynges whan they myght gete it, ffor who that had founden a deed hound or catte they ete it delyciously in stede of grete delices, ffor

the hongry wombes made no daunger to seche suche as they myght fylle them with. ¶ The grete, hye, & noble men that were acustomed to be moche honoured had now no shame to come ther wher they ete suche mete, but wente oueral moche fowlly, and demaunded playnly suche as they neded. The ladyes, gentil wymmen and maydens, had alle langour of hongre; they were alle pale and lene. Many were compelled to begge, and aske with moche grete shame. There was none that myght haue so harde an herte but that he shold haue grete pyte to haue seen it.

THER were many men and wymmen that aduysed them of what lygnage they were of born, that had suche courage ferme in theyr hertes, that for none anguysshe that they suffred of hongre wold not goo axe their breed fro dore to dore. Thyse peple hydde them in theyr howses; somme that knewe it dyde to them yet somme socour, but ther were many that deyed for hongre that they had not for to ete. ¶ There myght men see knyghtes and other valyaunt men that had be to fore stronge & noble in theyr werkes, that now were so feble & poure that they wente by the stretes lenyng on their staues, and theyr heedes enclynyng doun, askynge breed for goddes loue. There shold ye haue seen the lytil childeren that soke theyr moders pappes, & the moders had nothyng to ete, but threw them doun in the stretes to thende that other shold norysshe them. ¶ With grete payne shold ye haue founde one onely man emong so moche peple that had sufficiently that hym neded; ffor yf ony had be that had gold or syluer, it auaylled hym nothyng,

ffor he founde no mete for to bye with it. The barons and the hye prynces that were acustomed to holde the fayr courtes and to gyue mete and drynke to many men, they hydde them now, by cause none shold fynde them etyng ne drynkyng. They had gretter anguysshe in theyr hertes of this famyne than had the poure peple, ffor they mette euery day theyr knyghtes and theyr men of theyr countrees that deyde for hungre, & they had no mete to gyue them. It were a long thyng to recounte alle the meseases & the meschyefs that were suffred within Anthyoche whyles the tempeste endured. But so moche may wel be sayd, that selde or neuer shal ye fynde in hystorye that so grete prynces, & one so grete an hooste suffred suche anguyssh of hungre.

How the Turkes felyng that our men were in suche meschyef of hongre, enforced them for tassaylle the cyte, capitulo Cxxix.

WHYLES that the cyte was thus on alle partes assyeged wyth Turkes, and the famyne ran so anguysshous, they that were without & knewe the euyl couyne of our people, left not to assaylle the walles alle the longe daye. They of the dongeon, and the other that cam in by the yate, cam & made grete assayles in the toun. They had made them so wery that oure men myght not wel deffende them, and vnnethe kepe the toun; ffor whan they had defended them alle the longe day, at euen they had nothyng to ete. Wherof it happed that a tour by that syde where

our men entred was euyl kept, and on a nyght the Turkes cam withoute forth, and apperceyued wel that noman was within the tour. Thenne they toke laddres that they had made, and mounted vpon the walles. Ther were xxx that wente vnto this tour for to entre in, and this was at the begynnynge of the nyght. The maister of the watche wente serchyng right there, and sawe the Turkes comen vp there, and cryed: Treson, treson! And thenne awoke fyrst and ran theder Harry d'Asque, & two of his cosyns with hym, that one named franke, and that other Semer. They were bothe of the toun called Mathale vpon the Mase. Thyse thre smote in emong the xxx Turkes; at theyr fyrst comyng they slewe four. They of the toures sawe them, but not so sone. The other xxvj Turkes deffended them, but this dured but a whyle, ffor they of the toures threwe them doun to the ground where they brak their legges and neckes. Ther was none that fylle, but he was deed or maymed. Ther was slayn Semer, ffor he was hurt with a swerd thurgh the bely. frank was born away, whiche was hurte peryllously.

How Corbagat sente his men of armes for to slee the maronners that were at the port, wherof oure men had a grete losse, capitulo Cxxx

THAN the famyne grewe thus euery day in Anthyoche; many there were in the toun that had leuer be slayn, than to abyde thus the hongre. They put them in aduenture, and by nyght ys-sued oute of the toun whan they myght escape, after they wente

to the porte of the see. Somme shippis there were yet of Grekes, and of Hermyens that brought vytaylle. Many there were that bought it, and cam & solde it in the toun by nyght in hydles. Whan the Turkes apperceyued this, many tymes they awayted them, and slewe many of them. Atte laste for to take away this lytil socour that they had, the Turkes sente two thousand horsmen to the see, whiche slewe alle the maronners and merchauntes that they founde, and brente their shippes. Somme ther were that laye at an ancre in the see, and they fledde.

THENNE had our men loste alle theyr hope for vytayll, ffor the yles of the see, as Cypres, Rhodes; and other lyenge on the see side, as Cylyce, Pamphyle, & of other costes, durste nomore sende theyr shippes theder. They of the toun of Anthyoche were nowe euyl demened, ffor to fore to them cam somme comforte of the merchauns; now they had alle loste it. Whan the Turkes retourned fro the see they recountred our pour pilgryms whiche wente that way; they slewe them alle, sauf somme whiche hydde them in the busshes. Whan they of the toun herde tydynges herof, how they were slayn, they were moche sorowful, ffor they had ouer grete anguysshe in theyr hertes as ofte as ony mesauenture fyl to their peple. In this poynt were they with in the cyte, and wold take none hede to theyr warde, ne wold not obeye to the barons, whiche myght thenne doo to them no good. Thus were they in grete perylle.

How Guyllem de Gratemenylle & his felaws fugytyfs cam in to Allexandrye the lasse, capitulo Cxxxj

GVYLLEM de Gratemenylle and the other that fledde with hym cam in to Allexandrye the lytyl. There they founde Steuen, therle of Chartres, of whom they of Anthyoche abode his comynge fro day to daye, ffor the barons & the mene peple supposed that he wold remembre how he departed, and retorne agayn. They told hym the grete sorowe of the famyne that was in Anthyoche, and to thende that they excused them of their departyng, truly the trouthe of the mesease was grete, but they told moche more than it was. It was a light thynge to reteyne this erle, ffor he had no grete talente for to retorne. They toke counseyl bytwene them, & made theyr shippes to be in poynt and redy, and after entred in to them & so wente to the see. And whan they had ben, I wote not how many dayes in the see, they arryued at a cyte of themperours of Constantynoble, whiche as was sayd to them cam with alle his hoost moch greet and merueyllous, of Grekes and of Latyns, and hasted moche for to goo to Anthyoche.

HE was thenne in a cyte not ferre from thens named fynemyne. He wold well holde couenaunte that he had made, to socour our peple with the peple of his empyre, and ther cam in his company wel xl M pylgryms that had a-

byden in his londe of the grete hooste, by cause of sekenes or for other causes. And grete nombre were comen syth fro theyr countrees for theyr pylgremages, whiche durste not passe his londes vnto Anthyoche by them self, and thenne siewed themperour. Whan the erle Stephen knewe that the emperour was so nygh, he went strayt to hym, and brought his felaws cowardes with hym. Whan themperour sawe them he made grete ioye, and receyued therle Esteuen honorably, ffor he helde hym in passyng thurgh his londe for a moche wyseman and a valyaunt, and was wel acqueynted with hym. He demaunded hym moche ententyfly of the remenaunt of the barons, & sayde he had grete merueylle how he was thus departed fro their companye.

How therle of Chartres discoraged themperour of Constantinople that he shold not goo and socoure our peple in Anthyoche, capitulo Cxxxij

THE erle answerd in this maner, and sayde to themperour. Sire, the barons of fraunce whiche passed this yere by your empyre, whom ye receyued so curtoysly and with grete honour, whan they had taken Nycene, whiche they rendred to you, they passed vnto Anthyoche. They assieged that cyte wel ix monethes. They haue taken it entierly, reserued a dongeon, whiche stondeth upon an hylle within the walles, whiche the Turkes holde so strongly that it is unprenable. They supposed to haue wel exployted whan they had goten this cyte, but thenne

they fylle in gretter peryll than to fore; ffor on the thirde day after that they entred cam Corbagat, a puyssaunt prince of Perse, whiche brought so moche peple that alle the countrey by was couerd with them ❧ Oure peple suffred gret anguyssh thenne, ffor this Corbagat with his peple enuyronned them on alle partes, in suche wyse that oure men myght not yssue, and dyde to them moche payne in assayllyng them with out forth. And the dongeon made to them grete assaylles within forth, by whiche our men suffred grete mesease ❧ And also thanguyssh of hongre was so grete, that they had no power to defende them. On that other syde they had otherwhyle comfort of youre londe, ffor fro the yles of the see, and also fro other portes cam somtyme vytaylle, that was brought in to Anthyoche. But now late ben comen the Turkes, and haue slayn alle the maronners and the merchauntes that they fonde atte port, in suche wyse that nowe ther dare nomoo arryue there, wherfore they haue loste alle theyr socours of vytaylle. And aboue alle this they of the toun be greuyd nyght and day by them of the dongeon; ffor by the yate vnder it the Turkes may entre and yssue whan it plesyth them. We sawe that this werke myght come to no good ende in this maner, wherfore we warned them, bothe my self and thyse that be in my companye, whiche be moche noble & wysemen, oftymes that ayenst the wylle of god they shold not enterprise to conquere this countrey, but shold departe with the lest losse they myght, and the peple that folowed them they shold conduyte in to such a place

that they shold not be delyuerd to deth. Many tymes we sayd to them in this manere, and neuer wold they here vs ne byleue, but mayntene theyr reuerye, ffor ther be many emonge them in whom is lytil reson. We our self had ben deed yf we had abyden there, ne we myght doo none honour to our lord ne to our proffyte, therfore we departed, and commaunded them to god, whiche saue them and kepe, for they haue nede. Ye, syre, to whom I am bounden in good fayth, I aduyse you that ye take counseyl of your wyse men to fore ye goo ony ferther. Trouth it is that ye be the moost hye man of the world; but for al that, ye haue not here now in your companye so moche peple as Corbagat hath aboute Anthyoche, and ayenst one of you he hath seuen, therfore myn oppynyon is yf the other so acorde, that to fore your men be put in so gret aduenture ye retorne home agayn. for yf ye approuche them, and that they haue achyeued theyr werke in the cyte, ye shal fynde them redy; and the more ner ye approuche them, the more shame and vyle shal it be to retorne fro them whan ye be so nyghe them. Thise thynges that I haue acounted to you, knowe wel thise valyaunt men that be here with me, & also a grete parte maye ye knowe by this good man that ye delyuerd to vs, that is to wete Latyns your seruaunt, whiche is so wyse and trewe, whiche departed fro vs for many defaultes that he apperceyued with vs.

THAN he had sayd all this themperour was moche ameuyd of thise wordes. With hym was a brother of Buymont named Guyon, that whan he had herd therle Stephen thus speke he was alle wroth and angrye, and as half araged for despyte sayde al on hye that he sayd not the truthe, but they were departed as cowardes. He had moo grete wordes, but Guyllem de Gratemenylle, which was a gentilman born of lygnage, and not of courage, & had to his wyf the suster of the same Guyen, made hym to holde his peas, and blamed hym by cause he spak ayenst therle Steuen. And so this Guyen forbare hym.

How by the warnynges of the sayd erle, themperour, whiche wold haue goon and socoured our men, retorned shortly, capitulo Cxxxiij

UPON thyse wordes that themperour had herd, he wolde be counseylled, and called his barons. And all they acorded that themperour shold retorne fro thens where he was, without goyng ony ferther, ffor they thought it were better to remeue his peple without perylle and hurte than for to fyght in so grete meschyef ayenst Corbagat, and to meue ayenst hym in hate & in warre all the londe of thoryent ❧ He byleuyd so fermely the wordes of therle Stephen, that he doubted that the Turkes had slayn them of Anthyoche, & wold thenne goo in to his londe for to receyue the cyte of Nycene.

And alle the londe of Bythynie, whiche oure men had delyuerd to hym, he wold garnysshe it. Whan he departed fro thens he brente and destroyed alle the londe fro Icoine vnto Nycene on both sydes, by cause the Turkes shold not folowe hym. Vytaylle began to faylle him, and so he muste retourne.

THUS it happed that by the wordes of this grete man, that so fowly departed fro the other barons, themperour retorned, and the cristen peple beyng in Anthyoche lost so grete socours, by whiche myght haue comen alle theyr delyueraunce in so grete necessyte as they were thenne. But consydered this that was gyue to be vnderstonde to themperour, yet he dyde not but his deuoyre. Certaynly it was the werke of our lord; ffor yf this emperour that cam with his peple & grete power of men al fresshe, had reysed the siege and discomfyted the Turkes, oure lord shold not haue ben so honoured ne thanked. And yf of the trauayll that the barons and the other pylgryms had suffred, themperour that come laste shold haue had the vyctorye, theyr payne shold not haue ben so wel guerdonned. Therfor our lord suffred that themperour departed, and that the werke shold be accomplysshed, as ye shall here, to his glorye and thonour of his peple.

How our peple of Anthyoche beyng aduertysed herof were all discouraged, and Corbagat enhaunced in pryde, capitulo Cxxxiiij.

RENOMMEE cam in to Anthyoch that themperour that was approched, by the wordes of therle Stephen, of Guyllem de Gratemenyll & theyr felaws, was torned back. They had on alle sydes anguysshes, but thise tydynges empoysonned them alle, & put them as in despayr. Thenne began they to curse the erle Stephen and alle his companye that had taken fro them so grete ayde. Corbagat that had knowleche that themperour cam, had moch doubte of his comyng, ffor it was a grete thyng of the puyssaunce of themperour. Now was he certayn that he was retorned, wherof he had moch grete ioye in his herte; he was risen in a moch fiers pryde. He ran the more asprely on them of the toun. Oure men in the toun were so abasshed, that them semed wel that oure lord god had alle forgete them. They lete them falle in despayre, & wold not endure no trauaylle that apperteyned to the defence of the cyte; alle hydde them in theyr howses.

ON a daye it happed that Buymont, whiche had alle the power of thoost, had to doo with men ffor thassaultes without forth, and for thassaylles within forth. He dyde do crye on peyn of deth that alle shold come, & there came none. He sente his men for to fetche them in

theyr howses and somone them to come, and none wold come oute. He was abasshed, & thought what he shold doo ❧ Atte laste he sette fyre in the toun in dyuerse places, & thenne yssued in to the stretes grete rowtes. Buymont sawe them, and sayd to hem his commaundement, & bad what they shold doo, and they dyd it ❧ A worde sourded in the toun that many knyghtes and barons had had counseyl pryuely emonge them that they wold yssue oute of the toun by nyght, and leue the pepole within, and wold doo the best they myght, & drawe them to the porte for to entre vpon the see.

THE duc Godeffrey knewe this word. He sente hastely for the bisshop of Puy, and alle the barons, and grete partye of the knyghtes, and he fylle at theyr feet, and requyred them for the loue of god that they wold neuer thynke suche a thynge; ffor yf they dyd so, god shold hate them, & they shold lese theyr sowles, as men that were in despayre of the mercy of oure lord. And on that other syde, in the world they shold lese their honour for euer, & also theyr lygnage, whiche had nothyng forfayted, and shold be shamed euer, & poynted with the fingre. The londes out of whiche they yssued shold be the lasse renomed and lasse preysed as long as the world shold endure. Of alle thise departynges myght they neuer receyue good worde ne honoure ❧ By thyse wordes, and by the prechyng of the bisshop of Puy they loste this euyl talente, alle that had be in this euyll purpoos; but they began to affeble in the toun for honger

& mesease, in suche wyse that they abode not but the wylle of oure lord. Ofte cam in theyr remembraunce what goodes, rychesses, & grete eases they had lefte in theyr countrees for the loue of the seruyse of oure lord. And now yelded he to them suche guerdon that they deyed euery day for honger, and kept hem not fro thyse dogges cruel, whiche byleuyd not in hym, but they slewe and beheded them in despyte and reprouche of the cristen fayth. In this maner wold they chyde with our lord often as men that wyste not what to do ne saye.

How the spere was founden of whiche Ihesus was percyd on the crosse. And of the comfort that our pylgryms toke thereby, capitulo Cxxxv

WHILES as they were in this anguysshe therle Herman, an hye man of Ducheland, was in so grete pouerte that duc Godefroy dyde do delyuer to hym euery daye one loof of breede for pyte; whiche was not moche grete, but the duc myghte no more gyue hym, ffor he had not wherof. Harry d'Asque, whiche was one of the beste knyghtes of thooste, was brought in so grete pouerte that he deyde for hongre. It were a long thyng for to recounte alle their meseases; but our lord that in alle his werkes may not forgete mercy, sente to them grete comfort. for a clerk born in Prouynce named Peter, cam on a day to the bysshop of Puy and to therle of Tholouse, and sayd to them in moche

grete drede, that the holy apostel seynt Andrew had appiered to hym thryes in the nyght slepyng, and warned hym that he shold goo to the barons & saye to them, that the speer with which our lord was percid in the syde on the crosse was hyd in the chirch of seint Peter in the cyte; the place where it was he had certainly shewd to hym. He said wel that he was not come for to saye ne signefye them, but that seynt Andreu had menaced hym at the last tyme yf he dide not his message, he shold meshappen in his body ❧ It was no merueylle yf the clerke doubted for to saye this, ffor he was a poure man and of a lowe lygnage, and but lytil lettred.

THYSE two hye men, whan they herd hym, they brought hym to fore the other barons. They assembled them, and they wolde that he shold saye to them the same wordes as he had sayd to them ❧ Whan the other prynces herd this, they mysbyleuyd not the clerke; they cam in to the chirche of seynt Peter, & sayd theyr confessions, and cryed our lord mercy in teres, wepynges and wayllynges, and repentaunces of theyr synnes. Thenne began to delue & dygg depe in the place that the clerke had shewed to them: they fonde the spere lyke as he had sayd to them ❧ Thenne had they a ioye emonge them so grete, lyke as euery man had had as moche as he myght. They ronge the belles, & this thynge was anon spred al about the toun. They ran alle to the chirche hastely, and sawe this noble relyquye whiche was doluen out of therthe. Thenne were they recomforted alle, both men and wymmen, poure & ryche, as they had our

lord emong them and seen hym. There were thus many other good men that sayde certaynly that certeyn vysyons of angeles and apostles were appered to them.

BY thyse thynges the peple forgate moche of theyr meseases. The bisshop of Puy & other holy men that were in the companye sayd to the pilgryms, that oure lord shewde to them tokene and signe that shortly he wold sende to them his ayde and his counseyl. They concluded alle, noble and vnnoble, men and wymmen, grete and lytil, and sware vpon the holy relyques, that yf our lord wold delyuer them oute of the peryll in whiche they were, & gyue them vyctorye of theyr enemyes, that they shold neuer departe fro this holy companye vnto the tyme that they had conquerd Iherusalem, that noble cyte, where our lord suffred deth for to saue his peple, & shold delyuer the holy sepulcre oute of the handes of the fals mysbyleuyng houndes, Turkes and Saresyns, that kept it in theyr power.

How Peter Theremyte was sente by our men vnto Corbagat, the wordes what he sayde, & the answer of the sayd Corbagat, capitulo Cxxxvj

THEY had suffred this famyne xxvj days in the cyte, in so moche that the people to whome our lord god had sente good hope in theyr hertes began moch to be comforted, and fylle alle to one wylle, in such wise that they sayd emong them that it were good to

bryng theyr meseace to an ende. Therfore was theyr comyn acord that they shold fyght with the Turkes that had assieged them, ffor they thought a fayrer thyng that yf our lord wold that they deyde in bataylle, that they shold doo it in deffendyng theyr cyte that they had conquered to the cristiente, than to languysshe & to faylle within without essayeng yf our lord wold ayde them. Herof sourded a comyn word emonge them that alle cryed: Bataylle, bataylle, the bataylle! whan they myght see ony of the barons. Alle they sayd that they taryed alle to longe. This word was thus meuyd of the mene peple. The barons thought that this enterprise myght well come of our lord, and so by comon acord they assembled in counseyl. They alowed muche this that the peple made this request, and acorded that they wold sende to this proude prynce Corbagat, Peter Theremyte, whiche was an holy man, moche wyse and wel bespokin. And delyuerd to hym for felaw a valyaunt man named Hellom, trewe & of gretewytte, that coude wel speke the langage of the Sarasyns, & specially the langage of Perse. They charged them with the message, like as ye shal here what they sayde to Corbagat. Thise two sad men to fore sayd, dyde do demaunde trews for to goo to the sayd Corbagat, ffor they wold speke with hym in the name of the pylgryms. Hit was graunted with good wyll. They wente out of the cyte and toke with him good companye, whiche were assygned to them. They wente so ferre that they arryued at the pauyllon of this noble prynce Corbagat. They sawe hym sytte in moche grete bobaunce emonge his ryche men.

PETER salewed hym nothynge, ne made to hym honour ne reuerence, but spak heeryng alle in this maner ¶This holy companye of hye and noble men, barons, noble knyghtes, and other peple of our lord god, that ben yonder within the cyte, sende to the & comaunde that thou departe fro this siege, and that thou nomore assaylle them, but late them haue & kepe the toun in pees, which our lord Ihesu crist hath delyuered to them for to holde his faith and for to doo hym seruyse. For seynt Peter the prynce of thappostles, vpon the creaunce of whom our fayth is founded, hath conuerted it fyrst by his prechyng, and by the merueyllous myracles that he dyde. Our peple hath conquerd it not long syth by the wyll & ayde of our lord vpon the Turkes, that haue holden it with wrong and by force a certeyn tyme. Therfore thou oughtest to suffre vs to enjoye our herytage, and retorne thou in to thy countrey. And yf thou wilt not so doo, knowe thou for certayn that within the thyrde day swerdes schal fynysshe & ende this debate. And to thende that thou complayne not that we desire and wille the deth pourchasse of so moch peple in comyn bataylle, they shal offre to the this: that is to wete, yf thou wilt fyghte in thyne owne persone, they shal sende ayenst the one, al so hye a prynce as thou art, to whom thou shalt fyght. And whiche of you maye vaynquysshe & ouercome that other, shal conquere the quarelle for euermore without other debate. Yf this thynge plese the not, take certayn nombre of thy men, vj, x, or xij, or as many

as thou wylt, and our pilgryms shal sette as many ayenst them, without ony moo of that one syde and that other. And that they that shal wynne the feelde shal allewaye haue the gayne of this debate.

THEN Corbagat herde this message he was moche wroth and angry, and had grete desdayne and despyte. Thenne he tourned hym toward Peter & sayd to hym: Peter, they that hath sente the hether, ben not in such poynt as me semeth that they shold offre to me for to chose of theyr deuyses, but they be brought by my puyssaunce and strengthe that they maye doo nothynge of theyr wylle, but I shall doo with them alle my playsyre. But retourne thou & saye to thyse musardes, and saye to them that haue made the to meue fro the cyte and come hether, that they vnderstonde not yet the maluerte that they be in. And byleue certaynly that yf I had wold, I had or now broken and destroyed this toun and sette my men therin by force, in suche wyse that the cresten men had be alle slayn, men and wymmen, lytil and grete. But I wyll that ye abyde in more caytyfnes & mesease, dyeng and languysshyng for hongre, lyke as other houndes. And whan it shal please me, I shal entre in to the toun, and alle them that I shal fynde, men & wymmen of couenable eage, I shal put them alle bounden handes & feet in pyetous estate, and shal lede them alle to my lorde for to serue hym, & they shal be his esclaues. Alle the other I shall slee with the swerd, lyke an euyl tree that wyll bere no fruyte.

How the sayd Peter retorned in to the toun, and wold openly haue sayd his message, and of the subtyl counseyll of the duc whiche wold not suffre it, capitulo Cxxxvij

PETER Theremyte vnderstode hys pryde, whyche was moche grete of grete quantite of peple that he had, & also of his rychesses whiche were ouer moche. Thenne he departed and cam agayn in to the toun. He wold haue sayd the message of Corbagat openly in the presence of them that wold here hym, ffor theder ran grete and smale. But the duc Godeffroy, that was moche wyse and knewe moche, drewe hym a part, & called only the barons, and bad hym saye that he hath founden. He recounted to them alle, as he that had wel reteyned in his mynde, and coude saye and vtter it in the best manere. The duc doubted that yf the peple had herd this grete pryde, and the menaces that Corbagat had sayd, that they shold be ouer moche abasshed and feerd, therfor he commaunded to Peter that he shold saye none other thyng, but that only Corbagat desyred and demaunded the bataylle ayenst them, and that they shold make them redy. Peter acorded wel therto, & sayd to them lyke as the duc had commaunded hym. And vnnethe Peter had sayd the worde, but that alle cryed with one voys: And we wylle also the bataylle ayenst hym in godes name! They shewde wel by theyr sight and semblaunce that the desyre

of the batayll was grete in their hertes. Alle their meseases were forgoten for ioye to haue the victorye. The barons, whan they sawe that theyr peple made suche ioye they were moche glad, and moche the more trusted in them. By comyn counseyl they ordeyned the bay of the batayll on the morn; and that thus wold Corbagat haue it, they byleuyd it wel. And hastely wente every man to his lodgyng. There ye shold haue seen armourers put in poynt, hauberks and helmes fourbousshed, swerdes and custrellis whette. ❧ This nyght slepte they not in the toun noman. They that kept the hors toke good hede this nyght, and made alle thynge redy.

ES soone as it was nyght, it was cryed vpon peyne of dethe, that alle man sholde be in the morning to fore the sonne rysynge alle armed as he best myght, and drawe hym in to the batayll where as he was ordeyned, and that euery man shold folowe the baner of his captayne. ❧ Whan the spryngyng of the day apperid in the mornyng the men of the chirche were redy for to synge masse, and songe deuoutly. They that shold goo to the batayll were confessyd, & alle receyued the bodye of oure lord, which gaf to them surete of body and of sowle. Alle rancour & wrath were entierly perdonned, by cause they wold be in parfyght charyte, and therin doo the seruyse of our lord, whiche sayth in the gospell: In this shal alle men knowe that ye be my disciples, yf ye haue loue and charyte emonge you. ❧ Whan they were thus redy, oure lord sente to them his grace, which gaf

to them so grete hardines, that they that were the daye to fore so ferdful, feble and lene, that they myght not susteyne them self for feblenesse, became stronge and delyuer, in suche wyse that the armes that they bare weyed nothyng as them semed, and were hardy and vygorous, so that ther was none so litil but he had talente to doo grete thyng in the bataylle. The tyme cam that the bisshops and alle the other men of the chirche were reuested as for to synge masse. They helde the crosse and the sainctuaryes, with whiche they blessyd the peple & recommaunded them to god. They graunted pardon & remyssyon to them of alle their synnes, yf they deyde in the seruyse of our lord. To fore alle the other the bisshop of Puy prechyd and spak to the barons, & prayd them that they shold thyncke to auenge the shame of our lord Ihesu Criste, that thyse vntrewe Sarasyns had don to hym so longe in withholdyng of his herytage. Atte laste he blessyd them with his hand, and commaunded them to god deuoutly.

How to fore er our men departed, they made redy theyr bataylles right wel in poynt, & of the nombre of them, capitulo Cxxxviij

ON the morn erly our pylgryms assembled as it was ordeyned & deuysed, the thyrde day to fore thentre of Iuyll, to fore the yate of the brydge, to fore thyssue oute of the yate. They had theyr bataylles ordeyned and deuysed lyke as who shold goo to fore

& who shold come after. ❧ The fyrst batayll had Huon le Mayne, broder of the kynge of fraunce, & with hym Ancean de Rybemont, and the other barons & knyghtes of theyr countrey. They thought wel that the men that they ledde shold not lyghtly be discomfyted, therfore wente they first, for to perse in the better to fore ❧ The second batayll ledde Robert therle of flaundres, which was called the fryson: he had none other in his batayll but peple of his owne countree ❧ The thyrde batayll ledde Robert the duc of Normandye with his neueuw, whiche was moche valyaunt, therle Steuen of Aubuale, & alle them of his owen countreye ❧ The fourth batayll was delyuerd to the bisshop of Puy, whiche had don of thabyt of the chyrche, and rode upon a good stede, the helme laced. And he bare in his hond the holy spere of whiche oure saueour Ihesu Criste was perced in the side, and conduyted vygorously the batayll of therle of Tholouse, whiche was not there ❧ The erle Reignald of Toul had the v batayll; with hym was Peter de Stadenous his broder, therle Garnyer of Grece, Henry d'Asque, Reynart of Anmellac, Gaultier of Domedart ❧ In the vj batayll were Rembold the erle of Orenge, Loys de Moncon, & Lambert sone of Conon de Montagu ❧ The vij batayll ledde the right valyaunt Godeffroy duc of Loreyne; with hym was Eustace his brother, and them that he brought out of his countrey ❧ The viij batayll conduyted the noble, wyse, and wel preuyd Tancre, with the men that were delyuerd to hym ❧ The ix batayll ledde therle Huon of seynt Poul. Aniaran his sone was

with hym, Thomas de fere, Bawdwyn de Bourgh, Robert fytz Gerard, Regnauld de Beauuoys, and Gales de Chamont. The x ladde therle of Perse, and had with hym Euerard du Puyssat, Droon de Moncy, Raoul fytz Godeffroy & Conayn the Breton. Of the xj was capytayn Ysachar therle of Dys; with hym were Remon Pelez, Gaste de Bedyers, Gyrard de Roussylon, Guyllem de Monpellyer, and Guyllem Ameneux. The xij & the laste, in whiche was moost peple, was delyuerd to Buymont, and was ordeyned that he shold goo socoure suche bataylles as had moost nede. Therle of Tholouse, whiche was merueyllously seke, lefte they in the toun for to kepe fro the Tukes in the dongeon; ffor yf ther had be no garde, they myght haue sprongen and haue slayn alle the seke men, wymmen and children, and the feble men that abode byhynde in the toun, of whom ther were grete nombre in theyr herberous. They had made, as I haue sayd tofore, vpon a lytil tertre a stronge walle of chalke, in whiche were ordeyned places for to dresse engyns, whiche were all redy for to caste. They had left ij C men of armes, noble & hardy, for to deffend this paas fro the Turkes, whiche were on hye on the dongeon.

How Corbagat was aduertysed of thyssue of oure peple, and sente his archyers for to deffende the brydge, and how they were disconfyted, capitulo Cxxxix

AHAN they had thus deuysed theyr batayles, in euery batayll they had sette men on foote. It was acorded emonge them that they a foote shold goo to fore, and the knyghtes that cam after shold kepe them. It was deffended and cryed on payne of deth that none shold be so hardy that shold entende to ony gayn as longe as ony Turke deffended hym. But whan oure lord had gyuen them the vyctorye, thenne shold they retorne, and myght tarye to take and gadre the despoylles. Corbagat fro the begynnyng of the siege of the cyte had alwaye doubte and grete suspection that our peple shold sodanly come vpon his hoost, and specially syth that Peter Theremyte had be with hym in message. And therfor he had commaunded to them that were in the dongeon, that yf oure men thought to yssue they shold sowne a busyne, and sette oute a baner where they shold yssue. Wherof it happed that whan thyse batayles were renged to fore the yate, to fore they yssued, aboute the houre of pryme, they of the tour made the signe like as they were commaunded. Corbagat vnderstode that our men cam; and anon he sente two thousend archiers to the brydge to kepe it that they shold not passe.

WHAN the Turkes cam theder for to mayntene the passage, they descended alle afoote. The yates were opened, oure men yssued after thordenaunce that was deuysed. Huon le Mayne with alle his bataylle cam fyrst vn to this paas, whiche was thus kepte with his enemyes, so that his archiers & men afoote taryed a lytil and myght not passe in no wyse. Whan Huon the nobleman apperceyued this, he smote the hors with the spores, and so smote in on bothe sydes, that it was to late for the Turkes a foote to take theyr horses. Thenne torned they fleyng, defendyng them & shotyng with their bowes. Ancean de Ribemont rode ayenst them, and bete and helde the rowte so short allone that his men that cam after hym myght come and smyte in emong them and delyuerd many. And oftymes he plunged so depe in the presse that certaynly our men had supposed he had ben lost; but whan he cam agayn, he discouerd hym wel and made large place about hym. Alle men behelde hym, he gate there moche grete honour and prys. Huon le Mayne forgate not his swerd, & he dyde so moche that our pylgryms had by hym good luck and hope at this fyrst assemblee. Therle of Flaundres and the duc of Normandye, with the valyaunt erle of Henawde cam to this chaas. The archyers of the Turkes that so fledde were so euyl mened, that they were but a fewe whan they retorned in to thoost. Our men folowed them tyl nygh theyr lodgys, many of them they bete doun that neuer releuyd.

How oure men reioyced them of a dew or rousee descendyng thenne fro heuen, and of theyr mayntyen in approchyng the Turkes, capitulo Cxl.

ONE thynge happed whan oure men yssued out of the toun that ought not to be forgoten; ffor whan thyse archiers were disconfyted, the Latyns cam after in theyr ordenaunce a soft paas. Thenne began to falle a rayne or a dewe; so swete a rousee was neuer seen. It semed to euery man verytably, that it was the benediction of our lord & the grace of heuen that descended vpon them. Anon they were as fressh and al so light as they neuer had suffred mesease. This refresshment was not only in the men, but alle theyr horses were anon so strong, so fresshe, and so reioyced, as they had had alway al that whiche was nedeful for them. This was moche apperceyued that daye certaynly, ffor the horses that many dayes had nothyng to ete sauf leeues of trees & skorches or ryndes, were in this bataylle more stronge and more penyble than were the horses of the Turkes, whiche had alwaye as moche as they myght.

THE captayns acorded that they shold drawe them toward the montaynes, whiche was fer fro the cyte wel ij myles, ffor yf the Turkes whiche had moch grete plente wold goo thederward, they shold be bytwene oure men and the toun, and shold close them in. In this maner wente one bataylle to fore another, withoute this

that one touched another in ony wyse. Whan the Turkes sawe them alle they merueylled & were abasshed, ffor they had supposed that they had not be but a fewe enclosed in the toun. Now they semed by the myracle of our lord that they were as many of them as were of the Turkes, and yet moo. Emonge the men of armes were the men of the chirche reuested with awbes and stooles, they that were preestes, and the clerkys in surplys, and eche of them bare a crosse in his hand. They that were abyden in the toun were on the walles, reuestyd also, in prayers & oroysons and teeris cryeng mercy to oure lord that he wold haue pyte of his peple, and saue them that day, & that he wold not suffre that his name and his fayth shold torne to reproche by the mescreauntes and hethen peple.

How Corbagat ordeyned his bataylles, and how the two hoostes marched to gydre in bataylle, capitulo Cxlj

By the signes that they of the dongeon made to them of thoost, and by the tydynges that the archiers brought, Corbagat kneweand vnderstode certaynly that oure men were ysued oute of the cyte, and cam toward hym for to fighte. Thenn he was adcerteyned of this wher of he had desdayne to fore and holden it for mocquerye. He toke counseyl of his barons, and hastely ordeyned his bataylles by the counseyl of his wysemen, and specially of them that were born

in Anthyoche, of whom he had many with hym. He made a bataylle of moche grete plente of knyghtes, the best & moost hardy that he had; this bataylle delyuerd he to Solyman, of whom ye haue herd in dyuerse places to fore. He commaunded that they shold drawe them toward the see, to fore er our men shold haue taken and pourprysed alle the playn bytwene the montayne and the cyte. This did he by intent that when our men were descomfyted, and they would draw them selves to ward the sea or to ward the cyte, this grete bataylle shold come thenne to fore, and they should be staked as bytwene two hills and closed. His other bataylles he sette in poynt by leyser, and made that one to goo to fore another as he that knowe ynowgh of the faytes of warre. And after spak to the captaynes, and sayde to them, that they shold mayntene them as hye men and good knyghtes, & not to be aferd ne esmayed of thyse caytyues, men enfamyned, euyll armed, & all to-brused of the grete trauaylles that they had suffred.

WHAN our men had pourprysed entierly the playn in such wise that they doubted not to be closed in, they approuched so nyghe the Turkes that the Turkes myghte shoote at them. They made theyr trompes and busynes to sowne lowd, and spored their horses the thre fyrst bataylles to gydre: wel founde they that receyued them, ffor the Turkes were grete men & well armed. Our men dyde right wel in this comyng on: the frensshemen and the flemynges conteyned

them vygorously in brekynge well the presse. But thenne cam so grete rowtes of Turkes, that it behoued the other bataylles of our men to assemble hastely for to socoure the thre first bataylles. They were alle at the medle, sauf the laste bataylle, whiche Buymont conduyted as ye haue herd. There shold ye haue seen fiers skarmoche of swerdes, of maces & axesse. The malles were so grete & strokes that ye shold not haue herd yf it had thondred. The duc Godeffroy sawe a bataylle come where in were moo men than ony of the other. Well thought he that yf that were disconfyted, the other shold be moche abasshed. He drewe thederward, and smote in them asprely and vygorously. There dyde he and his felawship moche wel, and so valyauntly that they slewe many, and hewe of heedes and armes, in suche wyse that the felde lay ful of dede men, of hurt & wounded, in so many that the Turkes myght no lenger suffre it ne lenger endure, but were disconfyted and were put to flyght.

SOLYMAN that had the grete bataylle, as I haue sayd to fore, apperceyued fro ferre his men conteyned them but febly, and approched and sawe the bataylle of Buymont, which yet had not be in the medle with the other. He adressid hym thedre, & dyde do shote at hym grete plente of arowes at the approuchyng. But after they henge theyr bowes on theyr armes, and ran vpon them with axes and swerdes, and smote so sore on them that almost they tourned the heedes of theyr horses, ffor they myght not abide so grete estourne

so sharpe of so moche peple. The duc Godeffroye knewe and sawe them fro ferre, and drewe hym diligently to that parte. Tancre toke hede also of his vncle, and cam dilygently to socoure hym. At the comyng of them two, which brought many men with them, was Solyman discomfyted, and muste parte fro the place. But the Turkes had made redy fyre grekyssh, & threwe it in to the grasse, whiche was longe and drye in the felde. Our men thenne departed for the smoke, whiche was blak & thycke. Whan the Turkes sawe that they on horsbak were withdrawen, they ran vpon our men afoote, & slewe many of them. Our men that were on horsbak were yssued out of the thyck smoke, and herde the crye of them that they so slewe, and smote the horses with the spores, & camen agayn alle, and alle them that they founde of theyr enemyes they bete and slewe, & put to flyght. So ferre they chassed them, betyng and hewyng them, that they cam to the grete multitude, whiche thenne were discomfyted and put to flyght.

Of the fleynge of Corbagat, and of som Turkes gadred to gydre and agayn discomfyted by our men, capitulo Cxlij

IN this partye where the bataylle had bee, was in a valeye, as where descended in to the see a lytil brook or rennyng water. Vnto that place had our men chassed the Turkes, & there they drewe and assembled them agayn vpon a tertre right hye, & made do

sowne theyr trompettes & busynes for to brynge their peple to gidre. But our men, that thenne had not to doo in none other place, camen alle to them. Huon le Mayne, therle of Flaundres, the duc of Normandye, the duc Godeffroy, Buymont and Tancre, & they that were with them, began moche myghtely to assaylle theyr enemyes thurgh the water, so fiersly and by so grete hardynesse and force that they passed ouer, and sodaynly ran on that hylle where they were on, & made them to descende doun moche peryllously ❧ Fro thenne the Turkes had none hope to abyde no longer on the felde ne on the champayns, but euery man wente and fledde here & there where he myght and thought beste.

CORBAGAT the lord of the hoost, fro the begynnyng that the bataylles assembled, had eschewed the peryll, and was withdrawen vpon an hylle a ferre of, for to see the ende. He sente ofte messagers for to knowe how his men conteyned and demened them. Wherfore he abode there, and sawe how the Turkes cam alle disconfyted, without kepyng araye ne ordenaunce of bataylle ❧ His frendes that were about hym sayd to hym: Syre, ye see well at this tyme how it gooth, therfore thynke ye dylygently for your self, & departe hastely fro this place ❧ He thenne wente his waye and fledde as hastely as he myght; he had so grete fere & drede in his herte that he durst abyde in no place. He passed the ryuer and flood of Eufrates, & by the rennyng of his hors he withdrewe hym as fer as he myght.

THAN his men knewe that they were without capytayne they were moche abasshed. Thenne thought none of them of other, but euery man dyde the best he coude or myghte to saue hymself, and fledde alle as moche as they myght ❧ Our valyaunt barons, whiche that had sore trauaylled theyr horses, durste not folowe them ouer ferre lest theyr horses myght faylle them. Tancre with a companye of four thousand folowed, sleyng & betyng doun alle them that they myght atteyne, ffor the fere and drede was so grete in the hertes of the Sarasyns that x men myght haue chassed v C Sarasyns. Ther was it euydently proued & shewd, that there is no counseyl, ne none maye be gyuen ayenst our lord god, and that our lord forgeteth not them that haue stedfast hope in hym; for a smalle peple, poure, and as alle deed for honger, whiche were come fro fer countrees and londes, by the ayde of Ihesu Criste vaynquysshyd alle the power of thoryent in theyr owne londe and countree, whiche were so grete plente of peple garnysshyd and replenesshyd of alle that they had nede of.

How our peple retorned fro the chaasse, and wente to the pillage, and of the grete rychesses that they fonde, capitulo Cxliij

THE batayll was thus fynyssh-yd, in suche wyse that the pil-gryms had the vyctorye. They wente strayte to the lodgyses of the Turkes; there founde they so grete rychesses of gold, of syluer, of precious stones, of vayssell of dyuerse facions, ta-pytes and clothes of sylk, so moche that neuer man myghte well preyse. Oxen, sheep, and kyen were there grete plentye; whete and mele grounden, of which they had grete nede, ther was so moch that all they were encombred to bere it. They wan horses in this discomfyture good and fatte, so many that they were abasshed of the grete multitude that was there. They toke and gadred the despoylles & the tentes, wherof they had so grete rychesses, that of suche an hoost, was neuer none seen more faire ne ryche. And this cam to them merueyllously well to poynt, ffor alle theyr tentes & theyr pauyllons were holly rotten. Wymmen, childeren, and other peple whiche bare none armes they founde ouer many in the lodgyses, whom alle they brought in to the cyte emong the other thynges. The barons assembled them for to see the tentes of Corbagat, whiche was merueyllous, ffor it was made in the forme of a cyte. It had towres & crestes of dyuerse colours wrought with fyn sylke; ffro the mayster palays were aleys

in to other tentes lyke to stretes in a grete toun. Ther myght sytte in the grete halle moo than two thousand men.

THAN our men had recuyelled thus the rychesses and despoylles, they alle maade grete trusses full of ryche thynges, and charged them on theyr horses and backes and entred in to the cytye of Anthyoche. Yf they thenne were glad and ioyous, it was no merueylle; ffor in longe tyme to fore, fylle ne happed suche aduenture in cristiente. They rendred and gaf to our lord many thankes and graces of lawde with alle theyr very hartes humbly & deuoutly, ffor wel knewe they that alle was comen fro hym. The Turkes whiche were in the dongeon had wel seen that theyr peple were vaynquysshyd, and had none hope thenne to be rescowed ne of no socoure. Therfor anon as the barons were entred in the cyte they made them to speke and trete with them. And acorded to gydre that they alle shold take theyr wyues and childeren and bere with them suche goodes as they had, and rendre and gyue ouer the dongeon. The baners of our barons were sette aboue on it thenne. The werkes of our lord Ihesu Crist ben moche hye and merueyllous, ffor fro right grete pouerte, cam oure peple to ouer grete rychesses in so short a tyme. It is moche good to affye & truste in hym that hath such power and myght. It was meruayl of the disease & pouerte that our barons had suffred. The valyaunt duc Godefroy was brought to this poynt at the day of the batayl that

he had not wheron to ryde, but he must praye and requyre moche swetly therle of Tholouse, whiche remeuyd not oute of the toun, that he wold leue to hym an hors, but he had grete payne to gete it.

He had despended alle his hauoyr & good entierly for to susteyne the pour gentilmen, in suche wyse that he had nothynge hym self. There were many knyghtes that rychely were come in to the hooste atte begynnyng, that were brought to so grete pouerte that this day they rode on asses and on pour mares. And many hye men, as knyghtes valyaunt and hardy, myght not cheuysshe for to ryde, but wente afoot emong the foote men, where they helde moche wel theyr place, ffor they mayntened & taught the mene peple how they myght doo to theyr enemyes grettest dommage ❧ The power of Perse was moche affebled this day, ffor ther wer so many slayn and deed that alle therthe ther aboute was couerd. The nombre of them that were slayn was neuer verytably knowen. Moche was chaunged the state of our men; ffor he that in the mornyng yssued oute alle poure, in suche wyse that he had not for to ete, at euen he entred in to the cyte ryche of good and of vitaylles, in suche wyse as he myght haue holden a grete court & companye. ❧ This good aduenture whiche honoured alle cristiente, and specially the royamme of fraunce, happed the yere of thyncarnacion of oure lord M lxxxxviij, the xxj day of the moneth of Iuyn.

Of the fayre ordenaunces that oure peple made in the chirches of Anthyoche, and in other townes by, after this vyctorye, capitulo Cxliiij

SYTH that the barons were retorned fro the bataylle, and the thynges of the cyte were wel ordeyned, by the counseyl of the valyaunt bysshop of Puy, and by the prelates that were in the hoost, was acorded by them alle that the chirches of the toun were entierly made clene, & ordeyned to doo the seruyse of oure lord god. And especially the chyef cathedralle chirche, whiche is founded in thonour of seynt Peter. They establysshed therin clerkes & curates that shold serue in the chirche, & other to gouerne and kepe the holy places clene. for the false and vntrew Sarasyns had defowled them; they had sette in the chirches somme theyr kyen, oxen and sheep, and other theyr horses & asses. The comyn wymmen and euylle knaues had made theyr ordure and fylthe in them that it was pyte to see, and also they defowled thymages of Ihesu Crist, of our lady, & of other sayntes with fylth, myre and ordure. And lyke as they had ben a-lyue, they had drawe them and cut of theyr noses, and pycked out theyr eyen.

THE barons and alle the pylgrymes acorded there shold be ordeyned and establyssyd rentes to the clerkes that shold serue in the chirches. There was offerd gold and syluer ynowghe for to make crosses and

chalyces, & also clothes of sylk for to make agayn vestements for men of the chirch, & aournementes for aulters. The patriarke of the toun, whiche was a greek, named Iohan, they ordeyned and sette hym agayn in his place with moche more grete honour and solempnyte. The Turkes had caste & put hym oute with grete shame, and had don to hym many euyllis for the fayth of our sauyour Ihesu Criste that he helde. In the cytees beyng aboute Anthyoche oure men sette bisshoppes, in the cytees where as none were at that tyme; but in Anthyoche, where as they fonde one, they sette none other, til afterward that the good man apperceyued that he lytil prouffyted there, by cause the Latyns vnderstode no grekysshe language, & lefte his dygnyte, & wente in to Constantynoble, with his good wyll without ony forse or constraynt.

THENNE assembled the men of the chirche, & they chose and elected for to be patriarke the bisshop of Tarse, whiche was named Bernard, born at Valence. He was comen with the good bysshop of Puy, and he had made hym his chappellayn. He was made patriarke. The seygnorye of the cyte graunted alle the barons to Buymont, lyke as they had promysed & couenaunted. Sauf the erle of Tholouse, whiche helde the yate of the brydge, & I wote not with how many toures he had garnysshed it, and in no wyse wold gyue it ouer, but sayde that it was his parte. And by cause that Buymont to fore was called prynce of the peple of his contre, therfor that name abode to hym, and

to alle the lordes after hym of the cyte, and ben alwaye called Prynces of Anthyoche.

How our peple sente ambassadours to themperour of Constantinople for to somone hym to come and socoure them as he had promysed, capitulo Cxlv

THE tydynges were thus ordeyned in the cyte as I haue deuysed to you. Thenne was the counseyl taken emonge the barons that they shold sende to themperour of Constantinoble for to somone hym by his fayth, that acordyng to the couenauntes that he had made to them, that he shold not tarye, but come in his propre persone for to helpe them, & specially at the siege of Iherusalem to whiche they entended for to goo. Yf he wold not, thenne did they him wel to knowe that they wold not forthon holde the couenauntes that were made with hym, ne kepe them ❧ And for to doo this message they chaas Huon le Mayne, broder to kyng Phelip of fraunce, & Bawdwyn therle of Henawd ❧ Thyse two departed fro thoost for to goo vnto Constantinoble. But in the waye certayn Turkes assaylled them, in which medle was lost therle Bawdwyn, in suche wyse that neuer after were tydynges herd of hym. Somme sayd that he was slayn there, & other sayde that he was taken & ladde in to ferre countrees, but the trouthe of hym was neuer knowen ❧ Huon le Mayne escaped alle hool with out hurt, & cam vnto Constantantinoble to themperour. But there he empeyred moche his

renommee, ffor he that was of so hye lygnage, and alway had ben in thoost, large, wyse, noble, and a moche valyaunt knyght had thenne no regarde to them that sent hym, ne wolde not retourne to them agayn, but departed fro themperour & went strayte in to fraunce. Hit was a gretter blame in hym than in a lasse man.

CHYLES the pylgryms soiourned in Anthyoche a mortalyte and deth sourded and roos emong them, so grete that ther was no day but there were xxx or xl biers in the chirches. It was so grete that euery man awayted presently the deth; there was none that supposed to haue escaped. Thenne happed a grete dommage in thooste, ffor the valyaunt man of grete trouthe and of hye counseyl deyde that tyme, Aymart the bisshop of Puy; ffor his deth was grete sorowe thenne thurgh the toun. He was entered and honorably buryed in the chirche of seynt Peter, where as the spere that opened the syde of oure lord was founden; he was moche bewaylled as the fader of thoost. After deyde a right valyaunt knyght, a trew wyseman & of grete courage, Henry d'Asque, in the castel of Torbesel where he soiourned, and there he deyde, and was buryed in the same place. Reynard de Mollac, a good knyght and of hye lygnage, deyde in Anthyoche; he was buryed in the porche of seynt Peter.

ALLE the wymmen that were in the toun deyed by this pestylence sauf a fewe, in suche wyse that of this lytil peple deyde in a lytil whyle in thys toun l M men and wymmen ❧ The occasion of this mortalyte was many tymes demaunded of the fisiciens and wyse clerkes. The somme sayde that thayer was corrompped. The other sayde that the peple had had ouer longe moche anguyssh of hongre and of thurst, and whan they cam therto and plente of vytalles, they toke therof ouer oultrageously, by whiche they ranne in a grete infirmyte and sekenes. This shewde they euydently by them that ete but lytil & by mesure, ffor they that so dyde cam lyghtly to conualence and helthe.

How the pylgryms of thoost desired to goo vnto Iherusalem for to eschewe the mortalite, and taccomplisshe their vowe, capitulo Cxlvj ❧

THE pylgryms, for teschewe the mortalyte of the toun, and also for taccomplysshe their pilgremage, began to crye for to goo to Iherusalem, ffor therfor were they departed out of their countrees. They moche prayd the barons that they wold make them redy, & dylygently lede and conduyte them theder. The barons that myght not be in reste for theyr requestes, assembled & had counseyl on this mater. ❧ Somme sayde that it were good that they shold

anon go forth toward the holy cyte, by cause the comyn peple desyred it & also that euery man was bounden by his vowe so to doo. The other sayde that it was not tyme for to goo forth, ffor the brennynge hete was ouer grete, and the drought shold cause that they shold lacke water; the peple shold not fynde whete, the horses shold lacke pastures. But counseylled to tarye & delaye this passage tyl Mychelmasse; thenne shold the tyme be more attempered & moderat. And duryng the mene whyle, men myght do reste theyr horses, and gete newe for them that had none and had nede of somme, and also men myght refresshe them self whiche were wery and seke ❧ To this laste counseyll acorded they alle, and therfor it was late or they departed.

THENNE deuysed the barons that they wolde remeue for thynfyrmyte of the place, and to goo there as they myght haue vytailles better chepe. ❧ Buymont descended in to the londe of Cylyce; there toke he Tarse, Adane, Mamstre, Aunaure. Thyse four cytees a fore sayd he garnysshed well with his men, and helde entierly alle the countree aboute. ❧ The other wente ferther in the countre, & ladde theder theyr horses for to soiourne. There were many knyghtes & men a/fote that passed the ryuer of Eufrates, for to goo forth at al auenture thurgh the countrees tyl they come to Bawdwyn, broder of duc Godeffroye, to Rages, whiche receyued them gladly, and gaf them vytaylles, and made them good chere as long as they were there, and atte departyng he gaf to them

fayre & good yeftes. It was not longe after that it happed that one Rodahan, the lord of Halappe, had debate and warre ayenst a baron of his, whiche was castelayn of a castel named Hasart. And ye shal vnderstande for certayne that there was founden first the playe of dyse, and fro thens it cam, and it is named so. This grete man of Halappe assembled his peple, & assyeged this castel with alle his power. The lord that was within sawe wel that he myght not holde it ayenst his lord, and he had no Turkes for to socoure hym, ne helpe hym. Therfor he spak to on his frende, a crysten man, which was pryue with hym, and sente to duc Godefroy many grete yeftes, and requyred and prayd hym moche affectuously that he wold socoure hym in his nede, ffor he had desire to be his, and wold be bounden to hym to doo hym grete playsyrs and seruyses. And sente to hym his sone in hostage for surete.

THE valyaunt duc, that had a softe herte & debonayr, receyued the loue and thalyaunce of the lord of Hasart. He thought wel that it was not ayenst the wylle of our lord for to afeblysshe one of his enemyes for another. Thenne sente he to his brother Bawdwyn to Rages for to send hym peple ynowe, ffor his purpoos and wylle was to reyse the siege to fore this castel for to socoure his frende. Rodahan had holden vij dayes longe siege to fore this castel. The duc Godefroy cam by grete iourneyes; the messagers of the lord of the castel were with hym, ffor they myght not goo in to the castel to their

lord, ffor it was besieged round about. Therfor they toke two douues or culuers, which they had taken and brought with them for to doo this; that is to saye, they toke lettres and wrote theryn alle theyr entent, and bonde thoo lettres to the tayles of the douues, and lete them flee. And the douues flewe and cam strayt to Hasart, fro whens they were, and had ben there nourisshed. They that awayted on them toke them. The lord toke the lettres, and fonde therin how he had alyaunce of the duc, his loue and grace, and how he cam for to socoure hym with grete strengthe. He had thenne grete ioye, and toke to hym grete hardynesse, in suche wyse that he hym self ysaued out of the yates with his men largely, and assaylled them of the siege vygorously, whom he had sore doubted not long byfore.

The dylygence that duc Godeffroy made for to socoure a Turke, to whom he had promysed, and how he reysed the siege, beyng to fore his castell, capitulo Cxlvij

NOw was the duc Godeffroy approuched whan his brother cam with iii M horsmen, noble, valyaunt and hardy men, and right wel armed. They were but oon journey fro the castel. Therle Bawdwyn acorded wel to thenterprise of the duc his broder, but he said wel that Rodohan the lord of Halappe hadd moche grete peple, and that he knewe wel for

certayn. Therfore he counseylled hym that he shold sende for the other barons that were abyden in Anthyoche, and praye them as his frendes that they wold addresse them taccomplisshe this that he had enterprysed. Trouth it was that he had moche prayd Buymont and therle of Tholouse to fore er he departed, but they had a lytil enuye, by cause the Turke had more requyred the duc than ony of them. But now whan he had sente for them, them thought that they myght not goodly abyde behynde, and ordeyned moche dilygently theyr goyng forth, & wente so ferre that they ouertoke hym. Whan they were alle to gydre, they were wel xxx M men of armes.

RODAHAN had his espyes, by whome he knewe certaynly that thyse men cam vpon hym. He doubted them moche, and he had wel xl M men, but yet he durst not abide them, but departed fro the siege, and retorned to Halappe. The duc knewe nothyng that the siege was departed, but wente strayt toward Hasart. There were ynowe in Anthyoche of knyghtes, gentilmen and other, whiche knewe that the valyaunt duc had to doo with men, and departed fro thens, and wente toward hym for to helpe hym.

Of somme pylgryms goyng fro Anthyoche toward Godeffroy, were disconfyted by the Turkes, & rescowed by the duc, capitulo Cxlviij

EGRETE quantite of Turkes were embusshed besyde the way where by they shold passe, for to awayte them. Whan our peple approuched, as they that toke none hede, the Turkes sprang on them sodanly, whiche were many moo than our men were. Somme they slewe, & many moo toke prysonners, and bonde them, and retorned to theyr retrayte. The tydynges cam to the duc and to the hoost, which were out of their wytte for sorow that they had. Thenne retorned they hastely for to siewe the malefactours. The people of the countre told them which way they were goon, and addressyd them toward thyse Turkes. Whan they had ouertaken and approuched them, they ran on them with grete herte, and slewe them som of them, and somme they toke prysonners; fewe or none escaped. And they delyuerd them that were taken prysonners, the cristen men whom they had taken.

RODOHAN was moche endommaged, for they were wel x M Turkes of the best and chosen men. Whan oure men had don this they toke agayn the waye toward Hasart. Whan they approuched, the lord of the toun ysued out with thre honderd men on horsbak, and there as he founde the duc, he descended to therthe,

and kneled to fore hym, and thanked hym moche, and after alle the other that were there with hym, for the socours that they had don to hym in this nede. Thenne swar he to fore them alle, that to thyse barons and to the other cristen men he shold be euer more trewe and good frende, in suche wyse that he wold to his power pourchace to them the best that he coude, and warne them of theyr harme. He lodged them moch wel and honorably, and made to them grete presentes. ❧ On the morn therle Bawdwyn retorned vnto Rages, & that other hoost helde theyr waye vnto Anthyoche.

How the duc alway enforced hym to augment cristiente, and of somme fortresses by hym beten and destroyed, capitulo Cxlix.

THE duc Godeffroy knewe well that the pestylence & mortalyte endured yet in Anthyoche, and his broder had moche prayd hym that he wold come and soiourne in his londe vnto August, that than the tyme shold be better attempered. He toke with hym a lytil companye of them that were moost suffrable, and cam to Torbosel, and to two other castellys, that one named Hatap & that other Rauendal. Of thyse landes dyde he entierly his wylle. His brother visyted and sawe hym ofte whyles he abode there ❧ The peple of the countre, & specially men of relygyon, complayned moche of two Hermyens that were bretheren, that one was named Pancrace, and

that other Conasylles. They had a fortresse in that contre, and were grete and noble men there, but they had no trouthe in them; they receyued the robbours and theuys that pylled & defowlled the holy places, the chirches, and dyde moche harme to alle maner of peple. They were enhaunced in so moch pryde, that they toke the presente of the pauyllon that Bawdwyn had sente to his brother to the siege of Anthyoche, and dyde it to be presented to Buymont in theyr name. Whan the duc herde thyse complayntes he sente of his men of armes, & the people of his countre, and dyde doo take the fortresses of thyse two Hermyens, and bete and destroyed them to therthe. Whiles that the valiaunt duc soiourned in thyse partyes, many of the peple of the hoost wente to therle Bawdwyn to Rages, ffor he dyde them moche good, and refresshyd them wel, and largely departed of his good to them. The way was thenne alle sure and good, syth that the castel of Hasart was alyed entierly with our peple, as ye haue herd.

How the knyghtes of Rages wolde haue betrayed Bawdwyn theyr lorde, and how he was therof aduertysed, capitulo Cl.

SO moche people of cristen men cam to Rages that it desplesyd moche to the cytezeyns of the toun. And Thermyens & Latyns discorded in many thynges, ffor withoute faylle oure men wold haue the seygnorye. They dyde many ennoyes and vylonyes to

theyr hostes within their howses. The erle hym self, by cause he had so grete plente of men of hys owne countre, he called the fewer and lasse to counseyll of the noble men of the cyte, by whos helpe he was comen to his hyenesse & noble lordship. They had therof moche grete desdayne within theyr hertes, & repented them of that they had chosen hym & sette hym to be their lord ouer them; ffor they doubted that therle, whiche was so lyberall as he that gaf to euery man, shold on a day take all that they had. Therfor they sente to the admyrals of the Turkes, that were theyr neyghbours, that they would pourchasse gladly by theyr helpe how therle Bawdwyne shold be slayn, or atte leste put oute and chassed awaye fro the cyte, in suche wyse that he shold neuer retorne. The Turkemans acorded wel to this werk

¶ This mater was so ferforth that they of Rages toke alle theyr goodes pryuely, and sette it in the howses of theyr acqueynted neyghbours in cytees and castellys ther about.

THYLES they spak and aduysed of this treyson, a frende of therle Bawdwyn cam to hym and recounted this fayte al a-longe: he merueylled moch therof, & dyde enquyre of this thing, and founde that it was soo. He knewe wel them that had ordeyned this trayson, and by whom it shold be doo. And secretely he sende his men, and toke the captayns of this falsenes; he put out theyr eyen of theyr heedes: other that had so moche trespaced, he chassed them out of the toun, & toke alle that they had. Somme there were that he

lete dwelle stylle in the cyte, but he toke their good as moche as he myght gete. He had wel by thoccasion of this murder that thise traytres deuysed xx M besauntes, but he departed alle to the pylgryms that had holpen hym to take the castellys & fortresses, & somme cytees about Rages. He was moche dradde and doubted moche of his neyghbours, in suche wyse that none of them durst enterprise ony debate ayenst hym. The grete and hye men of the contre wold gladly haue pourchased the moyens and maners for to be delyuerd of hym, yf they had myght.

How therle Bawdwyn was in daunger of deth by the treson of a Turk named Balac, capitulo Clj.

IN this countre was a grete & an hye man, a Turke, & was named Balac. He was acqueynted and moche pryue with therle Bawdwyn. He was somtyme lord of the cyte of Sorarge, to fore that our peple cam in to that countre. This Turke apperceyued that therle Bawdwyn sayde not to hym alle his counseyll and secrete, as he was wonte, ne shewde hym so good chere. On a daye he cam to hym, & shewde hym by fayr langage, that he shold come to a fortresse of his, whiche he wold gyue to hym and delyuer, by cause he had no more, and also he wold haue nomoo, as he saide, ffor his loue shold suffyse hym. And he would sende his wyf & his childeren in to Rages for to dwell there vnder hym, by cause

as he sayde that the Turkes his neyghbours, and specially they of his lygnage, hated hym moche, and pourchassed alle the harme they myght, for the grete acquentaunce that he had with the cristen men. The erle thought nothyng but alle wel, and sayd that he wold goo at his requeste to this fortresse. At the day appointed bytwene them bothe, therle cam theder with an honderd horsmen.

BALAC wente to fore, and as a fals traytre had hyd an honderd of his men, well armed, within the fortresse. Whan they were arryued to fore the fortresse, Balac prayd therle that he wold come vp on hye and see the place how stronge it was, & that he shold brynge but fewe men with hym, ffor he sayd he had certayn thynges of which he myght take harme, yf they alle entred. The good erle wold haue doon soo, but he had in his company a valyaunt knyght, wel aduysed & a wise man, whiche aduertysed his felaws other knyghtes how it was grete perylle and daunger so to lete hym goo. And they wold not suffre hym, but reteyned hym by force, ffor they doubted moche the malyce of this man, in suche wyse that in theyr hertes they had suspection of treson. The erle abode by their counseyl, and sente vp xij of his men wel armed in to the toure for to see yf ther were ony thyng to doubte. He helde hym emong his men. They that wente vp anon apperceyued wel the trayson, ffor the Turkes sprange oute of theyr places where they were hyd, and toke thise xij men by force, and desarmed them, & reteyned them bounden handes and feet.

WHAN the erle knewe this, he was moche sorouful for his men that he had thus lost. Thenne he drewe hym forth and spak to Balac, and moche prayd hym, & coniured hym by the feaulte and oth that he had made to hym, that he wold yeld his men to hym, or atte leste sette them at rawnson, and he wolde gyue for them as moche as he wold haue. Balac answerd to hym that he trauaylled for nought, ffor he shold neuer haue none of them, but yf he wold gyue to hym the cyte of Sororge, whiche had ben his to fore. Therle sawe that this fortresse was not lyghtly to be goten, ffor it was ouer stronge, and stode in a strange place, and rychely garnysshyd. And retorned to Rages moche anguysshous of the paryll that he had be in, whan he wold by thatycement of this felon Turk haue goon vp in to the tour, and sorouful he was for them that were taken.

HE had delyuerd the cyte of Sororge to kepe vnto a moche wise, valyaunt and good knyght, named Foubert de Chartres; this man kept hit with an C men of armes, valyaunt men. Whan he herd saye that his lord had ben thus almost be bytrayed, and how he had lost xij men, he was sory, and thought hou he myght helpe them ayenst this fals Turk, that had don to hym this feet. It was not longe after that in a nyght he sette a busshement nygh vnto this fortresse, a part of his men, and in the mornynge he

with a fewe of his companye cam to fore this toure, and toke the proye of beestes. They that were on hye on the batayllement sawe that they were but a fewe, and told it to Balak & to the other men that were in the fortresse. They toke their horses hastely and folowed them, for to rescowe that whiche they droof awaye. In suche wyse they exployted that they cam vpon them busshement; they sprang sodanly oute and closed them in. Foubert retorned vpon them, and slewe I wote not how many, but vj he toke a lyue, ffor whom he had incontinent vj of our men, of them that he helde in his fortresse. It was not longe aftir that four of the other escaped out of the fortresse & brake theyr prison, whyles theyr kepars slepte. Whan Balac sawe that ther were nomoo but two, he dyde do smyte of theyr heddes.

FRO than forth on therle Bawdwyn, that had acqueyntance to dyuerse admyrals aboute hym, wold neuer after acqueynte hym more ne truste ony Turk, but eschewed their companyes & theyr amytee. And that he shewde wel sone after, ffor ther was an hye and grete man, a Turk in that contre, named Balduc, of whom I haue spoken to fore, whiche sold this auncyen cyte named Samoloc vnto Bawdwyn. And this Turk had encouenaunted and promysed that he shold brynge his wyf and childeren within Rages, but he sought fals occasions for to delaye this thynge. On a day he cam to Bawdwyn, as he was acustomed to doo, and Bawdwyn demaunded hym why he

dyde not that he had couenaunted and promysed. He began to excuse hym by thynges that were not trewe. The erle toke hym, and incontinent dyde do smyte of his heed.

How therle of Tholouse toke the cyte of Albane, and there constitued a bisshop, capitulo Clij

THE duc Godeffroy soiourned thus as I haue sayd in the land of Torbesel. Therle of Tholouse assembled his peple, and toke grete plente of poure pylgryms that were there ydle and dyde nought. He wente to a cyte wel garnysshyd, named Albane, ij iourneys fro Anthyoche. He assyeged it, and so constreyned them within that they yelded the toun to hym, and he entred therin and helde it, and by the moyen therof he had alle the countre about. He thanked oure lord humbly of thonour that he had gyuen to hym. Thenne chasse he a bisshop in the toun, a good wyseman that was named Peter, and born in Nerbonne, and he gaf to hym entierly half this cyte. After this he cam in to Anthioche, and was there sacred by the patriarke Bernard, and gaf to hym his enterinement and made hym archibisshop. In the company of therle of Tholouse was a noble knyght and valyaunt named Guyllamme. This man whan Anthyoche was taken, toke by aduenture the wyf of Ancean, lord of the toun, & two of his neuewes sones of his broder, named Sansadol, and helde them yet prysoners. But this San-

sadol gaf to hym for them grete good & rychesse, wherof he delyuerd them, bothe the lady & childeren ❧ In this sayson cam grete plente of peple out of Duchelande, and arryued atte port seynt Symeon, & soiourned within Anthyoche. But the mortalyte endured yet, in suche wyse that they deyde almost alle; there escaped but few but that they were all deed in short tyme; ffor this pestylence continued thre monethes hool vnto thentree of wynter. There were deed of knyghtes only v C; of the mene peple noman knewe the nombre.

How our peple retorned in to Anthyoche, and toke counseyl for to goo to Iherusalem, and of this that foloweth, capitulo Cliij

THE fyrst day of Nouembre, the barons that were departed for the pestelence were alle retourned in to Anthyoche, lyke as they had promysed. Theyr counseyl and delyberacion was that they shold goo and assiege the cyte of Marran, whiche was stronge & wel garnysshyd; fro Albare that they had taken, it was not but viij myle ❧ Noman myght holde lenger theyr comyn peple; all were desirous to goo to Iherusalem ❧ Atte daye named they were alle redy; therle of Tholouse, the duc Godeffroye, Eustace hys broder, therle of flaundres, the duc of Normandye, and Tancre cam to the cyte of Marran and assieged it. They of the toun were moch rych, & full of grete pryde. And specially by cause that the same yere at assemblee of them was a scarmoche

ayenst oure men, of whome they toke somme and somme slewe, in suche wyse that they had the better; ffor that cause they preysed the lasse our pylgryms. They blamed and iniured our barons, and despyted them and alle thoost, they beyng on the walles. Vpon the hye towres they sette vp crosses and spytte on them in despyt of our fayth, and made other shameful thynges for to angre with alle oure peple. The barons were moche wroth, and dyde do crye do assault, & assailled the toun asprely in suche wyse that yf they had had laddres they wolde haue entred in to the cyte by force the ij daye after that they cam theder.

THE thirde day cam Buymont, whiche brought men with hym largely, and lodged where as the cyte was not assieged. Thenne had our men grete despyte of this that they dyde nothyng, & hastely dyde do make engyns and reysed them castellys, berfroyes, and slynges to caste stones, and fylled the dyches for to goo and vnder myne the walles. They within deffended them moche wel, & threwe vpon them grete stones, fyre, brent lyme, oyle boyllyng, and shotte at them with arbalasters, and bowe turquoys arowes passyng thycke, but god be thanked they hurted but fewe of oure men. They within began moche to be mery; oure men apperceyued that, & theyr volente & hardenesse grewe & encreaced. Anon they dressed the laddres ayenst the walles, & wente vp dylygently. Emong alle other ther was a noble and valyaunt man, & was of Limosyn, named Geffrey

de Tours; he mayntened the fyrst tyme merueyllously well. Other folowed hym: ther were ynowe that entred in to the toures; they had taken the cyte yf the nyght had not come on & destroubled them. Therfore they left of til on the morn, ffor that assault had endured fro the sonne rysyng tyl that tyme.

THEY kept wel the gates that thay of the toun shold not yssue, and made good watche in thooste. But the mene peple sawe that none shewde hym vpon the walles, and entred in the toun, and fonde that it was all voyde of peple. They toke alle that they wolde and had nede of, as they that longe had suffred famyne and grete pouerte ❧ Alle thay of the cyte were entred in to longe caues and depe, & supposed to haue saued & kept them there. On the morn the barons sawe that the cyte was taken, & entred in, but they founde but lytil gayne, ffor the comyn peple had takyn suche as they founde ❧ They knewe wel that the Turkes of the toun were hyd vnder the erthe; they sette fyre in the mowthes of alle the caues, and sente in to it so moche smoke, that by force they muste come out. Oure men slewe ynough of them, and the remenaunt they toke prysonners ❧ There deyde of sekenesse the good man holy & relygyous, whiche moche louyd & dredde our lord god, Guyllaumme the bisshop of Orenge ❧ Whan the duc had abyden there xv dayes with the other he departed with therle of flaundres & cam in to Anthyoche, where they had to do.

How the duc Godeffroy wolde goo to Rages to vysyte his brother er he began his way to Iherusalem, & of somme of his aduentures, capitulo Cliiij

GODEffROY, the valyaunt duc of Loreyne, sawe how the men a fote made them redy for taccomplysshe theyr vowe and goo toward Iherusalem, and moche requyred & admonested the grete lordes to the same. But the valyaunt duc would see and vysyte his brother to fore that he shold separate fro this countre, and toke his pryue companye, and wente to Rages. Whan he had seen his broder, and doo suche thynges as it plesyth hym, he wold retorne to Anthyoche to the other barons and other pylgryms that abode there for hym. Whan he was approuched, that he had but six or seuen myle to ryde, they founde in theyr waye a moche fayre place for to dyne and ete in by a fayre welle, moche delectable and ful of grete herbes & grasse. Alle they acorded gladly for to dyne in this fayre place. Whyles they made redy theyr dyner be ye certayn that oute of moche reed, whiche was nyghe a mareys by, aroos certayn Turkes wel armed. Whan the noble duc & the other barons sawe them come, they toke theyr armes hastely as they myght, and toke theyr horses and ran vpon them vygorously, and there was the skarmoche grete and fiers. The duc dyde moche wel and valyauntly; ther were many Turkes slayn, & the remenaunt fledde. Our men lost there

nothyng, but cam with moche grete ioye vnto Anthyoche.

How after that the cyte of Albare was conquerd, a grete debate arose bytwene therle of Tholouse and Buymont, capitulo Clv

Of this noble cite of Albare, which was taken as I haue sayd to fore, aroos a grete debate bytwene Buymont and the erle of Tholouse, ffor therle wold haue alle Albare. Buymont sayde he wold not gyue away his part, yf he yelded not and gaf ouer certeyn towres that he held in Anthyoche. And herupon Buymont departed, and made the towres to be assaylled, that the men of the erle of Tholouse helde. And toke them by strength, and made them to goo out that kept them in the name of therle, and fro then forthon he helde alle Anthyoche without felaw or partener. Therle sawe that Buymont was departed fro the cyte so conquerd, and gaf the toun entierly to the bisshop of Albare. Whyles they ordeyned and disposed bytwene hym and the bisshop, how the cyte myght be mayntened and kept, in suche wyse that the Turkes shold not recouer it, the peple a-foote began to murmure of this that the hye & noble men taryed for to take this euyl cytees, and made debate and noyse emong them for theyr conquest. But the pryncipal cause wherfor they departed fro theyr countrees lefte they, as forgetyng and settyng not therby, and as it semed they sette nothynge by thaccomplysshyng of theyr vowe.

THERFOR the mene peple acorded emong them self, that as sone as the erle of Tholouse shold be departed fro the cyte of Marran they shold confounde and destroye it alle vnto the erthe, in suche wyse that they wold not tarye for hym fro than forthon. It happed that the barons assembled at Rouge, a cyte whiche is half waye bytwene Marran and Anthyoche, ffor to haue a counseyl there emonge them, yf they shold fro thens drawe forth toward to Iherusalem, ffor the mene peple languysshyd moche and hasted for to goo theder. There the barons coude not acorde, so that there was no conclusion taken. Whyles that therle of Tholouse abode at this parlement, the foote men that were lefte at Marran, ayenst the wyll and deffence of the bisshop bete doun the walles and toures of the cyte of Marran, ffor they wold not for thoccasyon of thys toun abyde lenger in this countre. Whan the erle retorned, he was moche angry of this that they had don; but for that he coude not amend it he couerd well his courage without forth. The men a-foote began alway to crye and requyre moche the barons that they wold conduyte them for taccomplysshe theyr pylgremage; or yf they wold not, they wold chese a knyght and make hym captayn ouer them, & they shold folowe hym vnto the cyte of Iherusalem. On that other syde was grete scarsete in thoost of vytaylles, in such wyse that the poure peple deyde for honger. Men sayde that many of them ete flesshe of men & other thynges that were not fayr ne good, clene, ne

honeste for to ete. Herof sourded a grete mortalyte, ffor they had holden siege about this cyte of Marran with suche meschyef of famyne that they had lost moche of theyr peple; & not so many by armes, but by mesease that they suffred. Ther deyde a moch noble, valyaunt yonge man, Enjorran, sone of Huon, erle of seynt Poul of a sekenesse, of whom was grete dommage, and moch was bewaylled in thoost.

How atte request of the comyn peple the erle of Tholouse ordeyned day for to conduyte them, capitulo Clvj

Of thyse inconuenientes that ran in thoost of the pylgryms the vygorous and valyaunt erle of Tholouse was in moch grete anguysshe, ffor he wyste not wel what he myght doo. On that one syde he had pyte & grete sorowe of the meseases that he sawe the poure peple suffre, and was moche meuyd by theyr requestes whan they so swetly prayd hym and the other barons to lede them for taccomplysshe theyr vowes and pylgremage. On that other syde he had wel vnderstonden that the barons acorded not to this that the comyn peple requyred. And therfor he, that was of grete courage and valyaunt man, sayde that he wold no longre suffre thus the pour peple languysshe ne deye. And ordeyned to them a daye that he wolde departe withoute faylle for to goo strayte vnto Iherusalem, and that shold be the xv

day folowyng ¶ And for talledge the mesease of famyne, he toke with hym a part of his knyghtes & of foote men the strengest and most delyuer, and lefte the remnaunt in the cyte, and went forth and entred in to the londe of his enemyes and brake vp tounes, stronge howses, and brought grete plente of beestys and other vytaylles, and brought also esclaues, men and wymmen.

THAN he cam to Marran he departed all the gayn that he had goten, as wel to them that abode as to them that he had with hym, in suche wyse that they all were ryche of goodes & of vytaylles ¶ The daye began tapproche that therle had named. The comyn peple cryed fast for the departynge, and sayd alle playnly that he shold haue no lenger respyte of them. He wist not what to doo, ffor he knewe certaynly that the peple had right. But he had but a lytil company on horsbak; therfore he requyred the bisshop of Albare to goo with hym. He graunted it to him gladly, and lefte his londe in the hande of Guyllamme de Cuuylly, valyaunt, wyse, and trewe knyght, and delyuerd to hym but xxx horsmen and xl men afote. But it was not longe after, that the good knyght amended soo that he had xl on horsbak and lxxx afote ¶ Whan the day cam that was appoynted, therle put fyre in the cyte of Marran and brente it alle to asshes, and after toke his way. He had in his companye aboute a x M men, of whom there were not but iij C on horsbak ¶ Whan he was departed the duc of Normandye & Tancre departed after, and abode for to goo with hym.

ECHE of thyse two had but xl men on horsbak, but they had moche peple afote with them. In theyr waye they fonde plenty of vytaylles, ffor they passed by Cezaire, by Haman, and by Chamele. Of the lordes of thyse townes had they grete yeftes, gold, syluer & other rychesses; they presented to them oxen, kyen, motons and other vytaylles. They dyde them haue resonable cheep of alle thynges. Eche of them conduyted them surely thorugh his countre & where as they had power. Thoost encreced and grewe more and more fro daye to daye, ffor they founde many good passages oueral where they wente; of horses also, whereof they had grete nede, fonde they grete cheep, in such wise that many bought fressh horses. And so moche dyde thyse to fore that the other barons cam, that dyde so moche that they had in theyr companye a M men wel horsed. They cam thus a ferre fro the see syde, but after they acorded that they wold drawe them to the see syde, for to here more lyghtly tydynges of the barons that were abyden in Anthyoche, and for to fynde the better and bye theyr necessytees at the shippes that were in the hauenes and portes.

How therle of Tholouse auengyd hym of somme Turkes robbours that robbed his hoost, capitulo Clvij

IN all the waye syth they departed fro Marran they were wel comen in peas and sauete, sauf only of one thyng; that is to wete, that somtyme Turkes theuys cam after thoost and slewe somme of our peple, and toke the feble & seke that abode behynde the other. Therle was moche wroth of this inconueny-ent, therfor he made the other to goo to fore, and he and the bisshop of Albare reteyned a fewe men wel horsed, embusshed them behynde the hoost for to see yf they wold come that thus endom-maged the hoost. Whan they had a litil whyle taryed the Turkes cam and sprang vpon somme of oure men, whiche al wyllynge made semblaunt that they myghe not goo. Therle sawe them, and sprange sodenly on them out of his embusshe-ment, and smote of alle theyr heedes, sauf somme that he ladde with hym. There wan he good horses and armures many, and after he cam agayn in to thooste with grete ioye. fro this daye forth they wente thurgh the londe moche surely without ony lack of vytaylles. Of cytees & of castellys on both sydes whan they passed, ther was no lord but he sente to them grete yeftes ffor to gete theyr loue, and dyde them haue resonable cheep of vytaylles oueral.

RESERVED one castel, where the men that were therin trusted ouermoche in theyr fortresse; therfor they sent to them neuer presente ne message, but descended alle armed ayenst oure men for to deffende them a passage. But our men whan they sawe them assaylled them vygorously, in suche wyse that they were anone disconfyted. There were but fewe but they were alle slayn or taken. Whan the barons sawe that they were rebelle ayenst them, anon they wente in to the fortresse & toke it alle at the fyrst comyng, smote doun the walles vnto therthe, and the howses they brente, after they had taken out all that they fynde therin. They ledde away horses ynow whiche they founde in the pastures. Emong our men were diuerse messagers of the contre, that the grete lordes and men ther aboutes had sente for to see theyr couyne, whiche whan they sawe that oure barons dyde thus theyr wylle, and that nothynge myght resiste them, they wente to theyr lordes, and told them that they were ouer cruel and fiers peple, aspre and hardy. Thenne shold ye haue seen brought, and presented to oure men grete presentes and honorable, and vytaylles as for nought fro alle partes. In so moche they doubted them, that they dyde grete cure for tacqueynte them, and to brynge them in to their loue. It was not longe but they passed alle the contre til they cam to the playnes of an auncyent cyte by the see syde, named Archys. They lodged nygh by the toun.

How therle of Tholouse approuched with his host vnto Archis, and of the situacion of the same, capitulo Clviij

ARCHYS is a cyte of the lande of fenyce, and standeth atte foote of a montayne named Lybane, in a territorye moche stronge, and is a four or v myle fro the see, and hath moche plenteuous londe aboute it, and delectable of pastures and of waters. The scriptures saye that it was founded moche auncyently. for Noe that was in the arke had iij sones; that one of them was named Caym; he had a sone named Canaham: of hym cam a sone that was Arracheus, he founded this cyte. And after hym this cyte was named Archys. ¶ Ther were prisonners of oure men in this toun. Hit was sente worde by the prysonners to therle of Tholouse that he shold assiege this cyte, & also to the other barons, ffor they shold haue grete good therby. ¶ The cite of Triple, which was moch noble and rych, was but vj myle from thens; there were also of our peple prysonners. for syth the begynnynge of the siege of Anthyoch and after it was goten, our people began to renne in the contree nycely and folyly for to fetche somme vytaylles and other necessytees that they lacked, in suche wyse that ther was vnneth cyte ne castel in the contre but ther were therin some of our pylgryms prysonners. ¶ In the cyte of Tryple were moo than ij C. They them self had sente to oure

men that yf they wolde make semblaunt to conquere the countree, the kynge of Tripple wold gyue them grete hauoyr & good for to departe thens, & shold delyuer to them alle theyr prysonners. It happed thenne to them thus that our peple approuched the cyte of Archis for to see what semblaunt they wold make, and also for tabyde the other barons that shortly shold come and folowe them.

Of a toun named Tortouse, whiche Raymont toke with a rowte of pylgryms, and of the departynge of the other barons fro Anthyoche, capitulo Clix

THER yssued out of our lodgys of oure men, an hondred men on horsbak & two honderd a foote, and made theyr captayne Raymont Pelet, whiche was a wyse-man & a moche valyaunt knyght. They wente to fore a cyte whiche was named Tortouse, for to see yf they myght fynde ony auenture for to gete som gayne. They approched the cyte and began tassayle it vygorously & moche sharpely. They within deffended them, bothe men & wymmen valiauntly, that our men hurte them but litil or nought. The nyght cam on them, and they left thassault for to be more fressh on the morn, and abode for more companye of thooste that shold folowe them, and to begyn on the morn thassault agayn. They of the toun had moche grete drede that our men wold assaille them agayn on the morn, & myght not resiste them. Therfor in the nyght they wente pryuely out of the toun and wente to the montains, and caryed noth-

yng with them but theyr wyues and childeren, alle theyr other geer they lefte in the toun.

CURE men that knewe no thynge herof aroos erly, & began to make redy and encorage eche other to doo wel at thassault. They approched the walles alle armed, and they herde noman. They entred in to the toun, and opened the yates in such wyse that alle entred. Thenne sawe they that they of the toun were yssued and goon. They founde the cyte ful of goodes, in so moche that they were alle ryche. They trussed all, and bare as moche as they myght in to thoost, & recounted theyr aduenture, of whiche they were alle glad and ioyous, and thanked our lord. ¶ Whan the moneth of Marche was come, and that the season was more attemperat, the people that was left in Anthyoche sawe that it was tyme to departe. They spack to duc Godeffroye and to therle of flaundres, and prayde them moche effectuously that they wold enterpryse and conducte them to Iherusalem for taccomplysshe their pilgremage. ¶ The goyng forth of therle of Tholouse, the duc of Normandye, and Tancre, caused them moche to haue the wyll forth, ffor they were goon to fore, & ledde with them grete nombre of pylgryms, and they happened wel in the waye, and had therby grete prouffyte and grete honour.

BY thyse wordes were the barons gretely stered and meuyd. They ordeyned theyr affayres dylygently, and toke alle theyr peple, as wel on horsbak as a foote, and wente so fer forth that they cam to the Lyche of Surrye. They

were xxv M men, all in poynt and armed, euerych after that he was. The good man and valyaunt knyght Buymont conueyed them theder with his men. But it was not theyr entente ne wyll that he shold goo ony ferther, ffor the cyte of Anthyoche was newly conquerd, and theyr enemyes were fast by. Therfore it behoued hym not to withdrawe hym ferre fro it, but therfor he toke good hede continuelly daye and nyght. But of his grete courage he had conueyed them theder, and there toke his leue, and wepte moche at departyng. He recommaunded them to god, and retorned agayn to Anthyoche, and the hoost abode there. The Lyche is a moche auncyent cyte & noble, and stondeth vpon the ryuage of the see. That was the only cyte in Surye of which themperour of Constantinoble was lord.

LONGE to fore oure men cam theder was comen Guynemyers, of whom I spak long to fore, that was born at Boloyne vpon the see syde, and arryued at Tharse whyles that Bawdwyn, broder of the duc, helde it. He was comen to the Lyche with his shippe, and supposed to haue taken the toun by force, and folysshly he conteyned hym and assaylled it. They of the toun yssued out lyghtly and toke hym, & yet helde hym in pryson whan oure barons cam theder. The duc knewe that he was born in the londe of his fader, & that he had been in the companye of therle Bawdwyn his brother. Therfor he demaunded hym of the grete men of the toun, and prayde them entierly that they wold delyuere them to hym. They durst

not gayne saye hym, but delyuered hym and his felawship with his shippe. The duc commaundid hym that he shold goo to the see, & alwaye coosteyeng by the hooste. He dyde it gladly, and saylled forth.

How the duc asseeged Cybelet, and of a trayson by whiche he left the siege, capitulo Clx

THE hoost departed fro the Lyche whan oure barons had receyued their prysonners. They that were late departed fro Cylyce, fro Anthyoche, and fro other cytees aboute, were alle comen and arryued theder, in suche wyse that alle went to gydre by the see syde vnto a cyte named Cybelet, whiche was fro the Lyche about a xij myle. They abode there and assieged the cyte. A baylly of the calyphe of Egypte helde this cyte. This was the first cyte on the see side vnder the power of the calyphe of Egypte. This baylle yssued out by sauf conduyt, & spak to duc Godefroy, to whom he offred vj M besauntes and many grete yeftes aboue that, for to departe and reyse the siege fro thens. The duc wolde in no wyse here thyse wordes, but sayde that it were treson & vntrouth: and god forbede that I shold take suche hyre! He thenne departed whan he sawe he myght not make his bargayn with the noble duc. After he sente his messagers to therle of Tholouse, and offred to hym this grete somme of moneye, yf he myght fynde the moyen to reyse the siege fro this

toun. It was sayd that he receyued the moneye, and for to make the barons to departe he founde a lesynge, ffor he dyde to be sayd to them, that he was wel acerteyned by messagers and lettres that the soudan of Perse had so moche angre & desdayne of this that Corbagat his conestable had be disconfyted, and so moche peple of his slayn, that he assembled alle his power, & cam with grete peple for to fyght, and to destroye them alle that he coude fynde of the cristen fayth.

THISE tydynges sente therle of Tholouse by the bisshop of Albare to the duc a fore sayd & to therle of flaundres, and sente to them his lettres, by whiche he prayd them moche swetly & expresly that they wold leue theyr siege and come dylygently to hym, in suche wyse that they myght be alle to gydre whan this peple cam. Whan the duc and other barons herde this thynge, they were moche anguysshous & meuyd, ffor they supposed certaynly that alle this had be trewe. Anon they departed fro Gybelet. By the cyte of Valerne they wente, whiche was aboue the castel of Margat. Syth they cam to Marclee, whiche is the first cyte of the londe of fenyce, whan they wente toward the northeest; fro thens they cam to the cyte of Tortouse. There is an isle, where somtyme was a cyte, there abode the shippes, theyr nauye. I wote not how many dayes after they hasted and came to fore the cyte of Archys. Tancre yssued out of thoost & cam ayenst them, and tolde to them alle a longe the tromperye and the barat that therle of

Tholouse had don. They were moche angry, therfore they lodged them a part fro them that had doo broken theyr syege ❧ The erle knewe that he had not the loue of the barons that were newe comen, therfor he sente to them messagers, that sayde to them in his name moche fayre wordes, & brought to them grete yeftes. Wherfore in short tyme it happed that they were alle repeased & amyable & good frendes to gydre, sauf only Tancre, whiche acorded not with hym, but accused hym of many thynges.

AFORE the comynge of thise laste barons, the peple of therles of Tholouse myght nothynge auaylle and prouffyte ayenst the cyte which they had assyeged. But now they had grete hope, that it shold now soon be brought to an ende, & accomplysshyd by thayde of them that were newe come. Neuertheles it fyll not so as they supposed, ffor alle the tymes that they contryued by ony engyne for tassaylle the walles, alway it fyll contrarye to that they purposed, and they of the toun brake alle theyr ouurages, in such wyse that they loste their costes and payne. It appered wel that our lord had withdrawen fro them his ayde and his good wyll. They within the toun slewe many of them without. There deyde tweyne noble & valyaunt knyghtes, that is to wete, Ancean of Ribemont, that alway dyde valyauntly where sommeuer he cam, and Potom de Baladon, an hye man and wel acqueynted with therle of Tholouse ❧ This siege displesyd ouer moche to all them of thooste, & in especial to the footemen, whiche had

moche grete desyre taccomplysshe theyr vowe to Iherusalem. And also whan the duc was comen, they that had ben there to fore began to withdrawe them fro the werke, in suche wyse that euery man dyde nought, ffor it plesyd them well that therle were greued and ennoyed that he myght departe & lede them forth with the other barons.

How thoost murmured of the spere founden in Anthyoche, and of the grete myracle that happed in the presence of alle the hoste, capitulo Clxj

THERE was renewed a word by whiche the comyn people and also somme of the barons began to doubte of the spere that was founden in Anthyoche, lyke as ye haue herde to fore, ffor somme sayde certaynly that it was the very spere that opened the syde of oure lord on the crosse, and that was with his precious blood bydewed, and by reuelacion of oure lord had be founden by an holy good man for to recomforte his people, whiche had grete necessyte & nede. Other sayde that it was not but fals barat, tromperye and abuse, ffor therle of Tholouse had fonden this and contryued, for to meue the peple to drawe and gete syluer of theyr offrynges. And this altercacion was meuyd by a preest named Arnold, chappellayn, and moche acqueynted with the noble duc of Normandye. He was wel lettred, but he was not of good lyf. He was ouer malycious & pourchassoure of discordes, as ye shal here af-

terward in this book ❧ This rumour was grete in thoost, as I haue sayd.

THE man that had fonde the spere herde the doubte of the peple, & cam to fore the barons moche hardily, & sayd to them in this maner ❧ fayr lordes, doubte ye nothyng that this werke hath ben by barat ne by tromperye, for theryn hath be none, but is comen of god, and certaynly for the comfort of the cristen peple. Seynte Andrew appered to me by the wylle of our saueour Ihesu Crist, whiche deuysed to me alle the maner, how I haue founden it. And for to shewe to yow, that this that I saye is trouth, I praye you that ye make a grete fyre and merueyllous, & I shal entre in to it, and holde the spere in my hand, and shal passe & goo thurgh hool and sauf ❧ Whan they herd this they acorded alle therto. The fyre was made and brennyd lyght, which was greete & merueyllous. And this was on the blessyd Good friday. And it plesed them that this thynge shold be thus preuyd the same day that oure lord was smeton to the herte with the same spere.

THE that thus offred hym self thus, & enterprysed for to preue it was named Peter Bertilmewe, clerk, and but litil lettred after that it coude be vnderstonde without forth, and was a moche symple man ❧ Thenne was alle thooste assembled aboute the fyre. Peter cam forth & kneled doun for to recommande hym vnto god. Whan he had made his prayer, he toke the

spere and entred in to the fyre, and passed thurgh it, and was nothynge on hym perysshed ne hurte that ony man coude see or knowe. Whan the peple sawe this, alle they ranne for to kysse hym, and made to hym moche grete ioye. Of thys doubte thenne they wende veryly that it had be quenchid. But yet sourded a gretter errour & murmur than to fore, ffor it was not longe after but that this clerke deyde. Thenne sayd somme that by thanguysshe of the fyre he toke his deth, and that shold be thoccasion therof. The other sayde that he yssued oute al hool and sauf fro the fyre, but it was the wylle of oure lord syth the trouthe was knowen that he shold deye thus; or peraduenture the prees that cam vpon hym was so grete whan he yssued out of the fyre, that he was therby hurte that he deyde. In this maner murmured yet the peple emong them.

Of thambassade of Egipte comen with our men in to thoost of pylgryms, & of the reuerence that was don to them, capitulo Clxij

SOMME messagiers that were sente in to Egypte by our barons atte requeste of them that cam vnto Anthyoche fro the calyphe of Egypte, had he reteyned and holden there by force and barat wel a yere. But now they were retourned, and with them were comen the messagers of the calyphe, which brought to our barons fro hym wordes moche dyuerse and moch chaunged fro that they had sente to them to

fore Anthyoche. For thenne he sente to them that they shold conteyne them vygorously ayenst the sowdan of Perse, & they shold haue of hym grete ayde of gold, of syluer, and of vytaylles. Now had he chaunged moche his langage, ffor he sente them worde that he thoughte that he dyde moch grete thynge for them, yf he suffred that the pylgryms myght goo to Iherusalem ij C to gydre, or iij C, alle vnarmed, & whan they had made theyr prayers and don theyr pylgremage to retorne saufly agayn. Whan oure barons herd this, they had herof grete desdayne, and sayde to the messagers that they shold retorne agayn to theyr lord, & telle hym that by his licence ne leue wold they wold not goo to Iherusalem vnarmed one after another. But they shold goo maulgre hym, alle to gydre in bataylles renged, and the baners reysed and desployed.

NOW I shall say to you why the calyphe of Egypte was reysen in so grete pryde. Whan our men had discomfyted Corbagat to fore Anthyoche, the power of the soudan of Perse was moche affebled in such wise that none of his neyghbours doubted hym, ne fered to make warre agaynst hym, ffor he had alwaye the werse. By whiche occasion it happed that a conestable of the calyphes of Egypte named Emites, had taken the cyte of Iherusalem fro the men of the soudan of Perse, whiche had holden it xxxviij yere. Therfore sawe nowe the calyphe that he was at his aboue, by the disconfyture that our men had don to Corbagat, and had wende that he shold not haue had

nede of ony ayde. Therfor he despysed now our peple.

Of an ambassade fro themperour of Constantinoble comen to our pylgryms, and of thanswer to the sayd ambassade, capitulo Clxiij

ON that other syde were commen messagiers fro themperour of Constantinoble, whyche complayned moche on Buymont, & also on the other barouns. for they sayden that all the barons were becomen his men, and had sworn vpon the holy ewangelyes that alle suche cytees & castellys by them conquerd, whiche had be vnder the power of Constantynoble, shold be rendred to hym as his owen thurgh out alle the londe to Iherusalem. Now Buymont dyde contrarye this, whiche helde Anthyoche, and the other barons that had gyuen it to hym. Thus spak they of the couenauntes, but they spak not of alle. for withoute faylle trouthe it was that they had couenaunted this, but themperour had promysed to them that he shold folowe them with his grete hoost, and shold furnysshe to them grete plente of vytaylles by see. He was the fyrst that had broken the couenaunt and promesses, ffor he had not don the one ne that other, and he myght wel haue don it. And therfor they were not bounden to holde his couenauntes made by oure barons, by cause he helde not that he had promysed; ffor the lawe wyll not that a man shal holde couenaunt to hym that holdeth not his

Thus answered the barons to them, and therfor sayd they that the yefte that they made to Buymont of the cyte of Anthyoche ought to be ferme & stable, and so wold they mayntene it to hym and to his heyres for euer.

WHAN the messagers herd this, they moche prayd the barons that would tarye theyr goyng to Iherusalem til that themperour was commen, ffor they sayde that without faulte he wolde come to fore the tree of Iuyll, and brynge with hym moche grete plente of peple. And yf they wold doo thus moche for hym, he shold conne them grete thanke, and shal gyue to eche of the barons many grete and ryche yeftes, and also shal departe largely to the gentil men and to the footemen. Whan our barons herd this they sayde that they wold counseylle them to gydre and drewe them a part. Therle of Tholouse acorded wel to this that they shold abyde so grete an ayde as was the puyssaunce of themperour, and sayd he supposed certaynly that he shold come as it was sayd. But the other supposed that he sayd so for to kepe the barons and other men atte siege til the cyte were taken; ffor it shold be moche deshonour & fowl for hym to departe fro thens without accomplysshyng that whiche he had enterprised. The other barons acorded nothynge therto, but wolde that they shold goo dylygently assiege the holy cyte of Iherusalem for to doo theyr pylgremage & accomplysshe theyr vowe, for whiche they had suffred so many trauaylles and deseases, for they knewe moche wel the

delaye of themperour, and his fayr wordes full of tromperyes and deceytes. Therfor it was not theyr oppynyon for to truste ony more his couert dissimylacions.

THUS sourded a grete debate bytwene the barons, & myght not acorde. Of whiche it happed that he that helde the cyte of Trypple, whiche had offred to them so moche good by couenaunt that they shold depart fro the siege, and goo out of the londe, whan he knewe that the barons were emonge them self in discorde he wold no more offre to them ony thyng, but enterprised so grete hardynes that he wold fyghte ayenst them ❧ The barons acorded therto, & lefte the bisshop of Albare for to kepe the lodgys. And whan they had so doo, they wente so alle in bataylles ordeyned toward Trypple. Whan they cam there they fonde the lord of the toun & the cytezeyns out with grete plente of men on horsbak and afoote where they had ordeyned theyr bataylles & abode our peple, whiche they doubted not moche. for they had seen that the erle of Tholouse had holde siege to fore this cyte, and had no thynge preuayled, wherfor they preysed our men moche the lasse than they dyde byfore. ❧ But whan oure men approuched so nyghe that they sawe the Turkes, anon they ranne on them moche fiersly, in suche wyse that they lost anon vij C of theyr men whyche oure men slewe. And of oures were slayn but xiiij. ❧ There helde they the feste of Ester or Pasque, the x day of Apryll.

How the comyn peple complayned theym of thys, that they wente not hastely to Iherusalem, capitulo Clxiiij

OUR barouns that had desconfyted thyse men, retourned in to theyr lodgys with alle theyr gayne. Thenne recommenced & began agayn the playnte and the clamour moche grete that the peple made by cause they wente not hastely to Iherusalem. All they cryed with hye vois that they shold departe fro the siege. So long contynued theyr crye that the valyaunt duc Godeffrey, therle of flaundres, the duc of Normandye and Tancre sayde that they wolde doo the requeste of the peple a-foote. And thenne recuylled they theyr tentes and pauyllons, brent theyr lodgys, and departed. It displesyd moche therle of Tholouse, he prayde them moche affectuously to abyde, but it myghte not be, ffor they them self that fyrste were comen with hym were wery & anguysshous of the siege. And strayt held they the way toward Trypple. Whan therle of Tholouse sawe that he myghte none other wyse cheuisshe ne accomplysshe his empryse, he wold not abyde there allone, and he had right, but dislodged hym & folowed the other. Whan they were a v myle fro Trypple, they lodged them. The baylly that helde the cyte and the countre about in the name of the calyphe, sente theder to them his messagers. He had moche leyde doun his pryde,

ffor as I sayd to you to fore, he wende to haue faughten peer to peer. His messagers knewe wel that he was to feble, and that it was folye.

THE thenne desyred & moche requyred that oure men wold take of him right largely, and goo oute of his power. The mater was so demened that he gaf xv M besauntes, and delyuerd to them alle the prysonners that he had of our pilgryms. And aboue that he gaf to them grete yeftes & ryche presentes, as horses, mulets, cloth of sylk, and vessel of dyuerse facions. And they promysed to hym that they wold do none harme to the cytees that he had and helde; that is to wete, Archys, Trypple, and Ybelyn, ne to their appertenauntes. And he hym self sente to them oxen, kyen, sheep, and moche grete plente of other vytaylles, to thende that they shold not destroye his londe. Thenne cam in to thoost somme Surryens whiche dwellyd upon the mount of Lybane, whiche is nyghe vnto thyse cytees toward the est moche hye. They were of oure fayth, wyse men and trewe, and were come for to see our barons for to salewe and feste them. The good men of thoost called them, and desyred of them affectuously that they wold teche the moost strait way and easiest for to goo to Iherusalem. They toke aduys and counseylled to gydre, & behelde alle thynges that in suche a case behoued, & cam to our barons, and sayd to them that they counseylled to holde the waye by the see coste for many reasons. fyrst, for the surete and comforte of theyr shippes, ffor in

the nauye were not only the shippes of Guynemyers that cam fro flaundres, but ther were shippes of Gene, of Venyse, of Cypres, of Rhodes, and of other yles of Grece, charged with vytaylles and marchaundyses whiche dyde moche grete good in thoost. The Surryens wente to fore for to conduyte the hoost. The baylly of Trypple delyuerd to them also men that knewe wel the countrees and the londe. They passed alle the see syde and the cyte of Ybelyn, and lodged vpon a ryuer that renneth there in a place that is named Mans. And for tabyde the feble peple that were not comen ne arryued, they soiourned there a day.

Of the grete dylygence that our men made for to approche to Iherusalem, and of the alyaunces of somme Turkes made vnto them, capitulo Clxv.

THE thyrde day they cam to fore the cyte of Baruth, and lodged them upon a ryuer that ran to fore the toun. The baylly of the toun gaf to them grete good, & made do come plente of vitayll & good cheep, for to spare the trees & the fruytes of the contre. On the morn cam they to the cyte of Sayette, there they lodged them vpon a ryuer therby. He that gouerned & kept the cyte wold not doo thynge ne bounte to them. I wote not wherin he trusted, but he sente out many of his men for to doo hurte to thooste, and for to atteyne certayn knyghtes which were lodged by for tassaylle them, but our

men toke theyr horses & ran on them vygorously, and slewe of them I wote not how many. And the other fledde in to the cyte, and had nomore talente to atteyne our peple, in suche wyse that our men rested them in pees that nyght. On the morn, for to reste and refresshe the mene peple, they departed not thens, but sente oute for fourage many men a foote, and certayn men of armes to kepe them, in to the contre & vyllages about. They brought largely vytaylles & horses wyth grete quantite of beestes, grete and smale, and cam agayn without lesyng of ony thyng, alle to gydre. Sauf only a knyght named Gaultier de Vere, he wente by his valyaunce ouer ferre, ffor he retorned neuer agayn, ne neuer was knowen where he becam: they were all moche sory for hym in thoost. The day aftir passed they by a moche sharp and aspre way, and after descended by a destrayt in to a playne, and on the right syde they lefte this auncyent cyte named Sarepte, wherin Helyas the prophete was in.

AFTER they pessed a water whiche is bytwene Sur & Sayette. They wente so ferre that they cam to this noble cyte of Sur. There they lodged them by the noble fontayne and pytte of water lyuyng, lyke as scripture sayth. They lodged this nyght in gardyns moche delectable. Whan it was daye they sette them forth on theyr iourneye, & passed by a strayt moche perylous, whiche is bytwene the montaines and the see. They descended in to the playnes of the cyte of Acres there vpon, & by a water rennyng they sette

vp theyr pauyllons. He that had the charge of the toun maade them to haue vytaylles at resonable prys, and made acqueyntaunces good and honorable with oure barons, & made also couenaunt with them in this maner, that yf oure people myght take the cyte of Iherusalem, and dwelle there after xx dayes in the royamme, in suche wyse that they were not put out of it by force, or yf they myght disconfyte in the felde the puyssaunce of Egypte, that fro thenne forthon they shold yelde and gyue over the cyte of Acres, without makyng of ony resistence. ¶ The pylgryms wente fro thens on the lyft syde: they left Galylee bytwene the mount of Carmely & the see. They cam in to Cezaire, whiche is the second archebisshoprich of the londe of Palestyne. They lodged them vpon a water that yssueth oute of the palus or maryses whiche ben by the toun; there helde they theyr penthecost or wytsontyde. Thre dayes after thentre of Iuyn they abode there; on the iij day they toke their way.

ON the right side they lefte Iaphe, and by a grete playn and euen waye they cam in to the cyte of Lide, where the bodye of the glorious martir seynt George lyeth, in thonoure of whom Iustynyen, that was emperoure of Rome, made there a moche fair chirche and ryche. But whan the Turkes herde tydynges that our men cam, they bete it doun & brente the tymbre werke, which was moche grete, for they doubted that oure pilgrims shold take them for to make engyns to caste stones & castellis to assaile with. ¶ Thenne

herde our barons saye that ther fast by was a moche noble cyte named Rames. They sente the erle of flaundres with v C horsmen to fore the toun for to knowe what semblaunte they wold make. None yssued out whan they approuched it: they cam ner and founde the yates open, and entred in to the cyte, and founde neyther man ne woman. for the nyght to fore they had herd tydynges how oure pilgrims cam, and ladde to the montaynes wyues and childeren, and alle their howshold. Whan therle knewe herof he sente to the barons how the mater was, and counseylled them to come in to the toun; they were moche glad of thyse tidynges. They made deuoutly theyr prayers at the tombe of seynt George, and after cam in to the cyte, whiche was al ful of wyne, of whete, of oylle, and of other vytaylles to them necessarye; they abode there iij dayes. They chose ther a bisshop of the cyte, and was a Normant named Robert, whiche was born in tharchebisshoprycheof Roen. They gaf to hym entierly the two cytees for euermore, that is to wete, Lyde and Rames, and the countree and vyllages about them, ffor they gaf it to honoure god and seynt George for the fyrst gayne of the same holy londe.

How the cristen men of Bethlehem receyued well Tancre and his rowte, and sette his baner on the chirche of our lady, capitulo Clxvj

THE Turkes beyng in Iherusalem herde wel tydynges of the comyng of our pylgryms. Wel knewe they certaynly that alle theyr entencion was to come to the holy cyte, ffor whiche thynge they were pryncypally meuyd and departed fro the countrees. Whan they herde this they were moche esmeuyd, & sayd that it was reason to deffende it. The cristen men that were in Bethlehem sente certayn messagers to the barons, & desyred of them that they wold delyuere the toun in to their handes, if they wold sende men to receyue and kepe it. They sayd that it was reson to doo that they requyred. They toke an honderd men of armes wel horsed, noble, valyaunt and hardy, and delyuerd to them Tancre for a capytayn. They that cam to fetche them conduyted them in such wise that erly in the mornyng they entred in to the toun. Alle they of the cyte, clerkes and laye men, receyued them honorably, and with moche grete ioye with procession broughte them in to the chirche, whiche standeth in the place in whiche the gloryouse vyrgyne Marye was delyuerd & chylded oure lord Ihesu Criste, the saueour of the world. They sawe the crybbe in which was leyde in to reste the swete childe that made heuen and erthe. Whan our peple sawe thyse holy places

they were moche ioyous, and had grete tendrenes in theyr hertes. ¶ The cytezeyns of the toun for signe of ioye, and for demonstraunce that oure lord and his dere moder oure lady shold gyue to them victorye, toke the baner of Tancre and sette it on hye vpon the chirche of oure lady. They that were lefte in thoost had moche grete desyre to see and vysyte the holy places that were nygh by, as it was sayd; ffor, for the loue of god and for to honoure hym were they departed fro theyr countree and had suffred many annoyes and grete trauaylles. And they myght not slepe this nyght, suche brennyng desire had they for to see the cyte, whiche shold be thende of their trauaylle and thaccomplisshement of theyr vowe. Them thought longe er the day cam, and them semed that thys nyght was moche lenger than the other, ffor to a corageous desire ther is not haste ynowgh.

Of thardaunt desire that the peple had for to see Iherusalem, and how thoost approched and were lodged by ordenaunce, capitulo Clxvij

SYTH that it was knowen certaynly in the lodgys that the duc hadde receyued thys nyght the messagers of Bethlehem, & that he had sente hys men in to the toun, the peple afoote abode neuer for leue of the barons, ne myghte not suffre til the daye was come, but begun to calle alle the nyght for to goo vnto Iherusalem. ¶ Whan they were goon a whyle forth, one of the noble men of thooste nam-

ed Gaste de Bedyers had moche grete pyte of this peple that they shold be slayn in the waye. And therfore he toke his hors, & toke xxx men of armes with hym wel horsed and ordeyned in arraye, and thought that he wolde goo nygh to Iherusalem for to see yf they myght fynde out of the toun beestes and other gayne for to take & lede away with hym. Alle thus as he thoughte, it fylle thus in partye; ffor whan he cam nygh the toun he fonde oxen and kyen largely in the pastures, & but fewe that kept them. They fledde away whan they sawe our men come. Gaste and his men began to gadre the beestes to gydre and droof them hastely toward thoost, but the herdmen and kepars of them made a grete crye.

IN the toun were Turkes hardy, and desyryng to doo armes; they armed them dilygently, and ronne hastely after for to rescowe the proye. Gaste and hys men sawe them come, and knewe well that they were not strong ynough for the Turkes, therfor they lefte this that they brought, and mounted vpon an hye montayne therby, moche angry of this mesauenture. Whan they had abyden a whyle vpon this montayne, they behelde in to the valeye, and sawe Tancre come fro Bethlehem retornyng to thoost with an C men on horsbak. Whan Gaste sawe them he smote his hors with his spores and cam to hym, and tolde hym of his mesauenture and moche anguysshous, and sayd that the Turkes were not ferre. They ran alle to gydre after them & ouertoke them er they myght come in to the cyte. In theyr comyng they discom-

fyted the Turkes that they that myght fledde in to the cyte: the remenaunt they slewe, and oure men recoueryd theyr proye, & brought it in to thoost with grete ioye. Alle they that were in the lodgys assembled about them, & demaunded of them ententyfly fro whens this proye cam. They answerd that they had take it to fore the yates of Iherusalem. Whan they herde named the holy cyte of Iherusalem, and knewe certaynly that it was so nygh, thenne began they tendrely to wepe, & fylle doun on theyr knees, and rendred thankynges to oure lord with moche grete syghes, of this that he had so moche loued them and conduyted, that they myght see shortly the ende of theyr pylgremage; that is to wete, the holy cyte of Iherusalem, whiche oure lord so moche louyd, that he wold dye therin for to saue the world.

GRETE pyte was it to see and here the teres and the cryes of this good peple. They departed in this same maner, and wente so forth that they sawe the towres and the walles of the toun. Thenne lyft they vp theyr handes toward heuen and dyd of theyr hosen and shoes, men and wymmen, and kyssed therthe: who that had seen this, though he had an herd herte he shold haue be meuyd to pyte. fro thens forthon the waye greued them nothynge, but they wente moch lyghtly till they cam to fore the toun; there they lodged them all aftir thordenaunce and deuyse of the barons, whiche delyuerd to them the places. Thenne semed verytably that the worde of the holy prophete was entierly accomplysshyd, whiche sayd

longe to fore: Leua Iherusalem, &c.: Aryse vp Iherusalem, & lyft vp thyn eyen, and beholde the puissaunce of the kyng thy sauiour, whiche cometh to onbynde the and put the oute of the bonde wherin thou art. O lord god, howe the hye barons, the knyghtes, the gentylmen of our hoost, and alle the other generally, men & wymmen, were recomforted and reconcyled of the grete trauaylles & meseases that they had longe endured, whan they founde them to fore the holy cyte of Iherusalem, and how eche of them had good wylle to conteyne hym self in this nede and werke.

Of the situacion of Iherusalem & descripcion, and also of many other cytees, townes, and countrees ther aboute, capitulo Clxviij

GROUTHE it is that the holy cytee of Iherusalem stondeth bytwene two montaynes, wherof Dauid sayth in the psaulter: fundamenta eius in montibus sanctis; the fondementes of it ben in the holy montaynes. Toward the west is the see and the londe of the Philistees, xxiiij mile vnto port Iaphe, & that in the next part of the see. Bytwene bothe is the castel of Emaus, where as oure lord after his resurexion appered to two discyples; there is Modyn the cyte and the fortresse of the Machabews. There is the place and temple, where Abymelech the holy preest gaf to Dauid and to his squyres the loues of breed to ete that were offred vpon the table of our

lord, wherfor Saul dyde do slee hym, and the other admynystratours of the chirche & men of the toun. There is Lyde where seynt Peter heeled a lame man named Eneaux, and had leyen viij yere paralityk. ¶There is also Iaphe, as I haue sayd, where seynt Peter reysed a dede woman named Thabyte; there was seint Peter herberowed in a tanners hows, that tanned leder, whan he receyued the message fro Cornelle, whom he baptysed as is sayd in thactes of the apostles. ¶Toward the eest is the flome Iordan, & the deserte is byyonde where the holy prophetes were woonte to repayr. This is the vale sauage, whiche is named the dede see, whiche was a moche fayr & delectable countre, lyke a paradyse, to fore that oure lord made do synke v cytees, Sodome & the other, as is sayd in Genesys.

ON thys syde Iordan is the cytee of Iherycho, that Iosue wan more by prayer than by bataylle; theder wente oure lord Ihesu Criste, and made a blynde man to see. There is Galgala, where Helyzeus the prophete dwellyd. ¶Toward the south is the cyte of Bethlehem, where our lord was born, and leyde in the crybbe emong the beestes. There by is Tecua, the cyte where Amos and Abacuc the prophetes were born. ¶Towarde northeeste is Gabaon, where atte prayer of Iosue the sonne rested, til he had vaynquysshed the batayll. There is Sychars, where as our lord spak to the woman of Samarye. There is Bethel, where as the peple of Israhel worshipped the calf of gold ayenst the wylle of oure lord. There is Sebaste,

whiche is named seynt Iohan de Sebaste. There is the sepulcre of seynt Iohan Baptist; Helizus, and Abyas the prophetes were there buryed. for the montayne of Somer whiche is ther by alle this londe was somme tyme named Samarye. The cyte of Naples is there, which somme tyme was named Sychem; and it was there where Symeon & Leuy, sones of Iacob, for to venge theyr suster, whiche had ben enforced, slewe them of the toun, and brente alle the cyte.

How Iherusalem had many names after dyuerse lordes therin rennyng, and yet of the situacion wel at a longe, capitulo Clxix.

IHERUSALEM is the chiefcite of Iudee. It is without medowes & without ryuers, ne no brooke ne welle. It was first called Salem, & after Zebus. After in the tyme, what tyme were caste out the Iheruhesees, whan Dauid had regned vij yere in Ebron, he grewe & amended moche this cyte, and wold that it shold be the chyef & hede place of alle the royamme; thenne was it named Iherusalem. To fore that Dauid assaylled the toun, he toke the toure of Syon, whiche was named the cyte of Dauyd. Thenne made Dauyd the cyte to be made about the place whiche was named Mellon. Ioab made the remenaunt of the toun. After whan Salamon regned in Iherusalem, it was named Iherosolima; that is to saye, Iherusalem of Salamon. As they seye that made thystoryes, aftir the deth of Ihesu Criste, Titus the sone of Vaspa-

sian was a moche grete prynce of Rome, & assieged this cyte with a grete hoost, & toke it by force and destroyed it, and threwe it doun to therthe. Aftir cam Elyus Adrian the fourth emperour after hym, & called it after his name Elye, ffor he reedefyed it moch wel. first it stode in an hangyng of an hylle, in suche wyse as toward theest and south it was sette in the roundnesse of the tertre of the mount of Syon, and of another mount named Moria. The temple only and the toure named Anthone was on toppe of the tertre.

BUT the same Elyus made alle the cyte to be born and reedefyed right on the toppe or sommet of the tertre, in suche wyse that the place where oure lord was crucyfyed, and the holy sepulcre, where his blessid body was leyed in, whiche to fore were without the cyte, were then enclosed within the walles. The cyte was not ouer grete, ne ouer lytle; it was more long than brood. Hit is on the four quarters enuyronned with depe valeyes. Toward the eest is the valeye of Iophat; there stondeth a moche fayr chirche made in thonour of the glorious vyrgyne Marye, where it is sayd that she was buryed, and there is shewed yet the sepulcre. Ther vnder is the rennyng water of which seynt Iohn euangelyste sayth that Ihesu Criste passed. Toward the southe is a valeye named Ennon; there is the felde that was bought with the pens that Iudas sold oure lord fore, whiche is made in sepulture of pilgrims, and named Acheldemach. Toward the weste is a parte of the valeye where as

the piscyne is, whiche was a grete thynge whan the kynges of Iude were there: and it stratcheth vnto the cysterne, whiche is called the lake of the Patriarke. By the old cymetyer whiche is in the caue named Lyon, toward the northeest, may men goo vp playne to the cyte. There is shewed the place where seynt Stephen the prothomarter was stoned of the Iuys, whan he prayd vpon his knees for them, that so pytte hym to deth, and so deyed a very marter.

Here thystorye deuyseth of many merueyllyus edyfyces conteyned in the same cyte of Iherusalem, & who made them, capitulo Clxx

SO, as I haue sayd, two montaynes ben enchayned within the walles of Iherusalem, a litil valeye is bytwene them both whiche departed the toun as in the myddle. Syon is toward the weste, on the sommete or toppe theron stondeth the chirche which is named Syon, and after there is a tour of Dauyd, whiche is the dongeon of the toun, made of moche strong werke; walles and barbycans there be many that ben aboute the toun. In lyke manner also, but on the hangyng of the hill whiche looketh toward thoryent, is sette the chirche of the blessyd Resurrectyon, rounde of fashyon, whiche, whereas it is sette upon the bent of the montayne aforesayd, in suche wise that the cliffe oerhangeth the same hard bye the chirche, hath a hylling, with beames raised highe alofte & woven togeder with wondrous crafte into fashyon of a crown, open & ever coverlesse, whence

the lyghte nedefulle to the chirche is powred in. Beneeth whiche open gulfe is sette down the monument of our sauyour. Trouthe it is that to fore oure pylgryms cam in to this holy lande, the place where our lord was crucifyed, whiche was named Caluarye, & there where the very crosse was founden, & where our sauyour Ihesu Criste was taken doune of the crosse, & enoynted with precious oynementis, and envoluped in whyte lynnen cloth, thise places were strayte as lytil chapellys. But after that oure cristen men had the power, them thought that the chirche was made ouer strait and lytil where so grete and noble thynges were. Therfore they made it al newe walled about with good strong werke & hye, which conteyned and enclosed within it the fyrst chirche and the holy names that I haue named. Toward the parte of the oryent is the other mount named Moria. On the hangyng therof as who beholdeth toward the south stondeth the temple, whiche the laye peple calle it Templem domini, there as Dauyd bought the place for to sette in the arke of oure lord, and Salamon his sone made there the temple by the commaundement of God. At the begynnyng of this book we sayde to you, that Omar the sone of Captap dyde make the forme in this manere, there is a place square, longe as moche as an archer may shote at twyes, & as brood, closed with good walles, stronge and hye. And there toward the weste ben two gates by whiche men entre. That one is named Speciosa, where seynt Peter heeled hym that was lame fro his birth, and satte to fore the gate for to demaunde almesse. That other gate had no name

toward the north eest. Toward thoryent is another gate named the Golden gate. Toward the south is the hows ryall, whiche is the temple of Salamon.

VPON eche of thyse yates, by whiche men entre in to the toun, and on the corners, ben hye towres, vpon whiche the prouostes were woonte to goo vp at certayn howres for to warne and somone the peple to praye and saye theyr orysons, & to honoure our lord after theyr custommes; somme endure yet, and the other ben falle. In the cloysture of this place ther dar noman dwelle, ne noman is suffred to entre but bare foot and clene washen, ffor there ben porters sette at alle the yates that take hede therof. In the mydle of thys place, whyche is thus cloosed, is another place, more hye and square; toward the weste men goo vp therto in two places, by degrees or stappes, and in lyke wyse toward the southe, but toward the south goeth noman vp but by one place. In euerych of the angles or corners were woont to be oratoryes, where the Sarasyns made theyr orysons and prayers; somme endure yet, & many ben beten doun. In the myddle of this hye place stondeth the temple, whiche is made viij square, & with out ben the walles couerd with tables of marble wrought with fyn gold moche rychely; the couerture aboue was of leed alle round right wel made. Eche of thyse places aboue & bynethe is paued with moche fayre whyte stone. in suche wyse whan it rayneth,

alle the waters of the temple, of whiche ther falleth grete plente, falleth doun cleene and cleer in the cysternes whiche ben within the cloystre. There bytwene the temple and the place which is emonge the pylers, there stondeth an hye roche, and lowe bynethe a dyche or a fosse. It is sayd that the angele stondeth there on, whan he slewe the peple for the synne that Dauyd had nombred his peple, vnto the tyme that oure lord commaunded that he shold put the swerde in to the shethe: there made Dauyd after an aulter. To fore that oure men entred in to the toun, it had been a certayn tyme all discoueryd, but after that they holde it, they couerid it with a fayr whyte marble, and made an aulter aboue where the clerkes dyde the seruyse of oure lord.

How the Turkes of Iherusalem, whan they knewe the comyng of our hooste, stopped the pyttes and fontaynes of the toun, capitulo Clxxj

THE londe in whyche Iherusalem stondeth is named Iurye, by cause that whan the x lygnages or trybus departed fro the heyer of Salamon, and helde them to Ieroboam, the tweyne abode in Iherusalem with Roboam that were the trybe of Iuda and the trybe of Beniamyn. And of the name of Iuda it is named Iurye. It is named also Palestyne for the Phylystees. This cyte standeth as it were in the nauyll of the londe of byheste or of promyssion, after the termes that were named by

Josue, whiche endure fro deserte to the mount of Lybane, and fro the grete flood of Eufrates vnto the see ❧ The place in whiche the cyte standeth in is moche ayerye and drye. There be no waters in the toun but only of the rayn; ffor in wynter tyme, whan it is acustomed to rayne moche in the londe, it is receyuyd in to the cisternes, of whom be many in the toun, and they occupye this water in alle thynges that they haue nede of. Neuertheles somme scriptures saye that they were woonte to haue fontaynes, whiche were without the toun and ran in to hit, but they were stopped by warre. The leste of alle the fontaynes was Gyon, whiche Ezechyas the kyng stopped, lyke as the scripture sayth. Gyon is now a place in the toun toward the south, within the valeye that is named Ermon; there is a chirche founded in the worship of seynt Procope marter. There in that same place was Salamon enoynted, as is red in the thirde book of kinges ❧ Without the toun a two myle or thre ben founden somme fontaynes, but they be but fewe, and they rendre but lytil water.

IN the partye toward the south, where as the two valeyes assemble, is a fontayne moch renommed, whiche is named Syloe. Our lord commaundes to the blynde man that neuer had seen that he shold goo wasshe hym in the water there of this fontayne, and he sawe clerely, and incontinent was made hool; this fontayne is but a lytil myle fro the toun. It semeth that it boylleth a lytil, som tyme it spryngeth not,

somme saye that alwaye the iij daye the water cometh agayn atte ferthest. Whan the Turkes of the toun knewe that oure men cam, they stopped the mowthes of thyse fontaynes and of the cysternes a fyue or vj myle aboute, ffor they thought that the pylgryms for lacke of watres sholde not maynteyne theyr syege to fore the toun. And without fawte that they had grete lack and mesease therby, as ye shal here folowyng. They that were within the cyte had grete plente of water in cisternes, and fro the fontaynes without cam grete habounddannce by conduytes, whiche descended in to ij pyscynes right grete by the temple. That one endureth yet in to this day, & is named Probatica Piscina, where as they were wonte to wasshe the flesshe of the sacrefyses, of whiche the gospel speketh, and sayth that it had v porches where the angele descended and meuid the water, and he that fyrst entred after the meuynge of the water was made hool of what dysease that euer he had. In that place oure sauyour Ihesu Crist heeled a lame man that had leyn there many yeres.

Of the nombre of them of thoost, of them of Iherusalem, & how oure men lodged them in the siege to fore Iherusalem, capitulo Clxxij.

IN the yere of thyncarnasion of our sauyour Ihesu Criste Mlxxxxix, in the moneth of Iuyn, the vij daye of the sayd moneth, was lodged the hoost of cristiente to fore the holy cyte of Iherusalem. The nombre of them that were there, as wel men and wymmen,

were xl M. There were not men defensable of the foote men aboue xx M. On horsback were not passyng a xv C. Alle the other were feble men, as seke men and wymmen, and also old peple. Within the toun were men able to bere armes xl thousand, whiche were comen in fro cytees and castellys ther aboute, and they were the best men of armes, and chosen for the valyauntest that they coude fynde. After that oure men were arryued to fore the toun, they hadde a grete counseyl emonge them, and called the cristen men of the countree for to demaunde of them in what syde they myght beste asiege the toun. They sawe wel that toward thoryent, ne toward the southe, they myght nought doo for the deepe valeys that ben there, therefore they accorded to sette the syege to fore the northeste. Wherfore it was so that fro the yate named the yate of seynt Steuen, whiche stondeth in the northeste, vnto the other yate that standeth toward the weste, and is named the yate of Dauyd, were lodged alle the barons and the other pylgryms.

THE valyaunte duc of Loreyne had the fyrste place. In the second was the erle of flaundres. In the thyrde was the duc of Normandye. The fourth place held Tancre besyde a tour of a corner, whiche yet is named the tour of Tancre, & other grete men were lodged there with hym. fro this toure vnto the yate of occident comprysed therle of Tholouse the place, and the people that were with hym. But after Tancre sawe that by cause the tour defended the yate so

wel, and also for the valeye that was so nyghe, he myght but lytil proufyte there. Therefore by the counseyl of the wyse men that knewe wel the beyng of the toun he remeuyd fro thens, and wente on the tertre on whiche the cyte is sette on bytwene the toun & the chirche that is named Syon, whiche is withoute the cyte as far as an archer maye shote at ones. There he lodged hym to thende that he myght beste greue the toun there, and for to deffende the Turkes this sayd chirche, whiche is holy, ffor there sowped our lord with his discyples, and weeshe humbly theyr feet. There descended the holy ghoost in fyry tonges on Witsondaye. In the same place passed oute of this world the gloryous vyrgyne Marye, whiche bare in her precious body the saue-our of the world. Ther is shewde the sepulture of seynt Steuen.

How oure men began tassaylle Iherusalem, and of the grete dilygence that they dyde to make engyns for to take it, capitulo Clxxiij

WHAN the barouns were thus lodged fro the yate towarde north/este, as I haue sayd, vn-to the tour on the corner which is vpon the vale of Iosaphat, and fro thens vnto that other corner of the cyte whiche is on the pendaunt of the same vale toward the south, thenne was it thynge euydente that the one half of the toun was wyth payne or vnnethe assieged. for fro thens that I haue sayd

vnto the yate named mount Syon, the cyte was no thynge assieged. ¶ The fyft daye after that thoost was lodged to fore the cyte, it was acorded comynly, and cryed thurgh alle the lodgys, that all men shold be armed the best wyse they myght & come to the assault. They cam alle, and began moche strongly thassaylle aboute the toun. They hadde the hertes moche hardy, and brennyng desyres and wylle to doo the werke of oure lord. In theyr comyng on they toke the barbycannes that were right ayenst them, and the Turkes embatilled them within the grete wallys.

THEY of the toun were so effrayed of the grete hardynesse and prowesse that they sawe with oure peple, & had ouer grete fere, in suche wyse that they loste alle theyr hope for to deffende the toun, and was wel knowen afterward that yf the talent of our men had endured, and that they had had skalyng laddres & castellys, by whiche they myght haue approuched the walles of the toun, they had taken it certaynly. But whan the assault had endured fro erly mornynge that same daye vnto one of the clok of the same daye at after none, they apperceyued wel that without engynes they myght not doo grete hurtene dommage to the toun, therfor they withdrewe them abak, and purposed to come agayn to thassault, whan theyr engyns shold be better ordeyned. ¶ The barons toke counseyl emong them, for taduyse how they myght fynde manere to make engynes for tassaylle the toun, ffor them semed that in alle the countree shold

not be founde trees ne wode ynowe for to make suche thynges as they sholde nede. But a valyaunt man of the countre cam forth & told to them of a valeye vj or vij myle thens, whiche was ful of trees & grete ynowghe for to make engyns. They sente theder grete nombre of carpenters, and somme of the barons to conduyte them.

CHE of them hewe doun the tres, & dyde do brynge them in charyottes. Thenne made they come alle them of thoost that coude medle with suche thynge, & dyde do make engyns, perierers, magonneauls, castellys, chattes & wayes couerd, moche grete plente. The pylgryms that coude werke toke none hyre ne wages yf they had as moch as they myght entretiene and kepe them self. The other that were pour receyued theyr wages of the comyns, ffor of alle the barons of thoost ther was none that myght paye the costes of this werke sauf therle of Tholouse. for he hym self allone susteined of his propre good all the werkemen without thaide of ony other, and also to many knyghtes that had despended theyr good dyde he gyue many grete yeftes. Whyles that the barons were thus besy, that euerych dyde do make his engyns for hym self, the other knyghtes & the mene peple ran vnto busshes and hedges ffor to fetche stockes and roddes with grete dilygence for to make hurdles. None was ydle, but alle men heelp to this werke. Ther was noman had sheme ne despyte to doo thynge that mygbt auaylle; ffor they sayd well that alle theyr trauaylle and despences,

that they had don and made in alle theyr waye, were nothyng worth yf this enterpryse for to take this toun were not wel accomplysshed.

How our peple were in grete meschyef at the sayd siege, and how the Turkes deserted them by cause they myght entre and yssue in and out of the toune capitulo Clxxiiij

IN thoost had they grete mesease of thurst; ffor, as I haue sayd to you, the place where the cite stondeth in is moch ayerye and drye, withoute fontaynes, without wellys and pyttes of water spryngynge, for they of the toun, whan they herd saye that oure peple cam, they fylled somme pyttes that were withoute the toun and the cysternes also where as was rayn water, and they had couerd and stopped them to thende that the pylgryms sholde haue none ease of water. But the cytezeyns of Bethlehem, and they of a lytil cytee called Tecua, that knewe the countre al aboute, told and ensseygned to them somme fontaynes, brokes, pyttes, and cisternes. Ther was grete prees & grete mesease, suche tyme there was that whan the pour peple myght brynge theyr barellis and vessellys full of troubled water & thycke, they sold it rychely in thooste. The fontayne of Syloe, of whiche I haue spoken to fore, myght not suffyse them, ffor it spryngeth not alway, and yet that was not right good. Thanguysshe of thurste grewe moche, of the heete that was

in Iuyn and of the trauaylle that they suffred, and for the duste that entred in theyr mowthes. Whan two or thre had founden ony water rennyng or welle, alle ran theder, in suche wyse that it faylled anon.

THE men a foote were not in so grete desease as they that had horses, ffor they ledde them somtyme thre or foure myle ferre for to watre them, & yet vnnethe founde they ynowgh. ¶There were many that lefte theyr horses, and habandouned to goo where they wold, and other beestys for defaulte of water. Ye shold haue seen mules, asses, oxen, kyen, & horses goon withoute garde or kepar in the feldes. ¶Atte laste, whan the beestis had long languisshed, they deyde, wherof cam grete stenche in thoost, wherof the ayer was corrupte ouer peryllously. The peple was not in lasse anguysshe there for thurste, than they had ben to fore at Anthyoche for hongre. Oure men were acustomed for to seche pasture for theyr horse moche ferre fro the toun in vyllages ther about. The Turkes of the toun marked it, and yssued where as the syege laye not, and cam ayenste them and slewe many, and toke away theyr horse, & brought them in to the cyte. Many escaped that fledde vnto thooste. Euery daye lassed the nombre of the pylgryms by many suche aduentures, and by grete infyrmyte and sekenesses that were in thooste, and by many other causes, wherof many deyed. And in the place of them cam none other; but they in the toun encreced and grewe euery day, ffor to them cam newe ayde and grete refresshementes of men and

vytaylle that myght entre and yssue by the yates beyng oute of the siege.

How the Turkes enforced them to make merueylleous engyns ayenst the owres, & of the meschyef that they dyde to the cristen men that dwellyd in the toun, capitulo Clxxv

MOCHE were our barons in grete payne for to make & adresse the engynes. The mene peple payned them ententyfly to seche and pourchasse suche ayde & helpe as they myght. They that were in the toun fayned nothyng, but made grete cure & grete entente to make other engyns ayenst oures. They toke good hede to the instrumentes that oure men made for tassaylle them, and they adressyd as good or better to defende them, ffor they had gretter plente of tymbre within the toun than they hadde that were without. The toun was moche wel garnysshed of alle thynges that they neded to fore that our peple cam. They had grete plente of cordes, stones wel fetyced, and other thynges more than they neded. The cristen men of the toun were more trauaylled and charged with thyse werkes than ony other men, and also they were beten cruelly, and somme they slewe. And with alle thyse mesauentures they bare them on honde that they were traytours, and descouerd theyr counseyl to theyr enemyes. There was none of the cristen men that durst goo vpon the walles, but yf he were charged or laden with stones or tymbre: and yf they had ony vytaylles in

their howses it was take from them, in suche wyse that they suffred many meseases. Whan one had nede of ony tree, anon they bete doun the hows of a crysten man, for to haue a lytil pyece of tymbre. Yf they taryed a lytil to come at the hour assygned, anon they were beten & hurt ouer sorowfully. They were brought to so moch sorow, that there were but fewe but they had leuer to haue been deed than a-lyue. They durst in no wyse yssue out of their howses without commaundement.

In this tyme arryued a shippe of Genewys atte porte of Halappe, and how theyr messagers cam in thoost, and how the barons they made theyr requeste, capitulo Clxxvj

AT the syege of Iherusalem the pylgryms conteyned them as I haue sayde. Thenne cam a messager that broughte tydynges, that somme shippes of the Genewes were arryued atte porte of Halappe. And moche requyred the barons of thoost they that were come in the shippes, that they wold sende to them somme knyghtes for to conduyte them vnto thooste. The barons prayde therle of Tholouse, whiche was most rychest of them, that he wold sende theder somme of his men. He dyde that they requyred, and sente a knyght of his named Wyldemart Carpynele, and delyuerd to hym xxx horsmen and l men a foote. After that they were departed the barons sayde to therle that he had sente ouer

fewe men, and prayd hym that he wolde sende yet moo; he agreed wel, and sente Remon Pelet and Guyllamme de Arsbran with l horsemen. But er they had ouertaken this Wyldemart, whiche wente alway forth til he was come bytwene Lyde & Rames in the playnes that ben there, ther mette hym vj C Turkes on horsbak, which ran vpon hym rudely. At this fyrst recountre they slewe four of oure horsmen, and moo of them a foote, yet our men were not disconfyted but helde them to gydre, and warned eche other to doo well. In this tyme, whyles they fought to gydre, thyse two knyghtes that cam after and theyr companye sawe this scarmuche, and so moche hasted that they cam and ioyned with our other men. Thenne began they to doo wel, in suche wise that they disconfyted the Turkes & put them to flyght, and slewe ij C Turkes of them. Of our men were slayn two valyaunt knyghtes, for whom alle the other were sory, that one was named Gylbert de Treue, and that other Achart de Mountuille.

WHAN our men had thus disconfyted the Turkes, they cam to Iaphe, where they were receyued with moch grete ioye: the maronners of Gene receyued them moche honorably. Whyles as they soiourned there & discharged theyr shippes, for to aduyse and ordeyne how they myght come in the hooste, sodanly or ony man toke hede of hit, the nauye of them of Egypte, whiche was more redy in the porte of Esklauonye, sawe theyr tyme for to hurte our peple, and cam to fore Iaphe. Whan oure men and the Genewes ap-

perceyued this, hastely they descended to the see. fyrst they essayed for to deffende them, but they, whan they sawe that there cam so moche peple that they myght not resiste them, they disgarnysshed theyr shyppes as faste as they myght, and bare away cordes, cables and saylles, & the other takle, and bare it & leyde it in the fortresse. One shippe of the Genewes, whiche was goon for somme gayne vpon the see, cam alle laden with grete gayne and wold arryued at the porte of Iaphe. But they of the shippe knewe wel fro ferre that the nauye of the Turkes helde the porte, therfor they caste about & torned theyr saylle, and wente to the Lyche. The cyte of Iaphe was thenne alle deserte and voyde of peple; ffor the cytezeyns of the toun trusted not wel in theyr fortresse, therfor they were goon a litil byfore that our men cam, of which it happed that oure men kepte nomore than the tour. And whan they sawe theyr tyme, they made them redy, and sette theyr thynges all in ordenaunce, & wente theyr waye and cam in to thoost, where they were receyued with grete ioye, ffor the maronners of Gene were moche good carpenters, and coude wel make engynes and other instrumentes of warre, in suche wyse that syth they were comen, the barons began more delyuerly & the better theyr enterpryses to brynge to an end.

How alle the pylgryms, euerych after his estate, payned them to make thengyns for thassault, capitulo Clxxvij

THEY that abode in thoost dyde theyr power for tadresse their engyns, ffor the duc Godefroy, the duc of Normandye & therle of flaundres, had a valyaunt man which was moch wise and iuste named Gace de Beer, he had the charge for to take hede to the werkmen. This man dyde do make theyr werkes justly and wel. The barons conduyted the men a foote for to gadre to gydre the roddes and bowes of trees for to make witthes & hurdles for to couere the engyns, and also to hewe the grete tymbre and brynge it to the hoost to the workmen. They toke the hydes of the beestes that deyde and stratched them vpon thengynes for to kepe and defende them fro fyre. In this partye toward the northest the barons entremedled vygorously, as I haue sayd, for to assayle fro the tour of the angle or corner vnto the west gate. Tancre trauaylled also moche, & the other knyghtes that were there lodged, for taduyse how the cyte myght be wel assaylled on theyr syde. On the syde toward the south, there was therle of Tholouse and his peple. He was moost ryche of them, & therfor he had the moost peple that wrought. They of Genes were drawen alle to hym, whiche had a captayn, a moche excellent werkman named Guylliam Ebryac, he made

them to haste moche the werke, and to amende it. Thus was alle thoost occupyed in this werke four monethes all hool. They had so moche exployted that euerych of the barons had doo made right that whiche he had begonne & entreprysed. Therfor they counseylled emonge them, and ordeyned at a day sett to goo to thassault. But for as moch as therle of Tholouse & Tancre had be grete rancour and wrath, & somme of the other barons and knyghtes that loued not wel to gyder for dyuerse reasons, the barons by the admonestacion of the bisshops wolde that of alle debate shold be good peas, and that eche shold pardone other all euyll wyll & talente, by cause that our lord shold helpe them the better in doynge and accomplysshyng his worke, and yf it happed them to dye, the surer myght they attende the deth.

Of the fayr processions that oure pylgryms made to thende that god shold gyue them vyctorye, and how they pardonned eche other theyr mal talentes and euyll wylles, capitulo Clxxviij

THE daye was ordeyned & taken by comyn accorde of alle, that procession shold be made, and the relyquyes sholde be borne suche as were had in thoost. They sholde alle goo vnto the mount of Olyuet, & they shold mayntene them this day in fastyng, in repentaunce of theyr synnes, & in orysons and prayer vnto our lord, to thende that he wold haue pyte of his peple and receyue in gree theyr ser-

uyse, in suche wyse that by them his herytages myght be recouerd fro the handes of his enemyes which helde it in their possession. Peter Theremyte on that one part, & Arnold, the chappellayn of the duc of Normandye, whiche was a grete clerk and wyse, of that other parte, made the sermon to the people. They exhorted them by swete wordes to enterpryse vygorously the werke of oure lord, wherin it were better to deye than to lyue. The mount of Olyuete is ayenst Iherusalem in the eeste partye, about a myle fer fro the toun, ffor the vaal of Iosaphat is bytwene bothe. There assembled our lord his discyples, and styed and ascended vp to fore them alle in to heuen, the day of thassension, and wente up in a clowde which toke hym.

THAN alle the peple had ben there in greete wepynges and prayers, and alle the debates appeased that were emong them, they descended fro the hylle in to the chyrche of mount Syon, whyche is by the cytee, as I haue sayd, in the side toward the south on the toppe of a tertre. The Sarasyns of the toun, that were in the toures and vpon the walles of the toun, merueylled moche what this myght be that oure men made there. And where they myght see the presse nygh to them within shotte, they cessed not to shote arowes and quarellys, in suche wyse that they hurted somme. Thenne addressyd they crosses vpon the walles, and in despyte of our sauyour and in reproche of oure fayth, spytte on them, and made other shames and fowle thynges which be

not for to be sayd. The people of our lord, which were in holy wylle for to serue hym, sawe wel thise thynges that the Turkes made. Theyr desyre grewe and encreaced moche in theyr hertes for tauenge the shame of our lord Ihesu Criste. Whan they had made theyr orysons and prayers in the chirche of mount Syon, the day was to them ordeyned and named for to make thassault by comyn acorde. Thenne they retourned to theyr lodgys. Yf ther was ony thyng to be made on theyr engyns, anon it was accomplysshyd, for euery man toke good hede about hym that no thynge faylled that shold be necessarye to make thassault ayenst theyr enemyes.

How oure men sodenly transported in the nyght theyr engyns vnto the other part of the toun for tassaylle on that side, capitulo Clxxxix

THAN the day approched that they had named for tassayle the cyte, the nyght to fore, the valyaunt duc Godeffroy, the erle of flaundres, and the duc of Normandye sawe that this partye of the cyte that they had assieged was moche wel garnysshed of alle maner of engyns, and the moost defensable men of the cyte they had sette there. Therfore they doubted more this part, than ony other. The noble men had herupon counseyll; they knewe wel that they myght not endommage the toun there, and enterprysed a thynge of a right grete affayre and of moche grete trauaylle. for alle thengynes that they had by them, and the castel to

fore the sydes were ioyned to gydre, they bare them alle on that other syde, whiche is bytwene the gate of seynt Stephen and the tour of thangle that is toward the northeest; ffor them semed, and it was trouthe, that by cause that the cyte had not be assieged on that syde that ther shold be the lasse defence. Wherof it happed that they woke al the nyght as wel they as theyr peple, in suche wyse that theyr engyns were alle ioyned and reysed vp byfore day or er the sonne aroos, in the places where they ought to be. The castel was so approuched the walle, and was moche hyer, in so moche that they that were therin were almoost as hye as one of the toures. And knowe ye for certayne that this was noo lytil trauaylle, ffor fro this place where they were fyrst lodged vnto the place where they sette theyr engyns was nygh half a myle. And the thynges were so wel and so hooly ordeyned, that to fore the sonne rysyng all thyng was redy at them.

ON the mornynge the Turkes byhelde on the walles and toures, and merueylled what this myght be that our men so trauaylled all the nyght. They sawe that the lodgys of the duc and of the other barons aboute hym were remeuyd. They sought them about that other side of the toun, and founde them there where as they had sette no garde. Whan they sawe thengyns and the castel dressyd, they merueylled ouer moche how they myght doo this werke in so lytille tyme. for this cause they doubted moche the more them that had thus enterprysed and accomplysshed so so-

deynly in the nyght about that syde of the toun. The barons that were lodged as ye haue herd to fore, were not ydle, but reysed theyr engyns euerych in his parte. And therle of Tholouse had made tapproche the walles a castel that he had made with moche grete trauaylle bytwene the chirche of mount Syon and the cyte. The other that were nyghe the corner, whiche is called the tour of Tancre, redressyd a castel of tree moche hye. Thyse thre castellys that were about the toun were nyhe alle of one facion, ffor they were alle square; the sydes that were toward the toun were double, in suche wyse that one of the panes that was without, myght be aualed vpon the walles, & thenne it shold be lyke a brydge. But for alle that the side was not vnclosed ne discouerd, but it was hool for to deffende them that were in the castel.

How the day folowyng our peple made a merueyllous assault, and how the Turkes defended them subtylly and wel, capitulo Clxxx

THE daye begonne strongly to wexe clere. Thenne, as it was enterprysed and deuysed, our men were allearmed for tapproche the walles. They alle were and had one purpoos: that is to wete, or they wolde take the toun vpon thenemyes of our lord, and delyuer the ordures of the mescreauntes fro the holy places, or ellys in this seruise they wold rendre their sowles to hym that made them. Ther were none that had wylle to draw aback fro this werke; the old men

forgate theyr age, the seke men theyr maladyes, the wyues and childeren enterprysed in theyr hertes to doo grete thynges. Alle generally payned them to drawe forth the castellys, to ioyne them to the walles in suche wyse that they myght approche them that defended it. They of the toun cessyd not to drawe and shote incessantly grete plenty of arowes and quarellys, & with theyr engyns caste grete stones, and threwe the moyen and maniable with theyr handis, fro the walles and towres; their entente was therwith to make oure men to withdrawen fro the walles. The good cristen men, that doubted nothynge to deye, couerd them with targes and sheldes, thise and other habyllemens they sette to fore them for to kepe them fro the stones and shotte.

THEY that were within the castellis of tree lefte not to shote & caste stones vpon the Turkes incessantly. And other had grete leuers and plente of ropes and cordes with whiche they laboured and payned them to drawe forth the castellys. They that were put for to throwe the stones and to occupye thengyns were not ydle, but had theyr thynges wel adressyd, and threwe to them that defended the toun grete stones moche asprely, & trauaylled moche for to do thynge that myght greue their enemyes. But they that wold haue put forth the castellys myght not doo that they wold; for ther was a dych moche depe to fore the barbycane, ffor whiche they myght not make theyr engyns ioyne to the walles. The strokes of the stones that were throwen on the walles dyde

not moche harme to the walles of the cyte, ffor the Turkes had sackes ful of heye and of coton, & grete peces of tymbre bounden with cables of shippes, whiche henge a longe by the walles and towres, in such wyse that whan the stones of thengyns smote thyse softe thynges, the strokes were lost & made no hurte to the walles.

ON that other syde the Turkes within the toun had moo engyns adressyd than we had without, & more quantite of other artyllerye, of arbalestres without comparyson than we hadde, by whiche they slewe many of the pilgrims, and it myght not be but that our peple were sore aferd. Thus was thassault moche grete and perylous fro the mornyng vnto euensong tyme, and during thassault it cessed neuer of arowes and stones fleynge more thycke, than was in a Myere to fore. There were so many that ofte the stones mette and hytte eche other in thayer, in suche wyse that they brak and flewe in pyeces. Thassault was in thre places, & the barons payned them sore to greue the Turkes: men myght not wel knowe whiche partye had the better. Oure pylgryms were put to grete payne to bere erthe for to fylle the dyche, to thende that the castellys myght ioyne to the walles. They within threwe fyre moche thycke in to the castellys, men myght see many arowes brennyng, brondes, pottes ful of sulphre, of oylle, and other thynges nourysshyng to fyre. The stones smote them with so grete strokes that they brak and the pyeces flewe thurgh out the sydes, and it myght not be but that

many were hurte that were aboue for tassaylle. Hyt semed many tymes that alle shold falle to the ground; but our men quenchyd the fyre with water and vynegar, and had redy pynnes for to stoppe the holes, and also for to holde to gydre theyr castellys moche iustely, in suche wyse that theyr contenaunces were in alle thynges good and hardy.

The nyght departed the sayd assault, our peple withdrewe them, and how they watched wel theyr engyns, & the Turkes the toun, capitulo Clxxxj

THIS grete assault and peryllous, that so long endured, the derk nyght departed. Our men retorned to theyr lodgys for to ete and reste; they lefte grete watche aboute theyr engyns, by cause the Turkes shold not brenne them, and they of the toun made grete watche to kepe theyr walles, ffor theye doubted moche that oure peple, whom they had seen so vygorously assaylle & defende them, myght by nyght come vp on the walles by laddres and entre in to the toun. Therfor they peyned them to make good watche alle this nyght, and to goo round about the walles & serche the towres. The stretes also made watche within the toun with grete nombre of people, by cause of fere of trayson. They sette heron grete entente, ffor it was for the sauacion of theyr lyues, theyr wyues, theyr childeren, and alle theyr goodes hoolly. Our peple that were in the tentes and in the lodgys had not theyr hertes in reste, but they

remembryd of thassault that had be. Euery man remembryd hym what he had don, and hym semed that he had left many thynges vndon that he ought to haue don, and moche desired they alle to come to the poynt for to doo prowesse. The daye taryed long er it cam as they thought; them semed that they had no greef ne ennoye of the trauaylle that they had suffred that day. They had grete hope in theyr hertes, that as sone as they shold come agayn to gydre for tassaylle, that they by the helpe of our lord they shold haue the better. And they were in grete anguysshe, by cause them semed to be in more mesease in their lodgys than in thassault.

How our peple retorned agayn on the morne to thassault, & of the sorceryes that they wold haue charmed one of our engyns, capitulo Clxxxij

THE sprynge of the daye appiered; the peple incontynent were awaked. Eche wente to the place where he had ben the daye to fore. Thenne shold ye haue seen somme renne to thengynes and other goo vpone the castellys for to shote with bowes & arabalestres, and many abode vnder for to drawe the sayd castellys forth. Nowe were they of the toun anon redy for to defende vygorously ayenst the assayllers. There deyed ynowghe on bothe sydes as well of stones as of quarellys, but not for that the other lefte not, but gretely they dyde theyr deuoyr, ne neuer was founden lasse cowardyse in so

peryllous affayre and werke. One thynge happed that ought not to be forgoten. That is, that our men had an instrument called caable, so strong and so wel made that it threwe thre grete stones attones, and dyde moche hurte in the toun where it atteyned. The Turkes saw welle that they coude not breke it, ffor it threwe from so ferre that their engins myght not come there to. Therfor they dyde do come vpon the walles ij old wytches or enchaunteresses, whiche shold charme this engyne, and they had with them iij maydens for to helpe to make theyr charme. Alle they of oure hooste behelde them moche ententyfly, ffor they made their enchauntement vpon the walles. They abode so longe ther that thengyns threwe the stones, and atteyned the two old wytches and the thre maydens, in such wise that they were smeton alle to pyeces, & fyl doun deed fro the walles, of whom the sowles wente forthe to helle. Thenne oure peple made an hu and a crye so grete, and so grete ioye therof, that euery man of them was refresshyd of this good strook. They of the toun were ouer sorowfull and moche abasshed, in suche wyse that they semed that they had lost alle theyr good ewr and fortune for the losse of thyse two wytches that thus were slayn.

Of the despayr of our peple at the sayd assault, & how they were recomforted by a knyght vnknowen, and euydent myracles, capitulo Clxxxiij

IN this poynt endured thassault vnto after myddaye, that men knewe not whyche of them had the better. Our men began to wexe wery, & thassault tourned them to annoye and gryef, ffor they had longe don alle theyr power, and the werke was not moche amended, but were falle in a desperaunce, in suche wyse that they had talente to leue the castell of tree, whiche was nygh al to-broken of the stones and shotte, and wolde drawe abak the other engyns that smoked of the fyere that the Turkes had caste therin, therfore wold they prolonge thassault til on the morn, and herof to doo thus they had good wylle. Theyr enemyes apperceyued this that they lefte thassault thus, and were reysed in to grete pryde; they mocqued oure peple, and sayd to them fowle and shamefull wordes, and more asprely defended them self, and hurted thengyns. In moche feble poynt was the conduyte of our pylgryms, and yf ne had be the debonayrte of oure lord, whiche by myracle comforted them, like as ye shal here. Fro the mount of Olyuet appiered a knyght whiche was not knowen ne neuer myght be founden. This knyght began to shake and meue his shelde, whiche was moche cleer and shynyng, and made signe to our peple that they shold now retorne, and come a-

gayne to thassault. The duc Godeffroy was in his estage of the castell, and Eustace his broder with hym, for to deuyse and ordeyne there that oughte be don, & to kepe that holde whiche moch was good. ¶As sone as he sawe this signe that this knyght made, he began to call all the peple agayn with a moch hye voys, and cryed and affermed that yf they wold retorne the toun shold be taken. Herof it happed that by the debonayrte of oure lord, whiche put in the hertes hardynesse, in suche wyse that they cam agayn with so grete ioye, as that euery man had be in certaynte of the victorye. So grete hardynes was come in to their hertes, that they were entierly refresshyd, as they that in al that day had suffred no trauaylle.

AND one thyng happed whiche was grete meruaylle; ffor they that were hurte peryllously and laye in theyr beddes, sprange vp anon & reprysed theyr harnoys and armes, in suche wyse that more dylygently and of greter herte than the other they began to assaylle. The barons of thooste, that were capytayns of the people, for to gyue ensample to other men put them self alway to fore. ¶Where the grettest daungiers were, were founden the moost hye men of thoost, by whiche the mene peple were the more hardy. The wymmen that myght bere no armes, ranne with theyr pottes ful of water thurgh thoost, and gaf to all them that were wery of assayllyng to drynke, and moche admonested them by fayr wordes for to doo wel, and to serue our lord vygorously. Oure

pylgryms had so grete ioye in theyr hertes that they laboured and toke the werke so hertely, that within the space of half an hour they fylled the dyche, & a barbycan whiche was moche stronge, in suche wyse that they brought the castel vnto the walle. The Turkes of the toun had hanged, as I haue sayd, with cordes long pyeces of tymbre a-long the wall for to receyue the strokes of the stones. Emong all other there were two grete pyeces of tymbre moche longe, of whiche our men that were in the castel cutte the cordes, in suche wyse that they fylle to the ground. They that were vnder toke them with grete perylle, and drewe them ner the castel for to helpe to staye and sette vnder the brydge of the castel whan it shold be aualed. for the side of the castel that shold be lete falle vpon the walle, was of feble tymbre, in suche wyse that yf thyse two pyeces of tymbre had not be, the men of armes mocht not haue passed on it.

How therle of Tholouse assaylled vygorously toward the south, and of thardaunt desire that eche man had to doo wel, capitulo Clxxxiiij

GHYLES as they conteyned them thus vygorously in the partye toward the northeest, the erle of Tholouse, & the other that were with hym on the side toward the south, assaylled there with grete strengthe. They had fylled a dyche, in whiche they had laboured I wote not how many dayes, in suche wyse that by force they had drawen theyr castel so ferre forth

that it was nyghe the walle, in suche wyse that they that were aboue in the last stage myght smyte the Turkes with their glaues that defended the tour. A man coude not thynke the ardaunt desyre, ne so grete anguysshe as euerych of the cristen men had in his herte for to do wel in this assault. One thinge there was that gaf to them moche grete courage, & merueyllously grete hardynesse. for a man that was an heremyte on the mount of Olyuete had promysed to them moche certaynly, that that same daye shold be taken the holy cyte of Iherusalem. Ne they had not forgoten the demonstraunce that the knyght made to them whan he shoke his shelde, ne neuer after was seen. They had moche hope of the vyctorye by thise signefyaunces that were shewed to them. It semed that thassaultes were bothe in one poynt in eyther syde that I haue named. They dyde bothe right wel, and certaynly it appeered wel that oure lord wold helpe his souldyours, & brynge theyr pylgremage to an ende, whiche so longe had suffred so many maners of mesease for to doo to hym seruyse.

Of the pryse and takynge of Iherusalem, and how the duc Godeffroye entred fyrst vpon the walles, and who folowed after, capitulo Clxxxv.

THE people of the duc Godefroy & the other barons whiche were with hym, as I haue sayd, fought moche asprely ayenst theyr enemyes on theyr syde, and delyuerd to them a moch marueyllous assault. They had don so moche that theyr enemyes wexed

wery, & weryly & slowly defended them. Oure men were drawen forth to fore, the dyches were fylled, the barbycans taken, in suche wise that they cam playn tothe walles, though they within entremeted not moche to shote and launch fro aboue vpon the walls, ne by the loope-holes. The duc commaunded to his peple that were vppon the castel, that they sette fire in the pokes of cotton and in the sackes of heye that henge on the walles. They dyde his commaundement; thenne aroos a smoke so blacke and so thycke that they myght nothynge see. The wynd was northe-este, and blew vpon the Turkes that were at defense upon the walles, in such wyse that they myght not open theyr eyen ne theyr mowthes, but by force they muste avoyde the place that was delyuerd to them to deffende. ¶ The valyaunt duc Godeffroye, whiche soynously entended to the werke, apperceyued first that they shold drawe diligently the ij pyeces of tymbre that were fallen fro the walle, as ye haue herde to fore. This was don anon, in suche wyse that the two endes of the two trees were leyd upon the castel, and the two other endes vpon the walle. ¶ Thenne commaunded that the syde of the castel, that myght be late doun, shold be late doun vpon the two pyeces of tymbre, and thus was the brydge made good and strong vpon the tymbre of theyr enemyes.

THE fyrst that entred and passed by the brydge vpon the walles was the duc Godeffroy of Boloyne & Eustace his brother with hym. ¶ After thyse tweyne cam two other knyghtes, that were also bretheren, whiche also were

fyers, noble and hardy; that one was named Lutol & that other Gylbert; they were borne in Tornay. Anon ther siewed them grete nombre of knyghtes and of peple a foote, whiche ranne moche thycke, as moche as they myghte susteyne. Anon the Turkes apperceyued that our men were entred in to the toun, and sawe the baner of the duc vpon the wallys, & were disconfyted & gaf ouer the toures, and descended in to the toun, and put them in to the strayt and narowe stretes for to defende them. Oure peple sawe that the duc and grete partye of the knyghtes were now entred, and that they had taken I wote not how many towres. They abode no commaundement, but adressyd laddres to the walles and wente vp. It was commaunded a good whyle to fore that euery ij knyghtes shold haue a laddre, therfor ther were grete nombre in thoost, whiche anon were adressyd vp. The duc ranne moche dylygently vppon the walles, and sette the peple as they cam in the towres. He moche hasted for to take the fortresse. Anon, after that the duc was entred, entred in the duc of Normandye, therle of flaundres, Tancre the valyaunt, therle of seynt Poul, Bawdyn d'Eltors, Gace de Barce, Gaste de Bedyers, Thomas de fere, Gyralt de Roussylon, Lowys de Moncon, Conain of Brytayne, therle Remboult of Orenge, Conain de Montagu, Lambert his sone, & many other knyghtes whiche I can not name. Whan the valyaunt duc knewe certaynly that they were in the toun, he called them and commaunded that they shold goo hastely to the yate named the yate of seynt Stephen, & that they

shold opene it. Whan it was open, alle the people cam in with moche grete prees, in suche wyse that there abode but fewe withoute, but alle were comen within the toun. This was vpon a frydaye, aboute none. It is a thynge for to be beleuyd, that oure lord dyde this by grete sygnefyaunce, ffor on this daye and about that hour suffred he deth on the crosse ryght cruel in the same place, for the redempcion of man. Therfore wolde the swete lord that the peple of his trewe pylgryms shold gete on this day this toun, and delyuer it oute of the seruage and thraldom of the hethen men, and make it free vnto cristen men, that his seruyse myght be had therin and encreced.

Of the mayntenyng of our peple entred in to the toun toward the northeest, and therle of Tholouse herof alle ygnoraunt assaylled alle way, capitulo Clxxxvj.

The valyaunt duc Godeffroy of Buyllon, the knyghtes, and the other men of armes that were with hym, descended from the walles all armed in to the toun. They wente to gydre thurgh the stretes with their swerdes in their handes and glayues; alle them that they mette they slewe and smote right doun, men, wymmen and childeren, sparyng none: there myght no prayers ne cryeng of mercy auaylle. They slewe so many in the stretes that there were heeps of dede bodyes, & myght not goo ne passe

but vpon them that so laye deed. The foote men wente in the other partyes of the toun by grete rowtes, holdyng in theyr hands grete polaxes, swerdes, malles and other wepens, sleyng alle the Turkes that they coude fynde, ffor thei were the men of the world whom our men had grettest hate vnto, and gladlyest wold put to deth. They were thenne comen vnto the mydle of the cyte. ❧ Therle of Tholouse ne his men knewe nothyng yet that the toun was taken, but assaylled moche fyersly the toun ayenst Syon. The Turkes that defended them ayenst hym apperceyued not that our peple were in the toun.

BUT whan the crye and the noyse of them that men slowe began to growe, the Turkes behelde and sawe fro the walles, and knewe wel the baners and armes of the cristen men, and were moche abasshed. They lefte alle theyr deffences, and fledde there where they supposed best to be saued, and by cause that the dongeon of the toun whiche was by, and was the grettest strengthe of the cyte, alle they that myght entre entred therin, and shette fast the doores on them ❧ The erle of Tholouse made the brydge of his castle auale vpon the walles, and entred there in the toun, he hym self, and the erle of Dye, Ysocar, Remon Pelet, Guyllem de Sabram, the bisshop of Albare, and the other barons, moche hastely, and wende that they on that parte of the toun had be the first that had entred. Thenne they went doun of the walles, and alle the Turkes that they founde

in the stretes and in the howses they brought to deth & slewe doun right. fro than forthon myght none escape, ffor they that fledde to fore duc Godeffroye and his rowte, mette with other rowtes of oure peple, whiche smote them doun & slewe them without mercy ❧ I may not reherce ne can not to you the faites of euery man by hym self, but there was so moche blood shedde that the canellys and ruissheauls ronne alle of blood, & alle the stretes of the toun were couerd with dede men, in suche wyse that it was grete pyte for to see, yf it had not be of thenemyes of our lord Jhesu Creste.

How x M Turkes were slayn in the temple, and of the grete tresour that Tancre founde in the sayd temple, capitulo Clxxxvij

IN to thynner part of the temple were fledde moche grete peple of the toun, by cause it was the moost seynorously & rial place of the toun, and the sayd place was fast shette and closed with good walles, of towres & yates. But this auaylled them but lytil, ffor incontinent Tancre, which ladde a grete partye of thoost with hym, ranne theder and toke it by strengthe, and slewe many therin. And it was sayd that Tancre founde therin grete hauoyr, and gold, syluer, precious stones and cloth of sylk. He made alle to be born away; but after, whan alle was sette in reste, he rendryd all, & made it al to be brought in to the comyn ❧ The other barons, that had en-

serched the toun & slayn alle the Turkes that they encountred, herd saye that wythyn the cloysture of the temple were fled alle the remenaunt of theyr enemyes. They alle cam to gydre theder, & founde that it was trewe ❧ Thenne commaunded they to theyr men that they shold entre in to the place, and put them alle to deth, and so they dyde.

IT was wel couenable thyng that the hethen men and fals mysbyleuyd, whiche had fowled and shamefully had maculated with theyr mahometry & fowle lawe of Machomet, shold abye there theyr fals rytes, and that theyr blood shold also be shedd where as they had spred the ordure of mescreaunce. ❧ It was an hydeouse thyng to see the multitude of peple which were slayn in this place. They them self that had slayn hem were sore ennoyed so for to beholde them, ffor fro the plante of the foot vnto the heed was none other thyng but blood. Ther was founde that within the closyng of the temple were slayn x M Turkes, without them that leye in the stretes and other places of the cyte ❧ Thenne the mene peple of the pylgryms ran serchyng the lanes and narow stretes. Whan they fonde ony of the Turkes that had hyd them, were it man or woman, anon he was put to deth ❧ The barons had deuysed to fore that the toun was taken, that euery man shold haue the hows in the toun that he toke and fyrst seased, & it shold be his with alle appertenauntes; wherefor it was so that the barons sette vpon the howses that they had conquered theyr baners, the

lasse knyghtes and men of armes theyr sheldes; the men a foote sette vp theyr hattes and theyr swerdes, ffor to shewe the tokenes that the howses were thenne taken and seased, to thende that none other shold come in to it.

Of the fayr ordenaunces that the cristen men made to fore they wente for to vnarme them, after the toun was taken, capitulo Clxxxviij

WHAN the holy cyte was thus taken, and alle the Sarasyns that coude be founden were slayn, the barons assembled them to gydre to fore they vnarmed them, & commaunded to sette men in the towres for to make good watche, & kepe the toun. And sette porters for to kepe the yates, that noman from withoute shold come in to the toun without leue, vnto the tyme that they had ordeyned and chosen a lord by comyn acorde, that should holde the toun and gouerne it at his wylle. It was not merueylle if they doubted yet, ffor alle the countre was ful of Sarasyns, and myght peraduenture assemble and sodenly come and smyte in to the toun yf ther were not good watche and hede taken. Thenne departed the barons, & disarmed them and toke of theyr harnoys in theyr hostellys, & wesshe theyr handes and feete moche wel, and chaunged theyr clothes. Thenne began they goo bare foot, and in wepynges and teeres, vnto the holy places of the cyte where oure sauyour

Ihesu Criste had ben bodyly; they kyssed the place moche swetly where as his feet had touched.

THE crysten peple and the clergye of the toun, to whom the Turkes had many tymes don grete shames for the name of Ihesu Criste, cam with procession and bare suche relyques as they had ayenst the barons, and brought them, yeldyng thankes to Almyghty God, vnto the sepulcre. And there it was a pytous thyng to see how the peple wepte for ioye and pyte, and how they fylle doun a crosse to fore the sepulcre. It semed to eueryche of them that eche sawe there the bodye of our lord there deed. There were so many teeres & wepynges that euery man thought certaynly oure lord was there. Whan they cam in one of the holy places, they coude not departe, but yf it were for thardaunt desire that they had for to goo in another. They had so moche ioye and gladnesse of this honour, that our lord had gyuen them the grace to see the day that the holy cyte was delyuerd fro thenemyes of Ihesu Cryste by theyr trauaylles, in such wyse that they rought not ne sette not by the remenaunt of theyr lyues. They offred and gaf largely to the chirches, and to men of the chirche, and made vowes to yeue yeftes in their countrees, whiche thenne sette lytil by temporal thynges, ffor them thought that they were atte yates and entree of paradys, ffor neuer in this world myght gretter ioye entre in to the herte of a man than was in them in sechyng and goyng to the holye places where our sauyour Ihesu Criste

had ben. ¶ Oneshold haue had a moche harde herte and lytil pyteous, that had seen this syght, and myght haue holde hym fro wepynge.

THAN thyse barons and alle the other peple had made thus glad chiere of this that they had accomplysshyd theyr pylgremage, the bysshoppes, and generally alle the peple of the chirche, myght not departe fro the chirche of the sepulcre, ne fro the other holy places. They prayd our lord moche deuoutly & ententyfly for the peple, and rendred grete graces and thankynges vnto Ihesu Criste of this that he had suffred them to see thyse holy places where the fayth of crystendom was fyrste gyuen ¶ In thys daye happed certayn thynge that was seen of many men in the cyte of Iherusalem: that was, the valyaunt man Aymart, the bysshop of Puy, whiche was dede in Anthyoche, lyke as ye haue herd to fore, many noble men, whom men ought to byleue, affermed certaynly that they sawe hym firste mounte and goo vpon the walles of the toun, and that he called other to come aftir hym. ¶ Of many other pylgryms also, that were to fore by the waye deed, it was certayne that they appiered to many men the daye whan they vysyted the chirches of the cyte.

BY thyse thynges may wel be knowen that our lord loueth this holy cyte aboue alle other, and that this is the hyest pylgremage that may be, whan deed men ben reysed by the wylle of oure lord for taccomplysshe theyr pylgremage. Whan oure lord Ihesu Criste aroos

fro deth to lyf, the gospel sayth that the same day aroos many bodyes of them that had ben deed, & appiered to many in the cyte. This myracle was renewed this day by Ihesu Criste, by this cyte whiche had ben longe holden in the seygnorye of the paynems, whan it was vnder them that serued the lawe of Machommet ❧ So grete noyse was thurgh the toun of the ioye that was made, that they remembred not the grete trauaylle that they had suffred by alle theyr waye. Thenne was accomplysshed alle euydently this that the prophete sayd: Enioye ye with Iherusalem, and make ye ioye therin, ye that loue her.

How the cristen men, that had charged their message for their delyueraunce to Peter Theremyte, knewe hym, capitulo Clxxxix

AS many pour cristen men as had dwellid in the toun, which had seen Peter Theremyte four or fyue yere to fore, whan they delyuerd to hym lettres for to bere to our holy fader the pope, and to the barons of fraunce, to the ende that they myght sette remedye for theyr affayres, they knewe hym emonge the other ❧ Thenne they cam to hym and fyl doun to his feet, and wepte for ioye, and moche gretely thanked hym of this that he had so wel performed his message, ne they cessed not to yeue preysyng and lawde to our lord that had gyuen suche counseyl to the barons and to the peple, by which they

had performed such an hye werke, which was aboue the hope of alle men, sauf by thayde of oure lord. All the gree and thanke they gaf to Peter Theremyte, whiche so vygorously had enterprysed for to delyuere them by thelpe of our lord fro the caytyfnes and seruage dolorous, in whiche they had ben so long holden by the cruelte of the Sarasyns, lyke as ye haue herde to fore. The patryarke of Iherusalem was goon in to Cypres, for to demaunde almesse and ayde of the cristen men there, for to helpe and socoure the cristen men of Iherusalem to pay the cruel taillages that the Turkes had sette vpon them, ffor he doubted yf they faylled of their payment, that they wold bete & throwe doun theyr chirches or put to deth the beste of theyr peple, lyke as they had don many tymes to fore. This good man, the patriarke, knewe nothyng of this good auenture that oure lord had don of the delyueraunce of the toun, but supposed to haue come and to haue founden it in suche seruage as it was whan he departed.

How they clensed the toun of the dede bodyes; of many other ordenaunces, & how the Turkes rendred the dongeon vnto the erle of Tholouse, capitulo Clxxxx

WHAN the barons and the other pylgryms had made theyr prayers & vysyted the holy chirches thurgh the cyte of Iherusalem, the hye men of the hooste assembled, and sayd that it was a peryllous thynge yf the toun were not voyded of the dede bo-

dyes, and purged of the blood and ordure, ffor in short tyme the ayer shold be corrupt, by whiche sekeness and infyrmytes myght ensiewe & folowe. There were somme Turkes yet that were not slayn, but were kepte in yrons; to them was commaunded this werke for to bere the bodyes out of the toun, but by cause they were but fewe of them, & myght not suffyse to doo it shortly, they toke the poure men of thoost, and gaf to them good hyre for to helpe to accomplysshe this werke. Whan the barons had thus deuysed thyse thynges, they wente in to theyr howses & made moche grete ioye; they gaf largeli to ete and drynke, ffor the toun was repleneshed of alle goodes, in suche wise that they that were to fore poure fonde in the howses alle thyng was nedeful to them, wherof they had endured to fore grete anguysshe & penurye, ffor they fonde the cysternes alle ful in alle the howses.

ON the thyrd day was ordeyned that market shold be holden in the toun, and that they shold bye & selle suche thynges as they had conquerd in the cyte. They were moche refresshyd and rested, ffor they abode now no trauayll. They forgate not our lorde, whyche had brought them in so grete honour as for taccomplysshe his werke by them, and by comyn acord of the prelates, of the barons, and of all the people, was ordeyned that this daye in whiche Iherusalem wos goten and conquerd, shold euermore after be holden feste and holy day in remembraunce of the cristen men, to thanke and preyse our lord, and also

praye to our lord for the sowles of them that thyse thynges had accomplysshed. A grete partye of the Turkes that were in the dongeon of the toun named the tour Dauid, sawe wel that alle the cyte was taken, and that they had no more hope of rescows ne socour ayenst our men. Therfor they requyred by messagers therle of Tholouse whiche was next to them, and dyde do be sayd to hym, yf they myghte departe with theyr wyues, children, & suche goodes as they had in the tour, they wold go theyr waye & delyuere ouer the tour. He agreed and acorded it to them, and so they departed, and he dyde them to be conduyted saufly vnto Escalonne. Thus was the tour yolden.

THEY that had the charge for to purge and voyde the dede bodyes oute of the toun dyde it ententyfly and dylygently, in suche wyse that in shorte tyme this thynge was alle don; ffor they beryed them in depe pyttes without the toun the moost parte, the remenaunt they brente in to asshes, that the cendres with the wynde was blowen away. Thenne were our men in good sewrte and ease within the toun to goo and walke thurgh the stretes and other places, & dyde dayly goo in pylgremages, that vnnethe myght they departe thens, they abode so gladly there. In this manere, as ye haue herd, was taken the holy cyte of Iherusalem, in the yere of thyncarnacion of oure sauyour Ihesu Criste M lxxxxix, the xv daye of the moneth of Iuyll, on a fryday at the hour of none, the iij yere after that the pylgryms had enter-

prysed this viage. Tho was pope of Rome Urban, and Henry emperour of the Romayns, Alexis emperour of Constantynople, and Phylyp kyng of fraunce.

Howe the hye barons of thoost assembled for to chese a kynge of Iherusalem, and thoppynyon of the clergye vpon the same, capitulo Clxxxxj

LYKE as ye haue herd, the pylgryms whiche had grete nede of reste soiourned in the toun. The barons deuysed the affaires of the cyte. In moche grete ioye were they there vij dayes ❧ On the viij daye assembled alle the barons for to chese one of them, to whome the garde, gouernaunce and kepyng of the toun shold be delyuerd, and the seygnorye of the holy cyte, and the charge of the royamme entierly, as it was reason and right ❧ They made theyr prayers and orysons, & with alle theyr herte called the holy ghooste, that he wold counseylle them that daye, and to yeue to them grace to chese suche a man as were worthy and couenable to susteyne the faytes of the royamme ❧ Whyles as they were in this affayre, & moche entended with good fayth ther about, an hepe of clerkes assembled, whiche had not good entencion but thought on malyce by pryde and couetyse. They cam where as the barons were assembled, and sente to them for to speke to them a short word or two. They suffred them to come in.

THAN they were comen in, one of them spak in this manere: fayr lordes, we haue vnderstanden that ye be assembled here for to chese a king that shal gouerne this londe, whiche thynge plesith vs moche, and we holden it for right wel don, yf ye doo it in the manere that ye ought to doo it, ffor without doubte the spyrituel thynges be more digne and worthy than the temporall. Therfore we saye to you, that the moost hye thynges ought to goo to fore, and thus wolde we that ye shold doo, and thordenaunce shold not go forth other wyse than it ought to be. Now thenne, we praye you and requyre you in the name of oure lord, that ye entremete not you to make a kynge til that ye haue chosen a patriarke in this toun that can gouerne the cristiente. Yf it plese you that this be don fyrst, it shal be good and weel for you, and we shal thenne holde hym for kyng that ye shal gyue to us. But if ye wyll do otherwyse, we shal not holde it for good, ne wel don, but we shal discorde, and after that ye doo shal not be ferme.

THIS worde semed outwarde to haue somme apparence of weel, but it cam of euyl purpoos; ther was therin but deceyt and trecherye. Of this complot and barate, was maister & capitayne a bisshop of Calabre, born of a cyte whiche was named Maturane. This bisshop acorded moche to one Arnold, of whom I haue spoken to fore, whiche was ful of desloyalte. He was not yet subdeken, and was a preestes sone, and of so euyl

and fowl lyf that the boyes and garsons had made
songes of hym thurgh thooste. And yet, not with
stondynge alle this, the bisshop of Calabre, ayenst
god and reson, wolde haue made hym patriark, ffor
they knewe ouermoche euyl, therfor were they both
acorded to gyder. They had made a bargain bytwene
them that as sone as this Arnold shold be patriarke
the sayd bisshop shold haue tharchbissoprych of
Bethlehem. But oure lord ordeyned this thynge in
another maner as ye shal here. Ther were in thoost
many clerkes of euylle contenaunce, that lytle en-
tended to the seruyce of our lord; they litil preysed
relygyon and honneste, ffor syth the tyme that the
valyaunt bysshop of Puy was dede, whyche was
legat of our holy fader the pope, the bisshop Wil-
liam of Orenge was in his place, whiche was a re-
lygyous man, and moch doubted our lord, but he
abode not longe after, but was deed. He was buried
in the chirche of Marran in suche wyse lyke as ye
haue herd. Thenne was the clergye without pastour
and garde, and lete them falle in euyl lyf. The bis-
shop of Albare conteyned hym holyly in this pyl-
gremage, and somme other that were noble, but the
comyn of the clerkes made it alle ylle.

How the duc Godeffroy was chosen kyng of Iherusalem, and how he was presented to our lord in his chirche of the holy sepulcre, capitulo Clxxxxij

THE wordes that the clerkes had brought to the barons in theyr election was not moche preysed, but aretted it to grete folye, ne therfore letted not to doo that they had bygonnen. To thende thenne that they myght knowe the better the couynes of alle the barouns, they ordeyned wyse men that sholde enserche the lyf of euerych of them and the maners. They dyde do come to fore them suche men as were moost pryue of the barons, and toke eche of them a parte by the leue of theyr lordes, and toke of them theyr othes to saye the trouthe of that they shold be examyned, that was of the lyf and manere of theyr lordes, without lesynge & fayllynge of the trouthe. Thus it was accorded emonge them. It was a grete thynge whan the lordes abandouned them self tenserche theyr lyues, but the wyse men that made this enquest were trewe men, and helde alle thyng secrete as that ought not to be knowen. Many thynges were sayd to them of whiche they toke but lytil hede.

AMONG alle other thynges, they that were moost pryuee of the duc Godeffroye whan they were demaunded of his maners and his tetches, they answerde that he had one manere ryghte greuous and ennoyous, ffor whan he

herd masse and the seruyse of oure lorde, he coude not departe out of the chirche, but questioned of the pictures and glass windowes to the clerkes and preestes, and entended moche to the historyes, and the lives of the saintes. He herd gladly the ryngyng of the belles, and entendeth so moche in this wyse that many times it displesyd moche to his felawship and seruauntes, & oftymes his mete appayred by cause of his longe taryeng in the monasteryes and holy places. ¶ Whan the wysemen herd this, & that this was the grettest vyce that coude be founden in the duc, they had moche grete ioye, ffor they thought wel that he dyde this for the loue of oure fayth & for thonour of our sauyour. ¶ Whan they had herd alle that they wold enquyre of the barons, they spak to gydre, and grete partye of them were acorded upon therle of Tholouse, if it had not be for one thynge, ffor alle they of his countre that were moost pryue with hym, thoughte that yf he were chosen kyng that he shold abyde there and reteyne the peple of his countrey. And yf he were not chosen he shold sone retorne in to his countrey fro whens he cam, and that desyred they moche. Therfore men wene that they were forsworn wyllyngly, and sayde vpon hym somme euyl tatches of whiche he had no blame. Neuertheles he had neuer intencion to retourn to his londe, as it appered after; ffor euer after he abode in the seruyse of our lord whiche he had enterprysed. ¶ Whan the barons herde all the tetches, after many wordes they acorded al vpon Godeffroy of Boloyne, & named hym to be kyng, and was lad with alle the peple with grete ioye vnto

the chirche of the holy sepulcre, and presented to oure lorde. Euery man was glad, grete and smal, ffor he was the man that had the hertes of alle the comyn peple.

How the duc Godeffroy, after his election, requyred therle of Tholouse that he shold delyuer to hym the tour Dauid, capitulo Clxxxxiij

IN this maner was the duc Godeffroy chosen to be kyng and lord of the holy cyte of Iherusalem. ¶ Therle of Tholouse helde the grettest fortresse of the toun, which was called the tour Dauyd; the Turkes had delyueryd it to hym lyke as ye haue herd to fore. It is sette in the hyest parte of the cyte toward the weste, strongly walled with square stones, and ther on men may see ouer al the cyte entierly. ¶ Whan the duc sawe this tour was not in his power, it semed to hym that he had not the seygnorye, whan the grettest fortresse of alle the countre was not in his possession. Therfor he demaunded therle of Tholouse in the presence of the barons, and prayd hym debonayrly that he wold delyuer it to hym. Therle answerd that he had conquerd it, and thenemyes of oure lord had yolden it to hym, and therfor he helde it, but he had concluded to goo in to his countre at Ester, and thenne he wold delyuer it with a good wylle, but in the mene whyle he wold kepe it. This requyred he for to be more honoured, and in the gretter surete. ¶ The duc ansuerd playnly, that yf

he had not the toure he wold leue all; ffor how myght he be lord of the countre whan another had gretter power and gretter strengthe in his londe than he? Thus were they in debate.

THE duc of Normandye and therle of flaundres helde with the duc Godeffroy. Of the other barons ther were that counseylled that he shold doo his wil with therle of Tholouse. They of therles countre attysed and counseylled hym that he shold not leve the tour, by cause they wolde gyue hym occasion by this discorde to retorne in to his countre. ¶ Atte laste they acorded that the fortresse shold be put in the hande of the bysshop of Albare vnto the tyme that they were acorded what shold be doo therin. Whan he had it, within a short tyme after, he delyuerd it to the duc ¶ It was demaunded hym why he had so delyuerd it? Thenne he answerd that it was taken fro hym by force. It was not knowen for trouthe whether it was taken from hym by constraynte, or yf he delyuerd it with his gree and wyll. ¶ Whan therle of Tholouse sawe this, he was moche angry, and hym semed that the barons had not wel conteyned them selves to hym ward lyke as they ought to do, consyderyng that by the way he had don to them many grete bountees and good seruyses, whiche they remembryd not, as it was sayd. for desdayne herof, and by atysement that his knyghtes made to hym, he enterprysed to retourne in to his countre, & descended vnto the fflome Jordan, and there bayned hym. After he ordeyned his affayre for to departe out of the londe.

Of a Patriark chosen and elect in Iherusalem, and how there was founden a part of the very crosse, capitulo Clxxxxiiij

THIS euyl man of whom I haue spoken to fore, the bisshop of Maturane, was ful of grete malyce and of desloyalte, & payned hym moche in alle maners to sette discorde bytwene the barons and the people. for they sayde that the barons wold not suffre that a patriark shold be chosen by cause they helde the rentes of the chirche, and wold not delyuer them. He fonde moche peple that byleuyd hym and acorded to hym, in suche wyse that by thayde of them, ayenst the wylle of other, and also by thayde of the duc of Normandye, to whom he was moche pryue and had be at his table in all this werk, he chose for patriark this Arnold that was his felaw in alle euyl condicions, and by force they sette hym in the seate of the patriarche in the chirche of the sepulcre. This was ayenst reason and ayenst alle right, therfore it happed ne fyll not wel to hym ne to that other.

THENNE it happed that a parte of the very crosse was founden in therthe by the chirche of the sepulcre in a secrete place. for the cristen men that were in the toun to fore it was taken, in so grete meschief as ye haue herd, doubted that the Turkes wold haue taken it fro them.

Therfore had they hyd it moche surely, and fewe knewe of it. But a good man, a Suryen, whiche that knewe it, discouerid it to the barons. And whan they had doluen & dygged a good whyle, they fonde it in a cheste of syluer, lyke as he had to them sayd and deuysed. Thenne was the ioye moche grete, and they bare it a procession in syngyng vnto the temple. All the peple went after, which wepte for pyte, as moch as if they had seen our sauyour Ihesu Criste yet hangyng on the crosse. They alle helde them for moche recomforted of this grete tresour that our lord had thus discoueryd.

How the duc Godeffroy payned hym to amende the royamme, of his good constitucions & estatutes, capitulo Clxxxxv

GRETE ioye was it thurgh the londe of this, that the valyaunt duc Godefroy was chosen kyng. Alle they obeyed hym with good herte. He amended dylygently alle the discordes thurghe the londe, & alle the other thynges that had nede of amendement, in suche wyse that his power grewe fro day to day moche appertely. Of hym shal I saye in shorte wordes the very trouth: he regned not but one yere, and that was moche grete dommage, ffor he had the wylle, wytte, and power to doo grete goode in the royamme, for ten feble thenemyes of oure lord Ihesu Crist, & for ten haunce and exalte the cristen fayth. But our lord called hym fro this world to hym, to thende that the malyce of it shold not chaunge his

herte in thonour wherin he was. ¶ He was born in the royamme of fraunce at Boloyne vpon the see, which was somtyme a cyte, and nowe it is but lytil more than a castel. He cam of hye and noble folke & good crysten peple. His fader was named Eustace, noble & puyssaunt erle in that countre, whiche had doon many hye werkes and bountees vnto our lord and noble werkes vnto the world. His moder was a noble lady of gentilesse, more noble of herte than of hyenes of lygnage. She was named Yde, & was suster to the duc of Loreyne, whiche was named Godeffroy Bouce. He deyde withoute heyer, therfor he lefte alle the duchye and the countreye to his neuewe whiche bare his name, & adopted hym in to sone and heyr. ¶ Therfore he was duc of Loreyne whan his vncle was deed.

He had three bretheren, whyche were moche wise men and good knyghtes, and also moche faythful and trewe. ¶ That one was Bawdwyn, therle of Rages, whiche after hym was kyng of Iherusalem. The second was named Eustace, whiche bare the name of his fader, and was erle of Boloyne. The kynge Stephen of Englond toke his doughter to wyfe, whyche was named Maulde. The barons of Surye sente for this Eustace for to make hym kyng after the deth of his broder Bawdwyn, whiche deyde withoute heyer, but he wold not goo, ffor he doubted the barats & discordes of the londe whiche he knewe wel. The fourth broder was William, a good knyght and a trewe, ne he discorded not in the bounte of his

bretheren. Bawdwyn and Eustace folowed theyr lord and broder in the pylgremage to Iherusalem. The fourth broder Guylliam abode in his countre for to kepe the londe. Alle the four bretheren were of moche grete valeur, but the duc Godeffroye, lyke he was the oldest, so bare he awaye the prys and auantage of the other, as he that was ful of vertues, of bountes, and was moche noble and rightful withoute couetyse. He dredde and louyd oure lorde aboue alle thynge; he honoured relygyouse men & good; he was moche ferme and constant of his worde; he despysed merueyllously bobaunces, pompes, and dishonestees, & hated them; he was in almesse large and plentyuous. Gladly he herd the seruyse of our lord, & moche wel vnderstonde it, and in his prayers & orysons prayeng our lord he was right longe, and fylle ofte in wepyng haboundantly teeris, & vnto alle men he was pytous and amyable. By this it semed wel that oure lord louyd hym, wherof he was worthy to haue the grace of the world, and so he had certaynly. He was grete of body, not of the grettest, but of mene gretnesse, more stronge than an other man, his armes grete and wel quartred, the breste moche brode & large, and vysage wel made and coloured, heeris abroune, and in his harnoys and armes wel enducte & acustomed, that it semed that hit greued ne coste hym nothyng to bere them.

Of the sayeng of the countesse of Boloyne, moder of the sayd duc, that she sayde of her thre oldest sones was verified, capitulo Clxxxxvj

ONE thyng is sayd for trouth, and it happed in the tyme of the yongthe of thyse four bretheren, whiche ought not to be lefte vnremembryd ne forgoten. The moder of thyse four bretheren of whom I haue spoken, was an holy woman and entendable to good werkes. It was nothynge merueylle though oure lord spak by her mouth a prophecye; ffor it happed on a daye that her thre oldest sones, whiche were yong and smale, pleyde eche with other, and as they chaced eche other in theyr playe, alle thre fledde vnto theyr moder where she satte, & hydde them vnder her mantel. Theyr fader Eustace cam ther where the lady was, and he sawe her mantel meue, where the childeren playde vnder it. He demaunded the lady what it was. She answerd that she had thre grete prynces. The fyrste of theym shold be a duc; the second sholde be a kyng; and the thyrde an erle. for Godeffroye was duc of Loreyne after his vncle, & had also after the royamme of Iherusalem, but he was neuer crowned, ne wold not be callyd kynge. The second was Bawdwyn, whiche had after hym the sayd royamme, and was crowned. The thyrde was Eustace, which after the deth of his fader was erle of Boloygne. Now late vs retorne for to speke of the valyaunt duc Godeffroy; for moche honour may be sayd of hym, and also of the valyaunces don by hym.

Of the wagyng of a batayll that was bytwene the duc Godefroy and an hye baron of Almayne, capitulo Clxxxxvij

AMONG all other hye feetes that he dyde, I shal recounte to you one withoute lesynge. Hit was so certaynly that one of the hyest barons of Allemayne, a grete and strong knyght, valyaunt & noble, siewed the duc Godeffroy, whiche was his cosyn, in plee in the court of themperour of Almayne, to whom they were men both two. This man demaunded of duc Godefroy grete parte of his londe that he helde in the duchye of Loreyne, and this baron sayd that it was his right, and apperteyned to hym. So longe wente the plee forth by dayes and respytes, that they of the court iuged that it shold be determyned by wagynge of the batayll, and named to them a day to fyght for it. At the day named they cam in to the felde armed & aparaylled of that they ought to haue. Thenne bisshops and good men laboured moche, and other barons that were there payned them moche, for to seke moyen & manere how the pees myght be made, and shewde to them how they were of one blood and lynage, & that they ought to departe them tenterpryse thynge, of whiche muste nedes falle to one of them shame and dishonour. They payned them moche, one and other, but in no manere coude they fynde the peas to be made bytwene them.

THENNE began the bataylle bytwene thyse two barons moche fiers and sharp, ffor they were bothe good and strong knyghtes: they smote to gydre right vygorously. This bataylle endured so long that the valyaunt duc Godeffroy smote that other so grete a strook with his swerde that it flewe in pyeces, in suche wyse that there abode nomore in his hande therof but half a foote longe aboue the crosse of the swerde. The barons that behelde the felde, sawe how the duc had broke his swerde & had the werse, and were moche sory and wroth therof, & cam to themperour, and they prayd hym swetely that he wold suffre that they myght comene of the peas bytwene them. He graunted it gladly. The frendes spak to gydre and acorded vnto a peas, whiche was ynowgh resonable, but they lefte somwhat of the dukes right. Whan they brought this acorde and pees to them, the duc in no wyse wold here herof, but began the bataylle more cruel and fiers than it was to fore. That other that had his swerd hool, doubted ne fered not moche the strokes of the duc, whiche had but a tronchon, but ranne vpon the duc and oppressid hym that he had no leyzer to reste hym, til the duc began to thynke and to take herte. Thenne he dressyd hym on his steroppes, & smote his aduersarye with the pommelle of his swerde that he helde, vpon the lyfte temple, suche a strook thurgh the helme that he fyl doun astonyed, that it semed that he was deed, ffor he remeuyd no foote ne hande. Thenne the noble duc a-lyght doun and

descended fro his hors, and threwe a way his tronchon of his swerde, and toke the swerde fro hym that he had beten doun, & mounted vpon his hors agayn. Thenne called he the barons that had made and brought to hym to fore the peas, and sayd to them: Ye, lordes, suche maner of peas as ye offred to me right now is now to me agreable, & am redy nowe to take & abide, ffor though I haue the dommage and losse, atte leste I haue no shame ne dishonour. And it plesyth me wel to gyue and departe of my right, to thende that I slee not this whiche is my cosyn. Whan the barouns herd this, alle they began to wepe. The peas was made suche as he sayde. He had more honoure and loos for the pees to whiche he adressyd hym so swetly, than of alle the prowesses that he had in this bataylle, in whiche he dyde many.

Of a fayr feat of armes that the duc dyde in a bataylle that the emperour of Almayne had ayenst them of Saxone, capitulo Clxxxxviij

ANother feat of prowesse I shal recounte to you, lyke as it happed without lesynge. The peple of Saxone, whyche ben the moost felle and moost cruel of alle them of Almayne, had desdayne and despyte tobey to the emperour, and sayde that they wolde doo nothynge for the emperour Henry. But sayde that they wold haue a lord vpon them self, whiche shold obeye to none other. And made an

hye noble man of the countre, whiche was emonge them, an erle named Raoul, for to be kynge vpon them, by whom they wold be iustised and gouerned ¶ Whan themperour herd this he was moche wroth and desired moche to be auenged of so grete oultrage. Therfor sente he for alle the barons of thempyre, and assembled moche grete court, and made to be sayd and shewde in the presence of them alle the pryde and rebellyon of them of Saxone, wherof he demaunded debonayrly counseyl & theyr helpe. ¶ They acorded alle that this thynge was for to be auenged asprely. They habandouned bodye and power to themperour for thamendynge of this trespaas. They departed, & eche wente in to his countre. Themperour somoned his hooste as strongly as he myght at a castel on the marche of Saxone.

THAN they were entred in to the londe, theyr enemyes sayde that they wolde fyghte ayenst them, ffor they were prowd and fiers, in suche wyse that they sette but lytil by the power of themperour. Whan they knewe that they must fyght, they ordeyned theyr bataylles, ffor they had moche peple, so they made ynowe. ¶ Thenne demaunded themperour, of whom they were acorded that shold bere thaygle, which is the gonfanon of thempyre ¶ They choos to fore alle other for to doo that, the valyaunt duc of Loreyne, worthy & moost sufficiant to do it. They reputed it for a moche grete worship that he was thus chosen by comyn acord of them alle. Neuertheles, he withsayde it and refused as moche as he myght; but he

muste nedes take it on hym. This daye cam, and that one partye approuched that other in suche wyse that they assembled fiersly. Ther were many men put to deth, for they were merueillously wroth eche ayenst other.

WHYLES thus as the bataylle was grete and fyers in many places, the duc Godeffroye, that conduyted the bataylle of themperoure, espyed a grete rowte of men, wherin was this Raoul whiche was lorde of Saxone. Ayenst them the duc dyde do assemble the peple of themperour. The duc knewe this Raoul, and smote the hors with his spores ayenst hym. And with the gonfanon that he bare, iusted ayenst hym in suche wyse that he bare hym thurgh the bodye and slewe hym, that he fylle doun deed in the place. And incontinent he redressyd & reysed on heyghte his baner alle blody. His people sawe that they had lost theyr lord, & anon were disconfyted. Somme fledde, & somme fylle doun vnto the feet of themperour, and put them in his mercy. Alle the gentilmen and other gaf goode hostages for tobeye euer after to hym, and be at his comaundement.

MANY other prowesses made the valyaunt duc Godeffroye, but it behoueth not to put them alle in this historye, ffor my purpose now is for to recounte of the holy londe by yonde the see, & not of them on this syde, but of them of whom ye may vnderstande that he was in his countre noble and a valyaunt knyght.

Of his largesse ayenst oure lord I shal saye to you one thyng, by whiche ye maye vnderstande the other. In the duchye of Loreyne was a castel, whiche was moost renommed and chyef of thonour of Buyllon, and bare that name ❧ Whan he shold meue to goo in his pylgremage by yonde the see, he gaf this castel as the mooste noble and hyest of his herytage vnto oure lorde, in almesse, in to the chirche of Lyege, for to abyde there for euermore.

How the valyaunt duc Godeffroye augmented the holy chirche, and how he wold neuer bere crowne, capitulo Clxxxxix ❧

WITH that he had thus by election the royamme, like as a deuoute & a relygyous man as he was, he louid moch holy chirch and the seruise of our lord. By conseyl of the bisshops and of other wise clerkes that were in thoost, he ordeyned fyrst in the chirche of the sepulcre of our lord, and in the temple, clerkes for to serue, and establysshed chanonnes, and gaf to them grete rentes and large herytages, of which they shold take theyr prebendes. ❧ And he wold that the chirches in thoo partyes there shold be ordeyned after the establementis, vses, & customes of the grete chirches of fraunce. He began moche hyly, and wel had accomplysshed yf our lord had gyuen to hym lenger lyf. ❧ He had brought with hym oute of his countre relygyous monkes, whiche sayde & songe theyr howres and

seruyse alle a longe the waye as he cam. He gaf to them an abbaye in the vale of Iosaphat, and establysshed them there, & endowed them there moche rychely with good rentes and reuenues, & gaf to them grete pryueleges. He was a very relygyous & deuoute man, and had his herte moche large vnto holy chirche, and gaf therto many grete thynges.

THAN he was choosen to be kynge, alle the barons requyred hym that he wold do hym be crowned, & receyue thonour of the royamme as hyly as the other kynges in cristendom doo. He answerde that in this holy cyte, where our sauyour Ihesu Criste suffred deth, and had born a crowne of thornes vpon his heed for hym and for the synners, he wold neuer bere, yf it playsyd god, crowne of gold ne of precious stones, but hym semed that it was ynowe of that coronacion that he had the daye of his passion for to honoure alle the kynges cristen that shold be after hym in Iherusalem. For this cause that he refused the crowne, ther ben somme men that wyll not accompte hym emong the kynges of Iherusalem, but me thynketh that therfore he ought not to be lassed ne dymynued of his honoure, but the more and hyer exalted & enhaunced. For he dyde not this for despysyng of the sacrament of holy chirche, but he dyde it for teschewe the bobaunce & pryde of the world, and for the grete mekenes & humylyte that he had in his herte. Wherfore thenne I saye not only that he was kynge, but he was greter than ony kynge that holdeth ony royamme syth that the holy londe of Iherusalem was conquerd.

How the Turkes of Arabe and of Egypte made theyr somaunce for to come in to Surye tassaylle our cristen men, capitulo CC

NEWLY whan the cyte was taken, yet er that the barons were departed, cam tydynges in to the toun of Iherusalem, & trew they were, that the calyphe of Egypte, which was the mooste puyssaunt and myghtyest of alle the londe of thoryent, had somoned alle his power, knyghtes, gentilmen, and alle other that myghte bere armes, in suche wyse that he had assembled a grete hooste merueyllously. for he had grete desdayne and despyte of this that so lytil peple, whiche were of a straunge londe and ferre countrey, were so hardy and durst come in to this londe and royamme, and had taken the cyte whiche he had conquerd vpon his enemyes. He made come to fore hym his conestable, whiche was prynce of his hoost: he was named Elafdales. To this man he commaunded that he shold take all this peple with hym & goo in to Surye, and renne vygorously vpon this peple, that were so folyssh and oultrageous, that had torned his peas & made warre to his peple. Therfor he commaunded hym that he shold efface & destroye them alle, in suche wyse that neuer worde be spoken of them. This Elafdales was of Ermenye born, and was called Eimirieux by another name. Of the cristen men he was comen, but for the rychesses that was gyuen

hym, & for the lecherye that he fonde emonge the mescreauntes, he renyed our lord and cristen fayth for to become Sarasyn.

THIS same man had conquerd the cyte of Iherusalem vpon the Turkes, and sette it in the puyssaunce of his lord the same yere that the cristen men had besieged it, & had not yet holden it xj monethis whan thoost of the pylgryms toke it vpon them, & rendred it to cristiente. Hit was a thynge that it moche displaysyd his conestable that his lord had hold it so short a whyle, and enioyed nomore his conqueste; ffor this cause he enterprysed in hym this werke, and for to renne vpon oure peple. And hym thought it but a little thynge & a light for to doo, consyderyng the grete plente of peple that he had, for to disconfyte them that had taken the cyte. He cam in to Surye, and brought with hym alle the power of Egypte. He had grete pryde in his herte by cause of the grete people that he had, and was moche angry toward our men. But our lord, that can sette wel counseyl in alle the purpoos of men, ordeyned this werke all in another maner than he deuysed He cam with alle his men to fore the cyte of Escalone. There they lodged them, and pourprised grete space of ground. With them were ioyned alle the dukes of Damaske, & they of Arabe that were in thoo partyes, moche grete peple. Trouthe it is that to fore er oure peple entred in to the londe, they of Egypte & the Turkes of Arabe louyd not to gydre, but doubted moch each thencreacyng of

the one and other. But after, they accompanyed them to gydre to come vppon oure men, more for hate of oure peple, than for loue that they had emonge them self. They were alle to gydre to fore Escalone, and they there concluded to come after to fore Iherusalem for tassiege the toun, ffor they supposed veryly, that oure barons durste in no wyse yssue out ayenst them in bataylle.

How our cristen men, whan they knewe thyse tydynges, cryed to God for mercy and for to haue the vyctorye, capitulo CCj

WHAN thise tidynges were spradd thurgh the cyte of Iherusalem, alle the peple were gretely affrayed, grete and smale. By comyne accorde of the bisshoppes they cam wullen and barfote in the chirche of our lord. There were alle the peple, and cryed mercy to oure lorde with syghes and teeris. and besought Ihesu Criste moche swetly that his peple, whiche he had kept and deffended vnto that day, he wold delyuer fro this peryll, ne suffre that the cyte & holy places that they late had rendred and yeuen to his name and to his seruyse, and that he wold not that they shold be remysed agayn and habandouned in ordure and fylthe, & in the desloyalte of the hethen men. fro thens they wente a procession, singing. with moche grete pyte, vnto the temple of oure lord. There dyde the bisshops & the clerkes the seruyse, and the laye peple prayde with moche good herte

and pytous. Whan this was don, the bisshops gaf to them the benediction, and after they departed. The duc ordeyned barons and knyghtes that shold kepe the cyte.

AFTER this he yssued out, and therle of flaundres, & cam in to the playnes of Rames. The other barons abode in Iherusalem. The cytezeyns of Napples had sente to fetche Eustace, broder of the duc, & Tancre, for to come theder to them and they wold yelde to them the cyte. They were goon by the commaundement of the duc, and garnysshed moche wel the toun with peple and vytaylle, of which the countre was moche fertile. Therfor they abode there, and knewe nothynge of thyse tydynges, but the duc sente for them, & they cam hastely, & were with the other barons. Whan the duc and the erle of flaundres arryued atte cyte of Rames, they knewe wel the trouthe certaynly that this admiral was lodged to fore Escalone with so grete peple that the countre was couerd. Thenne sente they hastely messagers in to Iherusalem vnto the other barons, whiche abode and awayted the certaynte of this thynge. And he bade them hastely to come alle, sauf suche as shold kepe the cyte, and shold brynge alle the peple moche hastely, as for to fyghte ayenst grete plente of theyr enemyes.

How our men assembled and ordeyned theyr bataylles for to fyghte ayenst the Turkes, and how the Turkes were disconfyted, capitulo CCij



HERLE of Tholouse and the other barons that were with hym knewe the certaynte how theyr enemyes cam vpon them with so grete power, therfor they gadred to gydre alle theyr men that were in Iherusalem, and yssued out & come to them moch dilygently in to the playnes, where the duc was, atte a place named now Ybelyn. Whan they were all assembled, they nombred theyr peple and fonde xij C horsmen, and of footemen ix M. Whan thoost of our men had been there one day or therabout, after euensonge, whan it began to wexe derk, they espyed afer a greet prees that cam takyng vp the countrey, and couerd grete partes of the playnes. Oure men had supposed certaynly that it had be thoost of the Sarasyns, and merueylled moche how they cam ayenst them at that hour. Thenne they sente oute ij C horsmen, armed lightly and wel horsed, for to see more nygh what peple they were that cam, and how many more were of them. They roode forth a good paas, and whan they approached them, they knewe that it were oxen, kyen, and mares. Ther were so many of them, that them semed if there were no moo in alle that contre, that it myght suffyse for alle the peple ther about. With thyse beestes were comen men on horsbak, whiche kepte them from theuys, & commaunded to the herdmen what they shold doo.

THEY that were sente forth by the barons retorned & sayde that ther was none other but beestes. Thenne alle oure men ran theder. The kepars of them fledde that myght. Somme ther were that were taken, whiche tolde the trouthe of the Turkes, in such wyse that it was wel knowen, that this grete hooste of Sarasyns were lodged but vij myle fro them, and that theyr purpoos was to come on them and to slee them alle. Our barons were thenne certayn of the bataylle, and deuysed emonge them ix bataylles, & commaunded that thre shold goo to fore on that one syde, for the playnes were greet, & thre shold go in the mydle, and thre shold come behynde. Of the Sarasyns myght noman knowe the nombre, ffor ther was so grete plente that euery daye they encreased and grewe of the contre about, whiche ranne to them in suche wyse that it was not for to be estemed. Whan our men had goten this grete gayne that I spak of, that is to saye of alle the beestes, they had grete ioye and ioyously restyd them that nyght; but they that had the charge made good watche upon thooste.

ON the morn whan the sonne was rysen, the duc dyde do crye that euery man shold arme hym and goo to his bataylle, & after wente forth a soft paas right theder where they thought to fynde theyr enemyes. They had stedfaste hope in our lord, to whom is a lyght thynge to make that the lasse in nombre vaynquysshe the more and gretter. They of Egypte, and the other

mescreauntes that were with them, cam in moche grete desraye vnto the place that they sawe our peple alle in the playne. Whan they sawe and knewe that our men had noo talente to withdrawe them ne eschewe them, but cam for to seche them, they began moche to doubte. Whan they sawe that our men had taken and pourprised so grete a place on the playns, wel supposed they that they had ben moche more people and in greter nombre. But the trouthe was suche as I haue sayd. Our men were but fewe on horsbak & a foote. The grete companye of beestes, as I haue sayd, were with them; whan they drewe forth on, the beestes wente with them. The Turkes wende that they had ben alle men armed and had ouer grete fere and drede.

THE grettest men and they that men supposed shold best haue born the fayte of the bataylle, they began to withdrawe them lytil and lytil and lefte theyr bataylles the one after the other and fledde alle pryuely. Whan the lasse knyghtes of the Turkmans apperceyued this, they neuer toke hope on them, but torned their horses and smote with their spores, & fledde euery man where he supposed best to saue hym. On this daye was he loste, that had sette al his herte for to sowe & pourchasse discordes ouer al where he was byleuyd; noman wote wher he becam. This was the bisshop of Maturane. Somme men sayde that the duc had sente hym for to fetche the barons that were lefte in the cyte, & whan he retorned Sarasins shold haue take hym and slayn hym, or brought hym in

pryson. What sommeuer cam of hym it was no grete harme, so that he was effaced out of this holy company. Whan oure barons sawe that our lord had foghten for them, and that he had put in the hertes of the Turkes so grete fere and drede, that they were fled without smytynge of stroke, they had grete ioye and rendred graces and thankynges to oure lorde deuoutly. They had counseyl that they shold not folowe them withoute araye thurgh the feldes, ffor they were ouer grete nombre of peple vnto the regarde of them, and yf they happed to relye and gadre to gydre agayn, they myght perauenture put oure men to the werse.

URE men roode alle in ordenaunce vnto the tentes of the hethen men, ffor they that fledde loked neuer behynde them. There founde oure men so grete plente of gold, of syluer, of robes, of iewellys, and of vessell, that the leest of them had ynowgh. Thus gadred they alle that they fonde there, and retorned and wente agayn to Iherusalem, euery man laden and charged with despoylles, thankyng and preysing our lord, by whom was comen to them this vyctorye, honour, & gayne. Thenne made they within the cyte moche ioye and grete, as doon the vaynquers and conquerours whan they departe theyr gayne.

How somme of our barons wolde retorne home after they had doon theyre pylgremage, capitulo CCiij

IN thys maner theye conteyned them in the cyte of Iherusalem ¶ The two valyaunt men that had ben long tyme in the seruyse of our lord, and had perfourmed theyr pylgremage, that is to wyte the duc of Normandye, & therle of flaundres, they toke leue of the other barons and toke theyr waye for to retorne in to theyr countrey. They cam by shippe to Constantinople. Themperour Alexys whiche had seen them to fore, receuyed them with moche fayr chiere, and gaf to them moche fayre yeftes at theyr departyng. Afte they cam in to theyr countre hool and ioyous ¶ That one of them, that was the duc of Normandye, founde the thynge alle chaunged otherwyse in his countre than he lefte it; ffor whyles he was in mayntenyng this holy pylgremage, lyke as ye haue herd, his oldest broder deyde without heyer of his body, Wylliam Rous, whiche was kyng of Englond by right. And after the customes of the countre the royamme was fallen to this duc of Normandye; but his broder whiche was yonger, named Henry, cam to the barons of the countrey and made them to vnderstande that the duc his broder was kyng of Iherusalem, & had no talente, ne purposed neuer to retorne on this syde the montaynes. By this lesynge they made hym kynge of Englond, & they

becam his men. ¶ Whan his broder retorned fro the holy londe, he demaunded of hym his herytage entierly, and he wold not delyuer it to hym.

THE duc made redy a grete nauye, and gadryd as moche peple as he myght in Normandye and other places, and passed the see; he arryued in Englond with grete force. His broder that was kynge cam ayenst hym with alle the power of the lande. The bateylles were alredy for tassemble; but the noble & wysemen sawe that it shold be ouer grete hurt and damage yf thyse two bretheren shold fyght thus. Therfor they spak of pees, & made it in this manere, that the sayd Henry shold holde the royamme, but he sholde gyue euery yere to his brother a greet somme of good, of whiche he made hym sure. And thus retorned the duc agayn, & cam in to his londe. After it happed that the kyng, whiche had somme castellys in Normandye to fore that he had the royamme of Englond, them wolde he kepe as his herytage. The duc demaunded them, and he wold not delyuere them. Thenne the duc assieged them, and toke them by force. ¶ Whan the kyng herd this, he was moche angry. He assembled grete peple & passed ouer into Normandye. His brother cam ayenst hym, and they fought to gydre at Tynchebray. Ther was the duc disconfyted & taken; his broder put hym in pryson, wherin he deyde. ¶ Thenne had this Henry alle to gydre the royamme of Englond and duchye of Normandye.

THERLE of Thoulouse cam vnto the Lyche in Surye. There lefte he his wyf the countesse, and wente vnto Constantynople, & shold hastely retorne. Themperour made to hym grete ioye and receyued hym moche wel, and gaf to hym grete yeftes. And after cam agayn to his wyf hoole and sauf, to his felawship in Surye, but it was two yere after, as ye shal here. ¶ The duc Godeffroy was in Iherusalem. Wel gouerned he the royamme whiche oure lord had gyuen to hym. He reteyned with hym the erle Garnyer of Grece, and other barons, suche as he myght haue. ¶ Tancre the valyaunt abode with hym, to whom the duc gaf for to holde in herytage the cyte of Tabarye, whiche stondeth on the laye of Genesar, and with that alle the pryncipalyte of Galylee, with the cyte whiche was woned to be named Porphire, and nowe named Cayphas, and alle thappertenaunces of thyse thynges. Tancre helde thyse londes so wel & so wysely, that he was alowed of god & honoured of the world. He founded chirches of this countrey moche rychely; he gaf to them grete rentes, and endowed them with aournementes fayr & of grete valure. Specially the chirche of Nazareth, of Tabarye, and that of mount Tabor, he lefte them in hye estate & in moche ryche poynt. But the barons that after hym haue be lordes of the countrey haue taken from them ynowgh of their tenours. This Tancre was wyse and trewe, and delyted hym to doo wel to the chirches, as it appereth after whan he was prynce of Anthyoche. for he enhaunced the chirche of seynt Peter, and the pryncipalyte

& seygnorye of Anthyoche made he moch tencrece and enlarged, as ye shal here.

How Buymont & Bawdwyn beyng certayn of the pryse and conqueste of Iherusalem wolde accomplysshe theyr pylgremage, capitulo CCiiij

WHYLES that the royamme of Iherusalem was in such estate, Buymont the prynce of Anthyoche, and Bawdwyn erle of Rages, broder of the duc Godeffroy, had herd certayn tydynges that the other barons that they helde as bretheren for the accompanye of theyr pylgremage, had by thayde and helpe of our lord Ihesu Criste conquerd vpon the Turkes and recouerd to oure fayth the holy cyte of Iherusalem, by whiche they had accomplysshyd theyr vowes & theyr pylgremages. Therfor they assembled on a day named for to goo to the holy sepulcre, to thende that they were assoylled of theyr vowes. And desired moche for to see the duc and the other barons, to whom they wold gyue ayde yf they had nede, that is to wete of their bodyes, of theyr goodes, and of theyr men that were vnder them. Thyse two hye men were not at the takynge of the holy cyte of Iherusalem, ffor by the wylle of the pylgryms that one of them abode in Anthyoche, and that other at Rages, for to kepe soygnously and defende the Turkes fro thyse two cytees whiche were holden in so hye esteme in cristiente.

CHE man had to doo ynowgh in his countrey, but they lefte alle for to come to the other. Buymont cam fyrst fro his cyte with a moche fayr company, grete nombre of men of armes on horsbak and a foote. He cam vnto a cyte vpon the see, named Valerne, on the castel of Margat, there he lodged hym maulgre them of the cyte. Bawdwyn cam fro his countrey sone after & so moche iourneied after, that he ouertoke the prynce Buymont to fore this cyte, and there they assembled. In that same tyme were arryued pylgryms of Ytalye at the Lyche in Surye. Emong them was a good man wyse and wel lettred, relygyous and of grete honneste, named Daybart, archebisshop of Pyse. Another was in his company, archebisshop of Puylle, of a cyte named Arriene. Thyse men with theyr meyne cam in the companye of thyse two barons for to passe more surely vnto the cyte of Iherusalem. Of them was moche encreced thoost of thyse two prynces, in suche wyse that they were wel xxv M on horsbak and a foote.

THUS thenne helde they theyr waye by suche manere, that they fonde no cyte but of theyr enemyes, wherfore they passed with moch grete payne. They suffred moche in theyr way for lack of vytaylles, ffor they fonde none for to bye, & suche as they brought fro theyr countrey was faylled. They had grete cold and so grete rayne that nothyng myght endure, it was so merueyllous. It was in the monethe of December

whiche is moche rayny customably in that countrey. for this cause many deyed of mesease in that companye, ffor in alle this longe way, they myght fynde none that wold selle to them ony vytaylle, sauf they of Tryple, and they of Cesaire. They had grete scarcete of vytaylles for theyr horses.

ATTE laste by the mercy of our lord they cam to Iherusalem. There were they receyued with moch grete ioye, of god, of the barons, of the clergye, and of alle the peple. They vysyted the holy places of the cyte in teeris & grete sorowes of herte. They fylle doun flat and stratched in the chirches, they kyssed & ete therthe that our lord had walked vpon: after they cam in to theyr hostellys, where alle they of the toun made to them grete ioye. Whan the hye feste of the natyuyte of our lord Ihesu Criste approuched, alle the prelates and barons yssued out of Iherusalem and wente to Bethlehem. There helde they theyr Cristemas. There behelde they gladly and moche ententyfly the holy crybbe, wherin the sauyour of the world laye bytwene the beestes. Deuoutly made they theyr prayers and orysons in the place, whiche is as a lytil dyche, where the swete lady that was moder and vyrgyne, after that she had chylded, wrapped her sone with lytil and smale clothys, and gaf hym souke of the mylke of her pappes.

Howe our cristen men chosen a very patriarke in Iherusalem and assigned to hym rentes, capitulo CCv

AN to this tyme had the see of Iherusalem ben without pastour and patriark that duely & truly had entred. It was wel thenne v monethes that the cyte was conquerd. Thenne assembled the barons for to counseylle to haue suche a man that were worthy of honour & myght to bere the faytes. Ther were wordes ynowgh. The somme wold haue one, and other wolde haue another. Atte laste by the counseyl and good wyll of alle they chees thys Daybart, archbisshop of Pyse, whiche was but newly come. They constituted and sette hym in the siege of patriark, ffor he that had be made by this baratour Arnold, of whom I haue spoken to fore, lyke as he was made ayenst right & reson, in lyke wyse he retorned agayn to nought.

THAN this good, wise man was sette in his dignyte the duc Godeffroy and the prynce Buymont cam to fore hym, whiche had gyuen to hym this honour as for to be the vycayre of Ihesu Criste in that londe, and thanked and preysed alle to gydre oure lord. Whan this was don they assygned rentes to the newe patriark, suche as his predecessour, whiche was a Greeke, had holden, and other gretter aboue that, in suche wyse that he myght honorably mayntene

a good and honest company of people. Thenne Bawdwyn and Buymont toke leue of the duc and of the other barons, and descended vnto flom Iordan, and there bayned them. fro thens they wente by the ryuer syde til they cam to Tabarye, thenne passed by the londe named fenyce, and lefte Cesayre on the right syde. After they cam to the cyte named Maubec. After helde they the see syde and so moche exployted that they cam al hool & sound to Anthyoche.

How by thatysement of somme men a grete debate sourded bytwene the duc and the patriarke of Iherusalem, capitulo CCvj

THE customme of somme men is suche that they may not suffre the peas emong the peple, where they may sette discorde. By thatysement of suche maner folke sourded a debate bytwene the duc and the patriarke, ffor the patriarke demaunded of hym the chyef tour of the toun, whiche is named the toure Dauyd, and the holye cite of Iherusalem. Aboue that he wold haue the cyte of Iaphe and alle thappertenauntes, ffor he sayde that they were the droytes and rightes of his chirche of the sepulcre. Whan this debate had a whyle endured bytwene them, the duc, whiche was humble and mesurable and moche doubted our lord, on Candlemas day, in the presence of all the clergy and all the peple, he gaf the iiij part of Iaphe moche debonayrly to the

patriarke and to his chirche to holde for euermore. After this whan it cam to the day of Ester, to fore all them that were assembled at this feste, he gaf in to the honde of the patriark, the fourth part of Iherusalem and the tour Dauyd with all the appertenauntes. Alway forseen by couenaunt that the duc shold holde thyse cytees and the londes aboute vnto the tyme that by the ayde of oure lord he had conquered vpon the Turkes two other cytees, by whiche the royamme myght be enlarged. And yf it happed that he deyed in the mene whyle without heyer, alle thyse thynges withoute contradiction shold come in to the honde of the patriarke, and to the chirche. The trouthe was suche as I haue sayd, but it is ouer grete merueylle ffor what reson this holy man, that was so wyse, demanded thus thyse cytees of this noble man, the duc, as I haue sayd. They that knewe the state of the londe, helde and reputed them self for lasse whan they vnderstode this werke and couetyse in the chirche, and merueylled therof, ffor the barons that had conquerd the cyte gaf it to the duc so frely, that they wold not that ony man lyuyng shold haue no right aboue hym, but that he shold holde it hym self entierly without making to ony other ony obeyssaunce.

Hier recounteth thystorye how the fourth parte of Iherusalem cam vnto the patriarke of the same, capitulo CCvij

EWAY it is certayn, that fro the tyme that the Latins entred in to the cyte, and yet of more auncyente, the patriarke of Iherusalem had the fourth part of the cyte of Iherusalem, & helde it as his owen. How this happed, and by what reson, I shal saye to you shortly, ffor the trouthe therof hath ben serched. It is founden by thauncyent historyes, that whyles this cyte was in the hondes of the hethen peple, it myght neuer haue peas that longe endured, but was ofte assieged of hethen prynces that were about it, ffor eche of them wold conquere it and put it in his seygnorye. Therfor they toke ofte the proyes, and mesdyde and trespaced to the cytezeyns of the toun. They brake the towres and walles moche oultrageously by theyr engyns, and for the oldenes of the walles the cyte was disclosed and open in many places. In this tyme the royamme of Egypte was more ryche and more puyssaunt of hauoyr and good and of wisedome than ony other of the royammes of Turkye, ffor the calyphe helde thenne Iherusalem and the londe therabout, and with his grete hoost that he sente theder he conquerd alle Surye vnto the Lyche, whiche is by Anthyoche. Thus had he encreced his empyre.

DE establysshyd his bayllyes in the cytees that stonde on the see syde, & in them also on the londe. Thenne commanded he that alle sholde paye hym trybute, and ordeyned & deuysed what he wold haue of euery cyte. After this he wold that the cytezeyns shold make agayn the wallis of euery cyte, & mayntene in good poynt the towres, and redresse alle aboute suche as neded. By the aduyse of his men, and after theyr establysshement, the bayllye of Iherusalem commaunded to them of the toun to repayre theyr walles and sette them entierly in poynt lyke as they to fore had ben. Thenne ordeyned he & deuysed how moch euery strete of the toun shold make. By grete cruelte and malyce he commaunded that the captyfs cristiens that were in the cyte shold make the fourth part of the walles. They were so pour and so greued of tayllages and excises, that vnnethe they had among them alle wherof to repayre two towrettys.

THEY sawe wel that he sought occasion for to destroye them alle. Therfor they assembled and cam moche humbly to fore the bayly, and fyl at his feet, & moch requyred in weping, that he wold comande them to doo thynge that they myght doo, ffor this that he had commaunded them to doo was ouermoche ouer theyr power. That inhumayn baylly, whiche was ful of cruelte and of pryde, louyd not the cristen men, and menaced them moche fiersly, and sware that yf they accomplisshyd not the commaundement of

this lord the calyphe, he wold do smyte of theyr heedes as traytours. Whan they herd this, they were moche aferd, and on that othersyde they sawe wel that they myght not bere the charge that he leyde on them. Therfor they dyde so moche atte laste by the prayer of somme Turkes, whiche had pyte on them, that the baylly gaf them respyte, til that they had sent to themperour of Constantynople, & to requyre hym for the loue of god that he wolde sende his almesse to performe this horrible werke, for to delyuer them fro the peryll of deth in whiche they were condempned yf it were not by them made.

Of the same mater, capitulo CCviij

THE messagers cam fro them to themperour in to Constantynople. They seyd to hym the trouth of their message, how they were in subiection, & what meseases, what fylthes the Turkes made them to suffre; and fynally they muste alle deye yf he socoured them not. All they that herde them began to wepe for compassion. Thenne was emperour a valyaunt man, wyse, and of grete corage named Constantyn, & surname Monamaques; he gouerned moche vygorously thempyre. Whan he herd the requeste of the poure cristen men he was meuyd with grete pyte in his herte, & sayd that he wold helpe them gladly, and shold gyue to them so largely of his good that the iiij part of the wallis which was commanded

them to make shold be accomplysshyd, but he promysed them wel that he shold doo nothyng but by couenaunt ❧ That is to wete that yf they myght pourchase of the lord of the londe, that within the partye of the cyte that shold be closed with his money, none shold dwelle but cristen men, on this condicion wold he doo it, and other wyse not.

IN this fourme he delyuerd to them his lettres patentes, and sente to his bayly of Cypre, that yf the cristen men of Iherusalem myght pourchace of the calyphe of Egypte this that ye haue herd, that of the rente that he ought to haue in that londe he shold lete make the fourth part of the wallys of this holy cyte ❧ The messagers, that had thus don theyr message, retorned vnto the patryarke and to them that had sente them, and recounted to them truly how they had don and sped ❧ They ansuerd that it shold be hard to be had, not withstandyng they muste essaye, ffor they myght passe in none other maner. They sente good messagers and trewe to this grete lord the calyphe of Egypte. Our lord helpe hym in such wyse that thei fonde in hym this that they sought; and shortly to saye, he delyuerd to them a good chartre sealid with his seal and confermed with his propre hand, that so closyng the iiij part, he graunted to them the fourth part of Iherusalem ❧ The messagers retorned. They that had sente them made to them grete ioye whan they knewe how they had achyeued their message. The bailyes of Cypre passed in to Surye, & they made the fourth

part of the walles with the goodes of themperour, lyke as he had commaunded. And this werke was made in the yere of thyncarnacion of oure lord M lxiij. Thenne was calyphe and kynge of Egypte, Bommensor, & this was xxxvj yere to fore the cyte was conquerd.

VNTO this tyme the cristen men were lodged in the toun emonge the Turkes comynly one by another, but fro thens forth that the calyphe had commaunded, the fourth part of the toun was delyuerd to them. Thenne were the cristen men moche eased, ffor whan they dwellyd emong the Turkes, they that were theyr neyghbours dyde to them grete ennoye and shames, but whan they were by them self, they dyde them not so moche. Yf they had ony debate emonge them self it was brought to fore the patriark, ffor fro thenne forth was in that part of the toun none other iustice but he; thus gouerned he it as his oune. His iiij part is bounded as I shall saye to you. fro the yate that the sonne goth doun, whiche is named the yate Dauid by the tour of the angle, otherwyse named the tour Tancre, the walles that they made within is bounded by the chyef way that goth fro that gate vnto the chaunge, & fro thens agayn vnto the west yate. In this space stondeth the mount of Caluarye where our sauyour Ihesu Criste was crucified, and the holy sepulcre where he laye deed in, and out wherof he aroos fro deth to lyf, the hows of the hospytal, two abbayes, one of monkes and another of nonnes, the hows of the patriarke, & the cloysture of the chanonnes of the sepulcre.

How the duc Godeffroy, for to augumente the cristiante, assieged one of the townes of the Turkes, capitulo CCix

IN this tyme, after that alle the barons that were come in pylgremage were departed fro the londe, and retorned in to theyr countrees, the valyaunt duc, to whom the royamme was delyuered, and Tancre whiche was abiden with hym, they were almost alone in tho partes; they were moche pour of good and of men. Vnnethe myght they make, whan they dyde alle theyr power, thre honderd men on horsbak, and two thousand a foote. The cytees that the pylgryms had conquerd were ferre asondre, and none myght come to other without grete peryll of theyr enemyes. The vyllages that were about the cytees, whiche were called casiaus, therin dwellid the Turkes that were theyr subgettis, & obeyed to the lordes of the cytees, but thise Turkes hated nomen more than they dyde the cristen men, & pourchaced incessantly alle the harme & euyl that they myght. Whan they fonde ony of our men allone oute of the way, gladly they murdred them, and somtyme they ledde to the cytees of the Sarasyns for to selle them. Yet thought they of gretter meschyef & folye; ffor they wold not ere ne laboure theyr londes, to thende that the lordes and men of the cytees shold not take theyr rentes, and desired them self lyuer to suffre mesease, rather than our peple shold haue ony good or auaylle.

THE cristen men were not well assured within the cytees, ffor they had but fewe people, and there cam theuys by nyght that robbed theyr houses, and slewe them in theyr beddes, and bare awaye alle theyr thynges. By this occasion many there were of the cristen men, that lefte theyr fayr tenementes and houses in the cytees, and retourned pryuely in to theyr countreyes; ffor they hadde grete dredde that the Turkes, whyche that dwellyd aboute them, shold assemble somme daye and take the townes by strengthe and destresse, and destroye them for euer in such wyse that neuer shold be memory of them. For hate of them that thus wente was establysshyd fyrst in that londe, that who that helde a yere longe in peas his tenement and his londe, he shold neuer after answere therof to ony other. By cause ther were many that for fere and for cowardice lefte alle theyr thynges and fled away; after whan the countrey was better assured, they cam agayn, and wold haue recouerd them, but by this lawe that was thus establysshyd they were neuer herd.

THYLES that the royamme was thus in grete pouerte, the valyaunt duc Godeffroy, which had moche grete courage and good hope in our lord, enlarged his royamme. He assembled as moche peple as he myght, & wente for tassiege a cyte nygh to Iaphe on the see syde, named Arsur. But he fonde it wel garnysshed of vytaylles, of men of armes, & other engyns, and

ther were therin Turkes many, hardy & defensable. The hoost of the cristen men that were withoute, were but fewe and suffretous by cause they had no shippes by whiche they myght defende the waye of the see, where they myght entre and yssue whan it plesyd them. for thise thynges the duc was constrayned to leue the siege, and departed thynkyng to come agayn to the same place, whan the tyme shold be more couenable, and that his men were better pourueyed of that wherof they had nede for to take the toun. And so had he don yf our lord had gyuen hym long lyf in this world.

How the Turkes brought presentes to the duc Godeffroy at the sayd siege & of theyr deuyses to gydre, capitulo CCx

It happed, in this siege of whiche I haue spoken, a thynge that ought not to be forgoten. for the montaynes of the londe of Samarye, in whiche is the londe of Napples, cam summe Turkes whiche were lordes of casiaus theraboute, and brought vnto the valyaunt duc Godeffroy presentes of brede, of wyn, of dates, and of other fruyte. It myght wel be that they cam more for tespye the beyng and contenaunce of our men than for other thynge. They prayde so moch the men of the duc that they were brought to fore hym. Thenne they presented to hym suche as they had brought. The noble duc, as he that was humble & without bobaunce, sat in his pauyl-

lon on the ground, & lened vnto a sak full of stuff. There abode he a part of his peple that he had sente in fourage.

THAN they that had made thyse presentes sawe the duc sytte so lowe, they merueylled them ouermoche, & began to demande of the peple that vnderstonde theyre langage, where fore it was so, that so hye a prynce of the weste, whiche had troubled alle thoryent, and had slayn so many men, and taken and conquerd so puyssaunt a royamme, conteyned hym so pourely, ne had not vnder hym tappytys ne clothes of sylk, ne habyte of a kynge on hym, ne had not aboute hym sergeantes or knyghtes holdyng naked swerdes or haches or axis danoys, by whiche alle they that sawe hym shold doubte and fere hym, but satte so lowe as he were a man of lytil affayre.

THE valiaunt duc demaunded of them that knewe & vnderstode theyr langage what they sayde. It was told and answerd of this whiche they merueylled. Thenne he sayd that it was no shame to a man mortel to sytte vpon therthe, ffor theder muste he retorne after his deth and lodge there in his body & become erthe. Whan they herd this answere, they that were comen for tespye and essaye what he was, began moche for to allowe and preyse his wytte and his humilyte. They departed fro thens, sayeng that he was shapen and lyke for to be lord of alle that londe, and to gouerne the peple, that was so withoute pryde, and knewe

pouerte & the fragilyte of his nature so wel. This word was spradd oueral by them that had herd hym. He was so moche dradde & doubted of his enemyes, that enquyred of his affayres, whiche founde not in hym but vygour, rayson and mesure, without ony pryde or oultrage.

How Buymont was taken in goyng to Meletene, whiche cyte the lord of the same wold yelde to hym, capitulo CCxj

IN the royamme of Iherusalem they conteyned them thus as ye haue herd. Thenne it happened that a ryche man of Ermenye named Gabryel was lord of the cyte of Meletene, which stondeth by yonde the ryuer of Eufrates in the londe of Mesopotayne. This Gabriel doubted moche that the Turkes of Perse shold come on hym, ffor the men that they helde ran ofte on hym, in suche wyse that he myght not wel suffre it. Therfore he toke counseyl, & sente messagers to Buymont, prynce of Anthyoche, that they shold saye to hym in his name, that he shold haste hym in to his londe, ffor he wold gyue ouer to hym his cyte by certayn couenauntes resonable ynough whiche he sente to hym. He louyd Buymont, & sayde that he had leuer that Buymont had his cyte by his agrement, than the Turkes sholde take it fro hym ayenst his wyll

WHAN Buymonte herde thyse tydynges, as he that was hardy hasted hym moche for to make hym redy, and toke with hym a good company, & wente forth on his way. He passed the ryuer of Eufrates and entred in to Mesopotayne, & was nyghe the cyte of Meletene, ffor whiche he wente for to receyue, whan a puyssaunt amyral of the Turkes named Donysmayn, that had certaynly the very knowleche of his comynge, and laye in a wayte for hym, and ranne vpon hym sodenly, and his men beyng alle out of arraye and dispourueyed, they that abode were alle slayn, ffor ther were ouer grete plente of Turkes. The other fledde. Buymont was taken and reteyned, and they ladde hym the handes bounden with cordes, and his feet chayned with yron.

Of this auenture mounted the Turke in grete pryde, and trusted moche in his hoost that he ledde, that he cam to fore the cyte of Meletene, and assieged it, by cause he supposed that they wold haue delyuerd it without taryeng. But somme of them that escaped fro thens where the prynce was taken cam fleyng in to the cyte of Rages. They told to therle Bawdwyn this grete mesauenture that was fallen to them. Whan the valyaunt erle herd this, he was moche angrye, and had grete pyte of the prynce, whom he helde for broder for the companye of the pylgremage. And by cause they had theyr countrees so nygh to gydre, it shold haue displesyd them moche yf the Turkes shold conquere this cyte that Buymont shold haue had. Ther-

for he somoned hastely alle his men that he myght haue on horsbak and a fote, and toke with hym that was necessarye for suche a vyage and wente toward thoo partyes.

TEL a thre daye iourneye was Rages fro Meletene. He had sone passed this waye in suche wyse that he was nyghe the cyte. But the sayd Donysmayn knewe wel the comyng of therle and durst not abyde ne fyght with hym, but lefte the siege and departed and ledde forth with hym Buymont faste bounden & straytly. Whan Bawdwyn herde that he durst not abyde hym, but fledde to fore hym, he ran after with his men and chaced hym thre dayes longe. Whan he sawe that he myght not ouertake hym, he retourned in to the cyte of Meletene. Gabryel the lord of the toun receyued hym with moche grete ioye with alle his men, and made to them good chere, and after gaf ouer the cyte to hym by the same couenauntes that he had offred to Buymont. Whan he had don this he retorned home agayn to Rages.

How the duc Godeffroy assembled alle his peple, and entred in to Arabye, and of the gayn that he made, and of his deth, capitulo CCxij

GODEffROY, the valyaunt duc, and his men that were lefte with hym for to kepe the royamme, began to haue moche grete mesease, and suffre suche pouerte that vnnethe it may be deuysed. Thenne it happed that good espyes and trewe brought to hym tidynges

that in the partyes of Arabye on that other syde of flom Iordan were moche ryche peple whiche doubted nothynge, and therfore they dwellyd out of fortresses. Yf they were surprised there shold be moch grete gayne wonne. ¶ The valyaunt duc that so moche had suffred, toke with hym peple a foote and on horsbak as many as he myght, sauf the garde of the cyte. Thenne entred he sodeynly in to the londe of his enemyes. There gadred he many grete proyes, that is to wete, horses, beufes, kyen and sheep, and ryche prysonners brought he grete plente. Thenne retorned he toward Iherusalem.

SOMME Turkes ther were, hye and puyssaunt, of them of Arabye, which were moche hardy and noble in armes, and had grete prys. Emonge all other ther was one that had longe desired for to see the duc Godeffroye of Boloyne, and wold fayne knowe yf it were trewe that was said of his force and strengthe, and acqueynte hym with his peple of fraunce, of whom he had herd so moch, that were come fro the occident vnto the oryent, and had conquerd so many londes, & sette them in theyr subiection. ¶ Aboue all other he desired to see duc Godeffroy and knowe yf it were trouth that was sayd of his prowesse and his strengthe. He dide so moch to such men as he spak, that he had good surete and triews to come vnto the duc. ¶ He salewed hym moche lowe enclynyng lyke as is theyr customme, and after he prayd and desired of the duc moche humbly that it wold plese hym to smyte with his swerd a camel that he had brought moche

grete. for, as he sayd, it shold be grete honour to hym in his countre, yf he myght recounte ony of his strokes that he had seen hym self.

The duc knewe wel that he was come fro fer to see hym, and dyde that he requyred hym. He drewe his swerd, & smote the camel on the neck where it was grettest, and smote it of as lyghtly as it had been a sheep. Whan the Turke sawe this, he merueylled ouer moche, in such wyse that he was al abasshed. Whan he had a litil bethought hym, he sayd in his langage: I see wel, sayd he, that the duc hath a good swerd & wel trenchant and cuttyng, but I wote neuer yf he coude smyte so grete a strook with another swerd. The valyaunt duc demaunded what he sayde, and whan he knewe, he began to smyle a lytil, and after sayd that he shold delyuer to hym his owen swerde. The Turke dyde so. The duc thenne smote therwith another camel, in suche wys that he made the hede to flee of moche lyghtlyer than of the other. Thenne merueylled ouermoche the Turk, and sayde that it was more by the strengthe of the arme than by the bounte of the swerd. He had wel preuyd that it was trewe that was sayd of the duc in his countreye. Thenne he gaf to the duc many fayr iewellys of gold and of ryche stones, and moche acqueynted with hym, and after retorned home in to his countre. The valyaunt duc cam vnto Iherusalem with alle his proye, and the trusses & fardellys of his gayn, whiche wer so grete that all the men of his companye were ryche.

IN that moneth of Iuyll the valyaunt duc Godefroy, whiche was gouernour of the royamme of Iherusalem, had a maladye and sekenes moch grete. Alle the phisiciens of the contre were sente for. They dyde alle that in them was possible, but alle auaylled not, ffor the payne encresyd alway more. After this he sente for men of relygyon, as prelates, curates, & other good and deuoute men, for to haue counseyll of them for the helthe of his sowle. He was moche wel confessyd and veray repentaunt with grete wepynges, and in his right mynde with grete deuocion departed out of this world. Certaynly we ought to thynke that the sowle was brought vp with angelis to fore the face of Ihesu Crist. He deyde the xiij day of Iuylle, the yere of thyncarnacion of oure lord M C. He was entiered and buryed in the chirche of holy sepulcre vnder the place of the mount of Caluarye, where our lord was put on the crosse. That place is kept moche honestly for to entere and burye the kynges vnto this day.

THUS endeth this book Intitled the Laste Siege & Conquest of Iherusalem, with many other historyes therin comprysed, fyrst of Eracles, and of the meseases of the cristen men in the holy londe, and of their releef & conquest of Iherusalem, & how Godeffroy of Boloyne was first kyng of the Latyns in that royamme, and of his deth, translated & reduced out of frensshe in to Englysshe by me, symple persone, Wylliam

Caxton, to thende that euery cristen man may be the better encoraged tenterprise warre for the defense of cristendom, & to recouer the sayd cyte of Iherusalem in whiche oure blessyd sauyour Ihesu Criste suffred deth for al mankynde, and roose fro deth to lyf, and fro the same holy londe ascended in to heuen. And also that cristen peple, one vnyed in a veray peas, myght empryse to goo theder in pylgremage with stronge honde for to expelle the Sarasyns and Turkes out of the same, that our lord myght be ther seruyd & worshipped of his chosen cristen peple in that holy & blessyd londe in which he was incarnate, and blissyd it with the presence of his blessyd body whyles he was here in erthe emonge vs, by whiche conquese we myght deserue after this present short and transitorye lyf, the celestial lyf to dwelle in heuen eternally in ioye without ende, Amen. ❧ Which book I presente vnto the mooste cristen kynge, kynge Edward the fourth, humbly besechyng his hyenes to take no displesyr at me so presumyng. ❧ Whiche book I began in Marche, the xij daye, and fynysshyd the vij day of Iuyn, the yere of our lord MCCCCLxxxj, and the xxj yere of the regne of our sayd souerayn lord kyng Edward the fourth, & in this maner sette in forme and enprynted the xx day of Nouembre the yere aforsayd, in thabbay of Westmester, by the sayd Wylliam Caxton.

A TABLE OF SOME STRANGE WORDS.

Berfroyes, p. 317 (fr: berfroiz) wooden towers, made in stages and mounted on wheels.

Creneaux, p. 243, battlements.

Deduyt, p. 151 (fr: deduit) pleasure, pastime.

Deport, p. 13 (fr: deportez), to bear; hence, to protect, take care of.

Enterinement, p. 315 (fr: interinement) an absolute admitting, a confirmation.

Entermed, p. 33 (fr: enterina), admitted, approved.

Escumours, p. 154 (fr: escumeurs, from escumer, to skim), pirates, scourers of the sea.

Fetyced, p. 367 (fr: fetices), fashioned.

Gaultyer withoute knowleche, p. 45. This should be Walter the Pennyless, "Gautier sans avoir," which Caxton has read, "Gautier sans savoir."

Lyche, the; the cyte of Surye; the listes of Surye; Laliche in Surye. Laodicea.

Musardye, p. 242 (fr: musardee), a dreaming, a shilly-shallying.

Popeliquans, p. 96, heretics.

Reuerye, pp. 60, 235, rage, fury, obstinacy.

Skorches, p. 288 (fr: ecorces), rinds, bark.

Territory, -es, p. 254, and elsewhere (fr: tertre, tertres) hill, hills.

Territoire, hanging on the, p. 182 (f: pendant du tertre), on the slope of the hill.

Thaitre, p. 12 (fr: l'aitre), the square before the cathedral.

THIS new edition of William Caxton's Godeffroy of Boloyne, done after the first edition, was corrected for the press by H. Halliday Sparling, and printed by me, William Morris, at the Kelmscott Press, Upper Mall, Hammersmith, in the County of Middlesex, & finished on the 27th day of April, 1893.



Sold by William Morris, at the Kelmscott Press.

11 ВСВОек.
*250=

129-80-NLL